

OF THE  
PROGRESSE  
OF THE BODHISATTVA

THE BODHISATTVAMĀRGA IN  
THE ŚIKṢĀSAMUCCAYA

by

Richard Mahoney

A thesis submitted in partial fulfilment  
of the requirements for the degree of  
Master of Arts  
Department of Philosophy and Religious Studies  
University of Canterbury

March 2002

Supervisor : Prof. Paul Harrison



BQ  
3247  
M216  
2002

## CONTENTS.

<i>Abstract</i> . . . . .	ix
<i>Preface</i> . . . . .	xi
<i>Part I Bodhipakṣa Dharmas</i> . . . . .	1
1. <i>Exordium</i> . . . . .	3
1.1 <i>Remarks</i> . . . . .	3
1.2 <i>Content &amp; Structure</i> . . . . .	9
2. <i>Bodhipakṣa Dharmas</i> . . . . .	23
2.1 <i>Remarks</i> . . . . .	23
2.2 <i>Smṛtyupasthānas</i> . . . . .	28
2.3 <i>Samyakpradhānas</i> . . . . .	32
2.4 <i>Ṛddhipādas</i> . . . . .	40
2.5 <i>Indriyas &amp; Balas</i> . . . . .	42
2.6 <i>Bodhyaṅgas</i> . . . . .	49
2.7 <i>Āryaṣṭāṅgamārga</i> . . . . .	56
2.8 <i>Conclusion</i> . . . . .	64
<i>Part II Samyakpradhānas</i> . . . . .	67
3. <i>Giving</i> . . . . .	69
3.1 <i>Remarks</i> . . . . .	69
3.2 <i>ŚSKā</i> . . . . .	72
3.3 <i>ŚS</i> . . . . .	76
3.3.1 <i>Prologue</i> . . . . .	76
3.3.2 <i>One's person</i> . . . . .	82
3.3.3 <i>Enjoyments</i> . . . . .	83
3.3.4 <i>Merit</i> . . . . .	85
3.4 <i>Conclusion</i> . . . . .	88
4. <i>Preserving</i> . . . . .	93
4.1 <i>Remarks</i> . . . . .	93
4.2 <i>ŚSKā</i> . . . . .	95

4.3	ŚS . . . . .	103
4.3.1	One's person . . . . .	108
4.3.2	Enjoyments . . . . .	111
4.3.3	Merit . . . . .	112
4.4	Conclusion . . . . .	113
5.	<i>Purifying</i> . . . . .	117
5.1	Remarks . . . . .	117
5.2	ŚSKā . . . . .	119
5.3	ŚS . . . . .	123
5.3.1	One's person . . . . .	127
5.3.2	Enjoyments & Merit . . . . .	149
5.4	Conclusion . . . . .	154
6.	<i>Increasing</i> . . . . .	159
6.1	Remarks . . . . .	159
6.2	ŚSKā . . . . .	161
6.3	ŚS . . . . .	167
6.3.1	One's person & Enjoyments . . . . .	168
6.3.2	Merit . . . . .	174
6.4	Conclusion . . . . .	185
7.	<i>Postscript</i> . . . . .	189
	<i>Appendix A. ŚSKā</i> . . . . .	193
	<i>Appendix B. Samyakpradhānas</i> . . . . .	203
	<i>References</i> . . . . .	211
	<i>Indices</i> . . . . .	226

## FIGURES.

1.1	<i>Samyakpradhānas.</i> . . . . .	21
2.1	Right strivings. . . . .	37
2.2	<i>Vīrya, vyāyāma &amp; pradhāna.</i> . . . . .	61
7.1	The <i>bodhisattvamārga</i> —A. . . . .	190
7.2	The <i>bodhisattvamārga</i> —B. . . . .	191



## TABLES.

1.1	Structure. . . . .	16
1.2	Chapters–A. . . . .	18
1.3	Chapters–B. . . . .	19
2.1	Applications of mindfulness. . . . .	29
2.2	Right strivings. . . . .	35
2.3	Right strivings in Śs, AN & DN. . . . .	39
2.4	Faculties. . . . .	42
2.5	Powers. . . . .	43
2.6	Members of enlightenment. . . . .	50
2.7	Eightfold way. . . . .	57
3.1	Giving. . . . .	77
4.1	Chapters on preservation. . . . .	94
4.2	Preservation–A. . . . .	104
4.3	Preservation–B. . . . .	105
4.4	Preservation–C. . . . .	106
4.5	Preservation–D. . . . .	107
5.1	Chapters on purification. . . . .	118
5.2	Purification–A. . . . .	124
5.3	Purification–B. . . . .	125
5.4	Purification–C. . . . .	126
5.5	Defilements and antidotes. . . . .	140
5.6	Erroneous views and antidotes. . . . .	141
6.1	Chapters on increase. . . . .	160
6.2	Increase–A. . . . .	169
6.3	Increase–B. . . . .	170
6.4	Increase–C. . . . .	171
6.5	Dharmas to increase strength. . . . .	172



## ABSTRACT.

Human language is unfit to describe the content of mystical experience; the conditions necessary to attain the desired goal, on the contrary, are much more easily susceptible to linguistic expression. This is the principal reason why mystics always deal at greater length with the *via mystica* than with the *unio mystica*. Therefore the specific nature of Buddhism can only become clear through an examination of its mystic way. During the whole history of Buddhism the way to Nirvana has been the core of the doctrine.<sup>1</sup>

The Buddha is credited with clearly and succinctly expounding the Buddhist path (*mārga*). Despite the eloquence and brevity of the Buddha's exposition, the *corpus* of Buddhist scriptures explaining the path is prolix.

It is generally thought that the moral precepts (*śikṣāpadas*), correct practices (*samudācāras*) and restraints (*saṃvaras*) for a bodhisattva<sup>2</sup> are to be found in Mahāyāna sūtras. Yet it seems that the most likely outcome of reading these sūtras is not enlightenment, but confusion.<sup>3</sup> Mahāyāna sūtras appear too extensive and complex to be of much practical benefit to an incipient bodhisattva.

This paper asserts that the *Śikṣāsamuccaya* (Śs) and *Śikṣāsamuccaya-kārikā* (ŚSKĀ) are composed by ŚĀNTIDEVA (Ś) to counter the bewilderment which results from reading Mahāyāna sūtras. Both works explicate the essential principles (*marmasthānas*) of these sūtras for the benefit of a bodhisattva new to the way.

Further, this paper asserts that of all the various practices described in Mahāyāna sūtras, Ś believes that the practice of giving (*dāna* ≡ *ut-sarjana*) is fundamental. In the Śs and ŚSKĀ the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*) is essentially the way of giving (*dānamārga*).

In short, Ś expects a bodhisattva:

---

<sup>1</sup> DE JONG, 'Absolute', pp. 58–59.

<sup>2</sup> To reduce distraction *bodhisattva* & *dharma(s)* are not italicised.

It is also to be noted that 'bodhisattva' is used in this paper as an abbreviation for 'bodhisattva-mahāsattva'. Following HARIBHADRA (WOGIHARA, '*Abhisamayālarīkārūloka*', p. 22, lns. 13–16, quoted in: KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', p. 91; & Idem, 'Meanings', pp. 265–266) the present writer distinguishes between: *a.*) a *bodhisattva* who tries to attain his own interest (i.e., enlightenment); *b.*) a *mahāsattva* who tries to attain the interest of others; & *c.*) a *bodhisattva-mahāsattva* who is devoted to enlightenment both for himself and for others.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 17, lns. 5–12.

- i.*) to give everything ( $sarva + \sqrt{dā} \equiv sarva + ut + \sqrt{sṛj}$ ) in order to attain perfect enlightenment (*samyaksaṃbodhi*);
- ii.*) to make a worthy gift of his person (*ātmabhāva*), enjoyments (*bhogas*) and merit (*puṇya*) in order to give everything;
- iii.*) to preserve ( $\sqrt{raks}$ ), purify ( $\sqrt{śudh}$ ), and increase ( $\sqrt{vṛdh}$ ) his gift in order to make a worthy gift; and
- iv.*) to practice the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*)<sup>4</sup> in order to preserve, purify and increase his gift.

It is asserted in this paper, then, that Ś considers the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of the Buddha attained by the practice of complete giving (*sarvadāna*  $\equiv$  *sarvotsarjana*) and complete giving attained by the practice of the right strivings. This conception of the way of the bodhisattva is represented in Figure 7.1<sup>5</sup> and in more detail in Figure 7.2<sup>6</sup>.

Overall, this paper attempts to provide a comprehensive analysis of the content, structure, theme and meaning of the Śs and ŚSKĀ. To the knowledge of the present writer, it is the first of its kind.

Although the notion of the path is central to Buddhist thought, it seems to be a fact that the scholarly world has been rather slow in coming forth with attempts at straightforward exposition of the notion of the spiritual path and practice especially as presented in the Pāli Nikāyas and Abhidhamma. Indeed a plain and descriptive scholarly account of just what the Nikāyas and Abhidhamma have to say on so many of the fundamental topics of ancient Buddhism is simply not to be found.<sup>7</sup>

*tatra katamo bodhisattvānāṃ mārgaḥ*<sup>8</sup>

<sup>4</sup> I.e., *i.*) the non production of non existing bad dharmas; *ii.*) the destruction of existing bad dharmas; *iii.*) the production of non existing good dharmas; & *iv.*) the increase of existing good dharmas.

<sup>5</sup> P. 190.

<sup>6</sup> P. 191.

<sup>7</sup> GETHIN, p. 18.

<sup>8</sup> BRAARVIG, II, p. 543, ln. 6.

## PREFACE.

For my part, I am inclined to think that the approach to the understanding and analysis of our sources must initially be what has been termed “emic” rather than “etic”. That is, in the first instance, an effort has to be made, as far as possible, to determine how categories and terms of a culture relate to each other structurally and systemically, and so to place ourselves within the cultural contexts and intellectual horizons of the traditions we are studying, making use of their own intellectual and cultural categories and seeking as it were to “think along” with these traditions. This is much more than a matter of simply developing sympathy or empathy, for it is an intellectual, and scientific, undertaking... it is one of learning how intelligently and effectively to work with, and within, a tradition of thinking by steeping oneself in it while rejecting the sterile “us” vs. “them” dichotomy.<sup>9</sup>

*Methodology.* This paper contains a translation of the ŚSKĀ and of some of the ŚS. The remainder consists of a summary, analysis and interpretation of the content, structure, theme and meaning of both works.

Through translation and exegesis the present writer tries to reformulate and rearticulate the essential meaning of the ŚSKĀ and ŚS.<sup>10</sup> This is considered necessary. It should be clear to anyone who has more than a passing acquaintance with both works that they are not self explanatory.

In elucidating the ŚSKĀ and ŚS, the writer attempts to make the thought of Ś accessible to specialists and non specialists alike.<sup>11</sup> This is

---

<sup>9</sup> RUEGG, ‘Reflections’, pp. 156–157. For a similar view, cf. GRIFFITHS, p. 19; HUNTINGTON, p. 326; BUSWELL and GIMELLO, pp. 1 & 4; & CABEZÓN, *Language*, pp. 3ff.

<sup>10</sup> The writer is informed by the various approaches adopted in: a.) VAN BUITENEN (completed under J. GONDA); b.) GARFIELD; c.) KALUPAHANA; d.) LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*; e.) LINDTNER; f.) OBERMILLER, ‘Doctrine’; & g.) OLDMEADOW (completed under J. W. DE JONG).

<sup>11</sup> The writer tries to fulfil what GRIFFITHS sees as one of the primary responsibilities of the Buddhologist:

If the third step on the path to understanding were taken more seriously, if it was felt as a duty to develop the ability to restate the meaning(s) of one’s text and if this approach were inculcated in our university departments devoted to Buddhist Studies, then we might begin to see some very positive results in the area of inter-disciplinary and inter-cultural thinking. (GRIFFITHS, p. 21)

not considered futile. Doubtless it is difficult to obtain an understanding of the meaning and authorial intent of any text, let alone of a text written at so great a temporal and cultural remove from the interpreter.<sup>12</sup> Even so, the present writer believes that a close and sensitive reading facilitates such an understanding.<sup>13</sup>

That said, this paper remains only one of many possible interpretations of the Śs and ŚSKĀ. It is hoped that it contributes something upon which future research can build. It does not pretend to be 'the last word'.<sup>14</sup>

*Annotation.* The annotation in this paper is of three types: *i.*) commentarial; *ii.*) philological; and *iii.*) bibliographical.

Commentarial notes explain points which the present writer considers necessary but ill suited for inclusion in the body of the paper.

Philological notes are generally associated with passages translated from the Sanskrit. They refer to the primary source for the translated passage and provide the passage in transliteration. All transliterated sections within brackets—( )—followed by a dagger—†—are restored by the present writer. All sections within brackets followed by a double dagger—‡—are restored in: BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*'. The symbol—≡—means equivalent to. At times philological notes refer to secondary authorities for the definition of particular terms.

Bibliographical notes refer to primary and secondary sources. Primary sources are referred to when their content is comparable to that of the Śs. Secondary sources are referred to as sources or authorities for the assertions of the present writer or when they provide additional information on the subject to hand.

The reader is advised to consult the notes only after the completion of the first or second reading of the body of the paper.

<sup>12</sup> On these issues regarding the works of NĀGĀRJUNA, cf. TUCK.

<sup>13</sup> On this belief regarding: *a.*) the study of Buddhist texts, cf. KATZ, pp. vi–vii; *b.*) the historico-philological programme, cf. TILLEMANS, 'Remarks', pp. 269–272; & *c.*) the interpretation of DHARMAKĪRTI, cf. STEINKELLNER, 'Logic', p. 311.

<sup>14</sup> Apropos this position, cf. GÓMEZ, 'Paradigms', p. 216:

Humanistic scholarship stands in a no-man's land between tradition and criticism, between community and individual preferences. It cannot seek and cannot lead to agreement. The greatest mistake we can make is to try to be the fabled "last man" who has the "last word" (the "definitive" this or that). Our role vis a vis community is not one of deciding the issues once and for all but of keeping more than one voice alive. Recognizing the power of voice, we must be careful not to establish a single voice.

*Translation.* This paper contains a complete translation from Sanskrit to English of the ŚSKĀ together with partial translations of passages from the Śs. Unless otherwise noted, all passages translated from Sanskrit are by the present writer.

The writer—although in the early stages of philological training<sup>15</sup>—believes that attempting to read the original helps towards an understanding of the Śs. Still, the writer's appreciation of Sanskrit is rudimentary.<sup>16</sup> In addition, he is not equipt to consult Tibetan or Chinese translations of the Śs. In preparing passages from the Śs for translation these are serious—but at this stage unavoidable—weaknesses.<sup>17</sup>

The writer is grateful to his supervisor, Prof. PAUL HARRISON, for checking his work and indicating passages in need of correction. He has been constantly reminded to take the simple meaning whenever possible and to employ intelligible, grammatical English. Even so, some passages remain difficult, both philologically and philosophically. Accordingly, some are rendered into English which is awkward if not barbarous.<sup>18</sup> An attempt is made to employ decent English that does not sacrifice the meaning of the Sanskrit. At times the writer is only partially successful.

Reference in this paper to works written in languages other than English and Sanskrit should not be taken to imply that the present writer has any competence or facility in these languages. These works are referenced merely for completeness and the convenience of the reader.

*Acknowledgements.* A good number of people have contributed—directly and indirectly, wittingly and unwittingly—to this paper. All have generously provided assistance. The writer is indebted to their kindness.

In particular, the writer would like to express his deep gratitude to Prof. HARRISON for his rôle in securing the private collection of the late Prof. J. W. de Jong for the University of Canterbury Library. Easy access to a good number of volumes over the past few months has been a rare pleasure indeed.

The writer would also like to thank: Dr GEORGE BAUMANN (Tübingen); STEFAN BAUMS (Copenhagen); Prof. JENS BRAARVIG (Oslo); LANCE COUSINS (Oxford); Dr KATE CROSBY (Cardiff); MARTIN DELHEY (Hamburg); Prof. MADHAV M. DESHPANDE (Michigan); DRAGOMIR DIMITROV (Marburg); Dr LARS MARTIN FOSSE (Oslo); DR ROLF W. GIEBEL

<sup>15</sup> Having not completed the requisite 'five years intensive study of the Sanskrit language' (GRIFFITHS, p. 18) & thus possessing an 'insufficient philological outfit' (LINDTNER, p. 10, n. 7).

<sup>16</sup> Only possessing 'the kind of training which can give no more than a faint hint of the complexities, attractions, and sheer difficulties of reading Sanskrit philosophical texts with any kind of fluency' (GRIFFITHS, p. 23).

<sup>17</sup> Cf. DE JONG, 'Review of Hedinger', p. 233.

<sup>18</sup> For this issue with commentarial & philosophical Sanskrit & Tibetan, cf. OLDMEADOW, pp. vii–viii; & CABEZÓN, *Dose*, p. 11, respectively.

(Banks Peninsula); ARLO GRIFFITHS (Leiden); Dr JÜRGEN HANNEDER (Halle); Prof. GEORGE L. HART (Berkeley); Prof. PETER HARVEY (Sunderland); Dr HARUNAGA ISAACSON (Hamburg); CRAIG JAMIESON (Cambridge); Assoc. Prof. MATTHEW KAPSTEIN (Chicago); Dr BIRGIT KELLNER (Vienna); ULRICH T. KRAGH (Copenhagen); Assist Prof. SUSANNE P. MROZIK (Western Michigan); Dr CHARLES MULLER (Toyo Gakuen); Assoc. Prof. JAN NATTIER (Indiana); JAMES NYE (Chicago); Dr VALERIE J. ROEBUCK (Manchester); Assist Prof. JONATHAN SILK (Yale); Prof. WALTER SLAJE (Halle); Dr JOHN D. SMITH (Cambridge); Assist Prof. ROLAND STEINER (Marburg); Dr DOMINIK WUJASTYK (London); PETER WYZLIC (Bonn); the members of his Sanskrit study group; and finally, his family.

Part I

BODHIPAKṢA DHARMAS.



## 1. EXORDIUM.

An attempt to become aware of the prejudices and preunderstandings that the modern Buddhologist, alienated from his subject by both time and culture, brings to the study of Buddhist texts remains a desideratum.<sup>1</sup>

[S]ome of my colleagues are finding inconsistencies in the canonical texts which they assert to be such without telling us how the Buddhist tradition itself regards the texts as consistent—as if that were not important. My own view is not, I repeat, that we have to accept the Buddhist tradition uncritically, but that if it interprets texts as coherent, that interpretation deserves the most serious consideration.<sup>2</sup>

### 1.1 *Remarks.*

Śāntideva est un des plus grands écrivains l'Inde bouddhique.<sup>3</sup>

Ś holds a privileged place in Buddhist hagiography.<sup>4</sup> His stature is high with many modern scholars. Yet although most scholars place Ś firmly within the history of the *Mādhyamika*, there is uncertainty over his actual date, philosophical beliefs and philosophical lineage.<sup>5</sup>

BENDALL<sup>6</sup> asserts that Ś was active around the middle of the seventh century, BHATTACHARYA<sup>7</sup> from about 695 to 743, FRAUWALLNER<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> LOPEZ, 'Introduction', p. 10.

<sup>2</sup> GOMBRICH quoted in: GETHIN, p. 16, n. 67.

<sup>3</sup> DE JONG, 'La Légende', p. 182.

<sup>4</sup> For traditional accounts of the life of Ś it is customary to rely on: *a.*) the *Caturaśītisiddhapravṛtti* of ABHAYADATTA ŚRĪ as tr. by sMON GRUB SHES RAB (c. 11th–12th C.). For Tib., cf. SUZUKI, P 5091. For Eng. tr., cf. DOWMAN, pp. 222–228; & ROBINSON, pp. 145ff.; *b.*) the *chos 'byung* of BU STON RIN CHEN GRUB PA (1290–1364). For Eng. tr., cf. OBERMILLER, *Chos-hbyung*, II, pp. 161–166; & *c.*) the *chos 'byung* of TĀRANĀTHA (c. 1575–1640). For Eng. tr., cf. CHATTOPADHYAYA, pp. 215–220. For these sources, cf. PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 3–45; & DE JONG, 'La Légende'.

<sup>5</sup> For a succinct summary of this scholarship, cf. SAITO, 'History'.

<sup>6</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. vi; & BENDALL, *Catalogue*, p. 106. In: *ibid.*, p. 106, Ś is referred to as JAYADEVA.

<sup>7</sup> BHATTACHARYA, p. xiv. WILLIAMS agrees with this chronology: cf. WILLIAMS, *Buddhism*, pp. 58 & 198.

<sup>8</sup> FRAUWALLNER, p. 254, quoted in: HEDINGER, p. 1, n. 4.

and KANAKURA<sup>9</sup> around 700, PEZZALI<sup>10</sup> from 685 to 763, NAKAMURA<sup>11</sup> about 650 to 750, SEYFORTH RUEGG<sup>12</sup> the first part of the eighth century, while SAITO<sup>13</sup>—with reference to the chronological classification of KAJIYAMA<sup>14</sup>—suggests that Ś should be placed closer to ŚĀNTARAKṢITA<sup>15</sup> (c. 725–768) than CANDRAKĪRTI (c. 600–650). It appears unlikely that complete agreement will arise over the period of Ś's activity.<sup>16</sup>

There has been much discussion about Ś's philosophical beliefs. It is generally agreed that he is interested in the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*), the practice of the six perfections (*pāramitās*)<sup>17</sup> and the generation of the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*).<sup>18</sup> His emphasis on the attainment of the equality of self and others (*parātmamasamatā*), followed by the exchange of self and others (*parātmaparivartana*), has often been mentioned.<sup>19</sup> But whenever scholars have had to form more specific conceptions of Ś's beliefs, diverse opinions have arisen.

The various conceptions of the beliefs of Ś can be of interest in their own right :

My interest in the *Bodhicaryāvatāra* reflected in these studies has two principal concerns. The first is the sheer range of interpretations, shifting patterns of interpretation and integration of interpretations into a wider systematic doctrinal and practical framework found among Indian and particularly Tibetan commentators.

...<sup>20</sup>

<sup>9</sup> KANAKURA, pp. 232–233, quoted in: DE JONG, 'La Légende', p. 180, n. 42.

<sup>10</sup> PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 38–40; & Idem, 'Śāntideva', p. 67. For comments on this chronology, cf. DE JONG, 'La Légende', pp. 180ff..

<sup>11</sup> NAKAMURA, p. 287.

<sup>12</sup> RUEGG, *Literature*, p. 82. In: idem, 'Chronology', p. 514, Ś is said to have been active about 700. Cf. also STEINKELLNER, 'Bodhicaryāvatāra', p. 17.

<sup>13</sup> SAITO, 'History', p. 261.

<sup>14</sup> KAJIYAMA, 'History'.

<sup>15</sup> The present writer follows a correction made in the margin of SAITO, 'History', p. 261, by DE JONG. It seems that the typesetter negligently substituted ŚĀNTIDEVA for ŚĀNTARAKṢITA.

<sup>16</sup> It is suggested in: DOWMAN, p. 228, that Ś was active in the first half of the ninth century. If this is correct, the majority of scholars to date have been considerably off the mark.

<sup>17</sup> For the *pāramitās*, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, 'Bodhisattva', pp. 750–753; DAYAL, pp. 175ff.; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 140–148; RUEGG, *Literature*, p. 82; & MAHONEY.

<sup>18</sup> For *bodhicitta*, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, 'Bodhisattva', pp. 749–750; DAYAL, pp. 50ff.; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 135–140; WILLIAMS, *Buddhism*, pp. 203–204; CROSBY & SKILTON, pp. xvii–xviii; ASANO, 'Bodhicittopāda'; & BRASSARD.

<sup>19</sup> For *parātmamasamatā* & *parātmaparivartana*, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, 'Bodhisattva', pp. 752–753; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, p. 144; WILLIAMS, *Buddhism*, pp. 201–202; Idem, *Altruism*, pp. 104–176; CROSBY & SKILTON, pp. xviii–xx; & SKILTON, p. 110.

<sup>20</sup> WILLIAMS, *Altruism*, p. xi.

Even so, this diversity can also be a source of frustration. All the various conceptions of Ś's thought may well seem to do little but obscure the actual beliefs of the historical Ś. As it is so difficult to identify the actual beliefs of Ś from amongst all of the commentarial literature which has accumulated during the last twelve hundred years, it must be tempting to take refuge within the interpretive framework of some of his more recent commentators :

I have not been concerned with textual questions of whether Śāntideva actually was or was not the author of a verse which interested me. The commentators thought he was and that has been enough for my purposes here.<sup>21</sup>

The question of Ś's philosophical lineage has proved no less problematic than that of his chronology and precise philosophical beliefs. While he is most often thought to hold an exalted place in the history of *Madhyamaka* philosophy, his actual position within that history and his affiliation with a particular school remains uncertain.

SEYFORTH RUEGG places Ś in a 'Middle Period' characterised by 'the elaboration and systemisation of the Madhyamaka thought'.<sup>22</sup> KAJIYAMA also places Ś in a 'Middle Period'. For KAJIYAMA this is a period when :

<sup>21</sup> WILLIAMS, *Altruism*, p. x. In this regard, WILLIAMS is not alone :

Although I speak of the "author" of the *Śikṣāsamuccaya*, I am no more interested in recovering the "original" authorial version of the text than I am in tracing the "original" texts of which it is composed. . . . In other words, I do not speculate on the date of the "original" composition of the *Śikṣāsamuccaya*, nor do I speculate on the authorship of the text. . . . (MROZIK, p. 3. The present writer is grateful to Assist Prof. S. MROZIK, Western Michigan University, for providing a copy of her dissertation.)

For our purposes, nothing is lost by setting aside the question of the authorship of the *Śikṣāsamuccaya*. . . . (Ibid., p. 8)

It would perhaps be pointless to try and demythologise the traditional Life of Śāntideva in order to find some historical core. . . . (CROSBY & SKILTON, p. ix)

Some Buddhological scholarship does not give adequate attention to the context of texts (GRIFFITHS, p. 19). This is unfortunate. An accurate understanding of the meaning of texts results from a disciplined assessment of all available evidence :

My own position is that a restriction to either one of the two sides (the scriptures and the commentaries) is structurally convenient for writing a book but not for solving problems. To solve problems one must include all the possible evidence and therefore cannot restrict himself to the scriptures or to the commentaries exclusively. (WAYMAN, 'Indian Buddhism', p. 421)

<sup>22</sup> RUEGG, *Literature*, p. 82.

... they wrote their own commentaries on the *Madhyamakakārikā*; they were divided into the *Prāsaṅgika* and the *Svātantrika*, according to whether they adopted either *prasaṅga* (“*reductio ad absurdum*”) or the *svatantra-anumāna* (“independent syllogism”) as a means of establishing the truth of the Madhyamaka philosophy; and they regarded the Yogācāra school as their opponent and criticised its philosophy.<sup>23</sup>

SAITO—on the basis of KAJIYAMA’s *Madhyamaka* chronology<sup>24</sup>—tentatively assigns Ś to a ‘Later Period’. For SAITO this is a time when :

- a.) they were strongly influenced by DHARMAKĪRTI’s theory of knowledge;
- b.) with a few exceptions such as PRAJÑĀKARAMATI, most of them belong to the *Svātantrika*; and
- c.) they considered *Yogācāra*’s philosophy to be higher than that of *Sarvāstivāda* and *Sautrāntika*.<sup>25</sup>

It is usual to follow Tibetan doxologies and PRAJÑĀKARAMATI<sup>26</sup> in associating Ś with the line of the *Prāsaṅgika Mādhyamika*.<sup>27</sup> Nonetheless, considering the uncertainty about the period of Ś’s activity and about the chronology and development of *Madhyamaka* philosophy, one should be cautious. In short, when referring to Ś: ‘... we cannot be too careful in using the word *Prāsaṅgika Mādhyamika*’.<sup>28</sup>

Two, sometimes three works are attributed to Ś: *i.*) the *Bodhicaryāvatāra* (BCA); *ii.*) the *Sikṣāsamuccaya* (Śs) and *Sikṣāsamuccayakārikā* (ŚSKĀ) combined; and possibly *iii.*) the *Sūtrasamuccaya* (Ss).

<sup>23</sup> KAJIYAMA, ‘*Mādhyamika*’, p. 74.

<sup>24</sup> Idem, ‘History’.

<sup>25</sup> For these points, cf. SAITO, ‘History’, pp. 260–261.

<sup>26</sup> C. 950–1000.

<sup>27</sup> For Tib. scholarship: cf. PADMAKARA, p. vii; GYATSO, *Wisdom*; Idem, *Lightening*; PALDEN & SÖNAM, p. xi; & GYATSO, p. 289.

For other scholarship: cf. HUNTINGTON & WANGCHEN, p. 69; HEDINGER, p. 8; NAKAMURA, p. 288; RUEGG, *Literature*, pp. 82 & 85; KAJIYAMA, ‘*Mādhyamika*’, p. 74; SKILTON, p. 216; & ISHIDA, ‘Action’, p. 24.

<sup>28</sup> SAITO, ‘History’, p. 261. Overall, it would be wise to follow the provisional approach described in RUEGG, *Literature*, p. 59:

In the following pages *Prāsaṅgika* and *Svātantrika* will be employed as convenient designations for the two main divisions of the pure Madhyamaka school going back respectively to Buddhapālita and Bhāvaviveka although these terms refer to a single feature of each of their doctrines, namely their methods of ascertaining reality through reasoning.

The BCA—perhaps the most influential of Ś's works<sup>29</sup>—consists of ten chapters (*paricchedas*) of verse. It describes the way of the bodhisattva primarily in terms of the generation of the mind of enlightenment, the practice of the six perfections, the equality of self and others and exchange of self and others.<sup>30</sup> On the basis of Tibetan manuscripts from Tun-huang, the attribution to Ś of many sections in the received edition of the BCA has recently been questioned.<sup>31</sup>

The Śs, the main subject of this paper, consists of nineteen chapters mostly in prose but sometimes in verse. The Śs like the BCA concerns

<sup>29</sup> Evidenced by the number of translations and commentaries of the BCA in the Tibetan tradition.

The BCA was tr. & ed. at least three times, cf. SUZUKI, P 5272: *i.*) SARVAJÑĀDEVA & DPAL BRTSEGS; *ii.*) DHARMAŚRĪBHADRA, RIN CHEN BZANG PO & SĀKYA BLO GROS; & *iii.*) SUMATIKĪRTI & BLO LDAN SHES RAB.

There exist at least ten major commentaries on the BCA: *i.*) BCA-*pañjikā*, P 5273: attrib. PRAJÑĀKARAMATI; tr. & ed. SUMATIKĪRTI, DHARMA GRAGS, CHOS KYI DBANG PHYUG & YON TAN RGYA MTSHO. *ii.*) BCA-*vivṛttipañjikā*, P 5274: unknown origin. *iii.*) BCA-*saṃskāra*, P 5275: attrib. KALYĀṆĀDEVA; tr. & ed. ŚRĪKUMĀRA & DGE BA'I BLO GROS. *iv.*) BCA-*duravabodhananirṇayanāmagrantha*, P 5276: attrib. KRṢṆA PA; tr. & ed. KRṢṆA PA & CHOS KYI SHES RAB. *v.*) BCA-*pañjikā*, P 5277: attrib. VAIROCANARAKṢITA; unknown tr. & ed. *vi.*) *Prajñāparicchedapañjikā*, P 5278: un-attrib.; tr. & ed. MI MNYAM KHOL PA & BLO LDAN SHES RAB. *vii.*) BCA-*vivṛtti*, P 5279: of unknown origin. *viii.*) BCA-*saṭṭrimśatpiṇḍārtha*, P 5280: attrib. DHARMAPĀLA; tr. & ed. DĪPAṂKARAŚRĪJÑĀNA & TSHUL KHRIMS RGYAL BA. *ix.*) BCA-*piṇḍārtha*, P 5281: attrib. DHARMAPĀLA; tr. & ed. DĪPAṂKARAŚRĪJÑĀNA & TSHUL KHRIMS RGYAL BA. *x.*) BCA-*tātparyapañjikāviśeṣadyatanī*, P 5282: attrib., tr. & ed. VIBHŪTICANDRA.

On these commentaries, cf. PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 59–62; & EIMER.

<sup>30</sup> For critical editions based on Skt. Mss, cf. MINAYEFF (the present writer is in debt to Dr KATE CROSBY, University of Cardiff, for providing a copy of this edition); DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*; BHATTACHARYA; & VAIDYA, '*Bodhicaryāvatāra*'. For more details on Mss & critical editions, cf. PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 50–56.

For tr. into Eng., cf. BARNETT; MATICS; BATCHELOR; CROSBY & SKILTON; PADMAKARA; & WALLACE & WALLACE. For an assessment of these tr., cf. GÓMEZ, 'Translators'. For more details on modern tr., cf. PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 63–65.

<sup>31</sup> Cf. SAITO, 'Difference'; Idem, 'History'; Idem, 'Bu ston'; Idem, *Recension*; Idem, 'Manuscript'; & ISHIDA, 'Remarks'.

The assertions of SAITO *et al.* are questioned in: WALLACE & WALLACE, p. 8:

Moreover, pronouncements concerning which of the extant Sanskrit and Tibetan versions is truer to the original appear to be highly speculative, with very little basis in historical fact.

In addition, recent research on the *Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā* suggests that assertions about the existence of a single base text are in themselves sometimes highly speculative: cf. WATANABE, pp. 395–386. Cf. also GÓMEZ, 'Paradigms', pp. 194 & 196.

the way of the bodhisattva. It is asserted in this paper that the way is described primarily in terms of the practice of complete giving (*sarvadāna*) facilitated by the practice of the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*).<sup>32</sup>

The Śs is Ś's auto commentary on the ŚSKĀ.<sup>33</sup> In the Sanskrit version of the Śs, the verses (*kārikās*) of the ŚSKĀ are included in the body of the text.<sup>34</sup> In Tibetan the ŚSKĀ also occurs as an independent work.<sup>35</sup>

The ŚSKĀ, the most succinct of Ś's extant writings, consists of twenty-seven verses. It mentions with extreme brevity all of the major themes of the Śs. The structure of the ŚSKĀ reflects that of the Śs as a whole.<sup>36</sup> The ŚSKĀ is the Śs writ small.

Although Ś's authorship of the Śs and ŚSKĀ has recently been ques-

<sup>32</sup> Two critical editions have been published : *i.*) BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*'; & *ii.*) VAIDYA, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*'. The edition of BENDALL is based on a single Skt. Ms. in the Cambridge University Library (Wright Collection, Add. 1478). It should be noted that the quality of VAIDYA's editions is often not as high as one might expect : cf. HAHN, p. 3; & OLDMEADOW, pp. viii–ix.

The Cambridge Ms. is described in : BENDALL, *Catalogue*, p. 106; & in : BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. xxiv–xxx. The Ms. is in old Bengali script, of stout paper and tentatively assigned in : *ibid.*, p. xxvi, to the 13th to 14th C. The present writer is greatly indebted to Prof. J. BRAARVIG, University of Oslo, for providing a copy of the Cambridge Ms.. Prof. BRAARVIG has also provided an electronic text of *ibid.* which has been especially useful for word searches.

For a survey of scholarship on old Bengali epigraphy, cf. DIMITROV. The present writer is grateful to DRAGOMIR DIMITROV, Phillips-Universität Marburg, for providing a draft of this paper. For more details on Mss & critical editions, cf. PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 72–75.

The Śs also exists in Tib. & Chin. versions : cf. *ibid.*, pp. 76–79. For the Tib., cf. SUZUKI, P 5336. For the Chin., cf. Taisho 1636. For notes on the Chin. version, cf. WOGIHARA, 'Contributions–I'; & *Idem*, 'Contributions–II'.

Only one tr. into a Western language of the whole text has been published : cf. BENDALL & ROUSE. It is noted in : DE JONG, 'Review of Hedinger', p. 231, quoted in : KLAUS, p. 397, n. 3, that 'It is true that this translation is far from satisfactory, ...'. For more details on tr., cf. PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 79–80.

<sup>33</sup> The composition of auto commentaries is characteristic of the *Mādhyamika*. NĀGĀRJUNA (c. 150–250), ĀRYADEVĀ (c. 170–270), BHĀVAVIVEKA (BHĀVYA) (c. 500–570), CANDRAKĪRTI (c. 600–650), ŚĀNTARAKṢITA (c. 725–784), KĀMALĀŚĪLA (c. 740–797) & VIMUKTISENA (8th C.) all wrote auto commentaries or résumés on their own works : cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Mādhyamika'. These dates are those of KAJIYAMA.

<sup>34</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. i, n. 2.

<sup>35</sup> SUZUKI, P 5335. For tr. of the ŚSKĀ, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. xxxix–xlvi; BARNETT, pp. 103–107; JOSHI; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 69–72; & *Idem*, *Śāntideva e il Bodhicaryāvatāra e le kārikā*.

<sup>36</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. ii & xxxi–xxxviii; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, p. 69, n. 93–p. 72, n. 109; & HEDINGER, p. 12.

tioned<sup>37</sup>, most scholars still consider the author to be Ś.<sup>38</sup>

The Ss which PRAJÑĀKARAMATI and the Tibetan doxographical tradition ascribe to Ś is no longer extant, although at least one scholar has attempted to identify the Ss with the ŚSKĀ.<sup>39</sup> Another work with the same title is often attributed to NĀGĀRJUNA the founder of the *Madhyama* school.<sup>40</sup>

## 1.2 Content & Structure.

The title and colophon of the ŚS indicates that it is a collection (*samuccaya*) of religious disciplines (*śikṣā*)<sup>41</sup> extracted from various sūtras. In addition, the colophon suggests that the ŚS is a work of discipline (*vinaya*).<sup>42</sup>

The actual content of the ŚS, on the other hand, indicates that the ŚS is also a commentary and exposition (*śāstra*)<sup>43</sup> on the theory and practice

<sup>37</sup> MROZIK, pp. 5ff. It seems likely that the doubts raised here about Ś's authorship of the ŚS are motivated more by a desire to downplay the question of authorship *per se*, than by an interest in historical veracity.

Also marked is an equivocal attitude towards attempts to discuss: *i.*) the ŚS within the philosophical history of the *Mādhyamika* (cf. esp. HEDINGER, p. 2); & *ii.*) the Skt. text of the ŚS in terms of Tib. & Chin. variants (cf. esp. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. i, n. 2; & pp. xxviii–xxix; WOGIHARA, 'Contributions–I'; & KLAUS) (Cf. MROZIK, pp. 8–9).

<sup>38</sup> The consensus remains close to that held in: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. iii ff.; DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, p. 1, n. 2; WINTERNITZ, II, p. 370; & PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, p. 66. For useful comments on attribution, cf. DE JONG, 'Review of Hedinger', p. 231.

<sup>39</sup> Cf. PEZZALI, 'Śāntideva', p. 68; & Idem, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 84–85.

For the relationship between the Ss & ŚS, cf. WINTERNITZ, II, p. 366, n. 1; FILLOZAT; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 80–86; RUEGG, *Literature*, p. 84; ASANO, 'Śikṣāsamuccaya'; & Idem, 'Sūtrasamuccaya'.

<sup>40</sup> For ref. to recent research on the Ss, cf. PĀSĀDIKA, pp. 481–494.

<sup>41</sup> Cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 1070 & 1165; & TAKASAKI, pp. 174–188.

<sup>42</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 366, ln. 4; & BENDALL, *Catalogue*, p. 109:

*samāptas cāyaṃ bodhisatvavinayo 'nekasūtrāntoddhṛtaḥ*  
*śikṣāsamuccaya iti ||*

And this collection of religious disciplines (*śikṣāsamuccaya*) selected from many sūtras—a *vinaya* for bodhisattvas—is finished.

BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 366, n. 2, notes that the Tib. colophon includes the additional words 'made by the teacher Ś'.

Ś distinguishes between the scriptures (sūtras), rules of disciple (*vinaya*) & religious discipline (*śikṣā*): cf. *ibid.*, p. 63, lns. 17–18:

'sūtravinayaśikṣā anapekṣya. . .

For the ŚS as *vinaya*, cf. BENDALL, *Catalogue*, p. 106; NAKAMURA, p. 288, n. 35; RUEGG, *Literature*, pp. 83–84; & MROZIK, pp. 7 & 12.

<sup>43</sup> Cf. TAKASAKI, p. 16; & GÓMEZ, 'Literature', pp. 532–533.

of the Māhāyāna as summarised in the ŚSKĀ (*kārikā*).<sup>44</sup>

The Śs, then, is both a work of Māhāyāna discipline (*vinaya*) and a work of Māhāyāna scholasticism (*abhidharma*). For Ś religious discipline and scholasticism are not contradictory but rather integral parts of the way of the bodhisattva.<sup>45</sup>

The Śs consists of a large number of quotations from more than one hundred Māhāyāna sūtras.<sup>46</sup> Only sūtras considered authoritative are selected. The placement of quotations is systematic. Ś declares his intentions in two passages early in the Śs.

In the first passage, in words almost identical to those with which he began the BCA, Ś says :

I shall relate, with beneficial words collected together, the entrance  
into the restraint (practices) of the sons of the Sugatas<sup>47, 48</sup>

He then claims that he intends to say nothing new and that his literary ability is negligible.<sup>49</sup> He says that he does not intend to benefit

<sup>44</sup> For the Śs as a commentary, cf. BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. iff. & xxxiff.; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, pp. 66ff.; & HEDINGER, pp. 10–11.

<sup>45</sup> Cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation', p. 114 :

The later Indian Mādhyamika school or the Yogācāra-mādhyamika, represented by Śāntarakṣita and Kamalaśīla, may be characterised in two ways : as a philosophy, it is syncretic ; as a religion, it teaches gradual enlightenment. The merit of the school lies in combining these two characteristics.

<sup>46</sup> For texts quoted in the Śs, cf. BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', Index I, pp. 367–371 ; & BENDALL & ROUSE, Index I, pp. 321–324.

<sup>47</sup> I.e., *sugatātma*jas ≡ bodhisattvas. For *sugatātma*ja—lit. 'the son of he that has attained bliss'—cf. EDGERTON, p. 597.

<sup>48</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 1, ln. 10 :

*sugatātma*jasamvarāvātāraṃ kathayīṣyāmi samuccitārthavākyaṃ ||

Cf. *ibid.*, pp. 1–2 ; & MINAYEFF, BCA 1:1–4, p. 155.

<sup>49</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 1, ln. 11 :

na ca kiñcid apūrvam atra vācyaṃ na ca saṃgranthanakaūśalaṃ  
mamāsti |

Apropos this assertion, note the traditional approach to the Śs :

The *Śikṣāsamuccaya*, together with numerous other anthologies or compendia, has been valued in the modern scholarly community primarily for its citation of other texts, but has rarely been studied as a text in its own right. Scholars have shown interest in the *Śikṣāsamuccaya* primarily because it preserves passages from Sanskrit texts that are no longer extant<sup>†</sup> and because it is frequently thought to provide "better readings" of extant<sup>†</sup> texts. (MROZIK, p. 2)

This interest is not misplaced. The value of the Śs is well attested : cf. BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. vi–vii ; DE JONG, 'Review of Hedinger', pp. 233ff. ;

others, but only to cultivate (*bhāvayitum iṣṭam*)—or leave a good impression on (lit. perfume<sup>50</sup>) (*vāsayitum kṛtaṃ*)—his own mind.<sup>51</sup> Further, he wants his strong impulse of faith (*prasādvavega*)<sup>52</sup> to cultivate that which is good (*kuśala*) to grow (*vṛddhi*).<sup>53</sup> These intentions suggest a desire for only a limited sphere of influence. Yet, on closer inspection, Ś's professed intentions seem to be merely literary affectation.<sup>54</sup>

In reality, Ś intends the Śs to be of considerable influence. This is clear when he gives his second reason for compiling the Śs:

Further, who[ever] desires this instruction (learning)<sup>55</sup> for training, then by him attention must be given to the *Śikṣāsamuccaya* for religious discipline in the entrance to the way<sup>56</sup>, indeed because of the great fruitfulness of undertaking religious discipline.<sup>57</sup>

The Śs is a compilation of Māhayāna teachings to guide an untrained (*aśikṣita*) bodhisattva who, having committed himself to training, is taking his first steps on the way.<sup>58</sup> It is a body of religious disciplines for a

---

CÜPPERS; PAGEL; BRAARVIG; SILK; & NATTIER.

Even so, the study of the Śs itself has been neglected: cf. DE JONG, 'Review of Hedinger', p. 230. The consensus may remain that:

The work betrays an extraordinary degree of erudition and reading, but little originality. (WINTERNITZ, II, p. 367)

<sup>50</sup> EDGERTON, pp. 478–479. For *vāsanā* as 'latent impressions', 'latent seeds of representation' & 'past impression': cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation', p. 124; Idem, 'Controversy', pp. 397–398; & Idem, 'Avayavinirākaraṇa', p. 496.

<sup>51</sup> Variant readings exist for this passage: cf. BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 1, ln. 12b, *svamano bhāvayitum mamedam iṣṭam* ||; MINAYEFF, BCA 1:2d, p. 155, *svamano bhāvayitum kṛtaṃ mayedam* ||; DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, BCA 1:2d, p. 7, ln. 11, *svamano vāsayitum kṛtaṃ mamedam* ||; & BHATTACHARYA, BCA 1:2d, p. 1, which agrees with DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*.

<sup>52</sup> EDGERTON, pp. 388 & 507.

<sup>53</sup> BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 1, ln. 13.

<sup>54</sup> Indicative of this general tendency are the words in: KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', p. 90:

But in traditional India, rather than boast of the originality of one's thought, one gave it authority by attributing its source to the ancients.

<sup>55</sup> I.e., *vyutpādita* ≡ *vyutpādana* ≡ *vyutpatti*: cf. BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 17.

<sup>56</sup> I.e., of the bodhisattva.

<sup>57</sup> BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 16, lns. 1–2:

*yaḥ punar etad abhyāsārthaṃ vyutpāditam icchati ' tenātra śikṣāsamuccaye tāvac caryāmukhamātraśikṣaṇārtham abhiyogaḥ karaṇīyaḥ śikṣārambhasyaiva mahāphalavāt |*

<sup>58</sup> Ibid., p. 16, lns. 5–8.

bodhisattva (*bodhisattvaśikṣāsārīra*).<sup>59</sup> The Śs is intended as a manual or compendium for a bodhisattva who, wishing to understand the Dharma, is devoting his life to study and recitation.<sup>60</sup> This is confirmed in the BCA :

Now the Śikṣāsamuccaya is certainly to be examined again and again,  
as virtuous conduct is taught there at length.<sup>61</sup>

The Śs, in short, is for the kind of bodhisattva that Ś considers a hero (*śūra*) in mind, giving, morality, patience, energy, meditation, wisdom and contemplation.<sup>62</sup> For Ś there is no higher calling than helping such people to engage in the way :

By my merit from reflecting upon the *bodhicaryāvatāra*,  
may all sentient beings adorn the way to enlightenment.<sup>63</sup>

<sup>59</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 15, lns. 9–10. As noted in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 16, n. 4, this usage is similar to Lat. *corpus*.

<sup>60</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 16, lns. 14–15. It appears likely that this was also the intention of NĀGĀRJUNA when he composed his *Sūtrasamuccaya*: cf. ICHISHIMA, p. 22.

<sup>61</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 5 : 105, p. 177 :

*śikṣāsamuccayo 'vaśyaṃ draṣṭavyas tu punaḥ punaḥ |*  
*vistareṇa sadācāro yasmāt tatra pradarsītaḥ ||*

For ref. to discussion on this verse, cf. FILIOZAT. This verse is accepted as conclusive evidence of Ś's authorship of the Śs in: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. iv–v. Ś's authorship is also assumed in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, Fasciculus I, Introduction, where in addition it is said that :

Some help has been found in a little tract. . . Much more profitable has proved the study of the *Çikṣāsamuccaya*, from which our author, *Prajñākaramati*, has borrowed, mostly without acknowledgement, nearly the whole of his illustrations from earlier literature.

*Contra* this assumption, it should be noted that an equivalent of Skt. BCA 5 : 105 does not appear in the Tib. Tun-huang recension of the BCA : cf. CROSBY & SKILTON, p. xxxii; & MROZIK, p. 6.

<sup>62</sup> Cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 16, lns. 15–16. The development of these seven qualities is the natural result of the attainment of the six perfections (*pāramitās*). It is clear that the structure of the BCA reflects the usual order of these qualities. It is perhaps less apparent that this is also so for the structure of the Śs.

In general, it can be said that: a.) *dānapāramitā* is discussed in the 1st chapter; b.) *śīlapāramitā* in the 2nd to 7th; c.) *kṣāntipāramitā* in the 8th to 9th; d.) *vīryapāramitā* in the 10th & 16th; e.) *dhyānapāramitā* in the 11th to 12th & 19th; & f.) *prajñāpāramitā* in the 13th to 16th.

These divisions are noted in the Tables of Part II, pp. 69ff.. For a slightly different schema, cf. HEDINGER, p. 12.

<sup>63</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 10 : 1, p. 221 :

*bodhicaryāvatāraṃ me yad vicintayataḥ śubham |*  
*tena sarve janāḥ santu bodhicaryāvibhūṣaṇāḥ || 1 ||*

This and similar verses in the BCA, may suggest that the BCA is composed for daily or ceremonial recitation: cf. KAJIHARA, 'Chapter'; & Idem, 'Recitation'.

According to Ś, moral precepts for a bodhisattva (*bodhisattvaśikṣā-padas*) are to be found in Mahāyāna sūtras.<sup>64</sup> Mahāyāna sūtras, he believes, contain the words of the Buddha (*buddhavacana*).<sup>65</sup> Even so, Ś still recognises the need for careful exegesis.<sup>66</sup>

Quoting the *Adhyāśayasamcodanasūtra*<sup>67</sup> Ś gives two hermeneutical principles which guide his selection of legitimate words of the Buddha (*buddhavacana*).<sup>68</sup>

First, he holds that the speech of a Buddha (*buddhabhāṣita*) is an inspired utterance (*pratibhāna*) through four factors (*kāraṇas*).<sup>69</sup> The true word of the Buddha:

- a.) is connected with truth (*satya*), not with the opposite of truth;
- b.) is connected with Dharma, not with that which is not Dharma;
- c.) leads to abandonment (*hāyaka*) of mental defilements (*kleśas*), not to their not being cut off (*vivaraddhaka*); and
- d.) shows the praiseworthy qualities of liberation (*nirvāṇaguṇa*), not the praiseworthy qualities of transmigratory existence (*samsāraguṇa*).<sup>70</sup>

If anyone<sup>71</sup> utters words endowed with these factors they are thought to produce in the minds of faithful sons and daughters of good family the notion of the Buddha (*buddhasamjñā*).<sup>72</sup> After having formed the notion

<sup>64</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 17, ln. 5.

<sup>65</sup> It has often been asserted that Māhayāna exegetes—despite evidence to the contrary—sincerely believe that Māhayāna sūtras contain the correct words of the Buddha: cf. MIZUNO, *Sūtras*, p. 22; & LOPEZ, 'Interpretation', p. 51.

<sup>66</sup> For the various methods of textual interpretation attributed to the Buddha himself, cf. idem, 'Introduction'; LAMOTTE, 'Interpretation'; & LOPEZ, 'Interpretation'. For a useful overview of the major issues involved in Buddhist exegesis and hermeneutics, cf. GÓMEZ, 'Literature'.

<sup>67</sup> The *Adhyāśayasamcodanasūtra*—apart from the passages in Skt. quoted by Ś in: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 15, lns. 13–22; & by PRAJÑĀKARAMATI in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:43ab, p. 431, ln. 17–p. 432, ln. 11—is only available in Tib. & Chin.: cf. GÓMEZ, 'Literature', p. 535.

<sup>68</sup> This section of the Śs is shot through with that 'tension between scripture and reason' described in: TILLEMANS, 'Authority'.

<sup>69</sup> For a useful discussion of inspired speech, cf. MACQUEEN, 'Speech-I'; & Idem, 'Speech-II'. *Pratibhāna* is tr. as 'eloquent word' in: OLDMEADOW, p. 109, ln. 1 & n. 1.

<sup>70</sup> Cf. WILLIAMS, *Buddhism*, p. 31; & SKILTON, p. 101.

<sup>71</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 15, ln. 16. According to the Tib., any monk, nun, or male or female lay disciple: cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 109, n. 2 & n. 3.

<sup>72</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 15, lns. 17–18. *Samjñā* signifies 'notion' in: OLDMEADOW, p. 109, lns. 8 & 9; 'idea' in: WAYMAN, *Calming*, p. 485; 'ideation' in: KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation', p. 124; & 'conception' in: EDGERTON, p. 551, def. 2.

of the Teacher (*śāstrisaṃjñā*), the Dharma is heard.<sup>73</sup>

Second and following from the above, Ś claims that :

Whatever, Maitreya, is well said, all that is said by the Buddha.<sup>74</sup>

It has been said of this principle that :

This is perhaps the most extreme formulation of the Mahāyāna's historical view of the roots of its traditions.<sup>75</sup>

The selection of legitimate words of the Buddha from Mahāyāna sūtras on the basis of whether or not they are well said (*subhāṣita*) would seem to allow much room for discretion. It appears, though, that Ś's second principle of interpretation is used together with his first. In other words, he believes that whatever is well said (*subhāṣita*)—that is, connected with truth, Dharma, the destruction of mental defilements and the promotion of liberation—all that is said by the Buddha (*buddhabhāṣita*).

Ś's conception of what constitutes the true word of the Buddha is perhaps most clear from the shortest of his works, the ŚSKĀ.

Māhayāna sūtras are sometimes extant in a long and short version. It is sometimes said that the long version was composed before the short.<sup>76</sup> Short sūtras are said to abridge the main points of their longer counterparts.

Some technical treatises and compendiums are also extant in a long and short version. The long version is often called a *śāstra*, the short a *kārikā*.<sup>77</sup> In general, it is thought that *kārikās* were composed before their *śāstras*. *Kārikās* are usually considered the root texts (*mūlas*) of *śāstras*.<sup>78</sup> *Śāstras*, it is said, explicate the meaning of *kārikās*.<sup>79</sup> The Śs is a *śāstra*, the ŚSKĀ its *kārikā*.

The general character of the ŚSKĀ is typified by a passage written to describe the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* of NĀGĀRJUNA :

The treatise itself is composed in very terse, often cryptic verses, with much of the explicit argument suppressed, generating significant interpretive challenges. But the uniformity of the philosophical methodology and the clarity of the central philosophical vision

<sup>73</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 15, ln. 18.

<sup>74</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 15, ln. 19 :

*yat kiñcin maitreya subhāṣitaṃ sarvaṃ tad buddhabhāṣitaṃ |*

<sup>75</sup> GÓMEZ, 'Literature', p. 535.

<sup>76</sup> MIZUNO, *Sūtras*, pp. 94, 118 & 119–120.

<sup>77</sup> GÓMEZ, 'Literature', p. 532.

<sup>78</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>79</sup> It is noted in: CONZE, *Prajñāpāramitā Literature - I*, p. 93, that 'Indian literary tradition regards a sacred text as incomplete without a commentary'. For the issues associated with the translation of *śāstras* & *kārikās*, cf. GRIFFITHS, pp. 26ff..

expressed in the text together provide a considerable fulcrum for exegesis.<sup>80</sup>

At first it might seem that the ŚSKĀ was written before the Śs. This may be incorrect. Both works are the work of the same author. It would be surprising if each had not been revised in terms of the other. As BENDALL has said :

Both seem to me a practically simultaneous result of the author's general reading of Buddhist literature.<sup>81</sup>

There is no doubt that the Śs explains each verse of the ŚSKĀ. But equally, there are many cases where verses of the ŚSKĀ seem to explain the main points of the Śs.<sup>82</sup> In addition, there are passages where it is hard to distinguish between a quotation from the ŚSKĀ and the body of the text of the Śs.<sup>83</sup> The relationship between the Śs and ŚSKĀ is perhaps best characterised not in terms of the dependency of one on the other, but rather, in terms of reciprocity between both.

Yet irrespective of the question of which, if either, was written first, the Śs and the ŚSKĀ can be seen—in the sense of GADAMER<sup>84</sup>—as Ś's attempt to project the overarching meaning of Buddhism as it gradually emerged to him when he penetrated the *corpus* of Māhāyāna sūtras.

The Śs and ŚSKĀ are written to explain the essential principles (*marmasthānas*) and practices of the Mahāyāna. And of all the various Mahāyāna practices Ś seems to believe that the practice of giving (*dāna* ≡ *utsarjana*) is fundamental.<sup>85</sup> In the Śs and ŚSKĀ he describes the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*) as essentially the way of giving (*dānamārga*).

In brief, Ś expects of a bodhisattva the following :

- i.) to attain perfect enlightenment (*samyaksambodhi*) he<sup>86</sup> must give everything (*sarva* + √ *dā* ≡ *sarva* + *ut* + √ *srj*) ;
- ii.) to give everything he must make a worthy gift of his person (*ātmabhāva*), enjoyments (*bhogas*) and merit (*puṇya*) ;

<sup>80</sup> GARFIELD, pp. 87–88.

<sup>81</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. ii. Cf. also WINTERNITZ, II, p. 366.

<sup>82</sup> Quite apart from the verses of the ŚSKĀ one should note Ś's introduction to another of his own compositions, the twelve *kārikās* on evil. These twelve *kārikās*, he says, are inserted to summarise his discourse on the renunciation of evil: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 66, ln. 15–p. 67, ln. 18.

<sup>83</sup> Cf. ref. to Ś's frequent reiteration of part verses of the ŚSKĀ in the Tables.

<sup>84</sup> Cf. GADAMER, p. 236, quoted in: LOPEZ, 'Interpretation', p. 65; & in: POWERS, p. 139.

<sup>85</sup> PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, p. 68; & MROZIK, p. 14.

<sup>86</sup> The present writer refers to bodhisattvas with the masculine personal pronoun. This is a conventional designation. For discussion of female bodhisattvas, cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Women'.

Table 1.1: Structure of the ŚSKĀ &amp; Śs.

	ŚSKĀ	Śs	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
PROLOGUE.	1-3 <sup>c</sup>	1 <sup>d</sup>	1-17 <sup>e</sup>	1-19
GIVING ( <i>utsarjana</i> ).	4	1	17-34	19-36
Remarks.	4	1	17-20	19-23
One's person ( <i>ātmabhāvotsarjana</i> ).	4	1	21-26	23-28
Enjoyments ( <i>bhogotsarjana</i> ).	4	1	26-29	28-32
Merit ( <i>puṇyotsarjana</i> ).	4	1	29-34	32-36
PRESERVING ( <i>rakṣaṇa</i> ).	5-16	2-7	34-158	37-156
One's person ( <i>ātmabhāvarakṣaṇa</i> ).	5-13	2-6	34-143	37-141
Enjoyments ( <i>bhogarakṣaṇa</i> ).	14	7	143-146	142-145
Merit ( <i>puṇyarakṣaṇa</i> ).	15-16	7	146-158	145-156
PURIFYING ( <i>śodhana</i> ).	17-21	8-15	158-273	157-250
One's person ( <i>ātmabhāvaśodhana</i> ).	17-20	8-14	158-267	157-244
Enjoyments ( <i>bhogaśodhana</i> ).	21ab	15	267-270	245-247
Merit ( <i>puṇyaśodhana</i> ).	21cd	15	270-273	247-250
INCREASING ( <i>vardhana</i> ).	22-26	16-19	273-356	251-313
One's person ( <i>ātmabhāvavardhana</i> ).	22-23ab	16	273-275	251-252
Enjoyments ( <i>bhogavardhana</i> ).	23cd	16	275-276	252-253
Merit ( <i>puṇyavardhana</i> ).	24-26	16-19	276-356	253-313
EPILOGUE.	27	19	356-366	313-320

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 1- 366.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 1-320.<sup>c</sup> Vs.<sup>d</sup> Ch.<sup>e</sup> Pg.

- iii.) to make a worthy gift he must preserve ( $\sqrt{\text{raks}}$ ), purify ( $\sqrt{\text{śudh}}$ ), and increase ( $\sqrt{\text{vṛdh}}$ ) his gift ; and
- iv.) to preserve, purify and increase his gift he must practice the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*)<sup>87</sup>.

In the Śs and ŚSKĀ, then, it is asserted that for a bodhisattva to attain perfect enlightenment he must practice complete giving (*sarvadāna* ≡ *sarvotsarjana*) and that for him to practice complete giving he must practice the right strivings. This means, in effect, that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ the way of the bodhisattva consists of the practice of the right strivings, followed by the practice of complete giving, followed by the attainment of perfect enlightenment. This path is summarised in brief in Figure 7.1<sup>88</sup> and in detail in Figure 7.2<sup>89</sup>.

It can be seen from Table 1.1<sup>90</sup> that the Śs and the ŚSKĀ share the same general content and structure. The ŚSKĀ is not as long as the Śs but it considers the major themes of the Śs and is organised on an identical plan. The thematic structure of both texts is fourfold :

- i.) giving (*utsarjana*) one's person, enjoyments and merit ;
- ii.) preserving (*rakṣaṇa*) the same ;
- iii.) purifying (*śodhana*) the same ; and
- iv.) increasing (*vardhana*) the same.

With little variation, the content and structure of both works is subordinate to the description of giving through the preservation, purification and increase of one's person, enjoyments and merit.<sup>91</sup> Table 1.2<sup>92</sup> and Table 1.3<sup>93</sup> show that the chapter divisions of the Śs are likewise subject to this *schema*.<sup>94</sup>

In the Śs and ŚSKĀ, then, in agreement with the *Ratnamegha*<sup>95</sup>, Ś condenses the central training of a bodhisattva into the practice of giving.

<sup>87</sup> I.e., i.) the non production of non existing bad dharmas ; ii.) the destruction of existing bad dharmas ; iii.) the production of non existing good dharmas ; & iv.) the increase of existing good dharmas.

<sup>88</sup> P. 190.

<sup>89</sup> P. 191.

<sup>90</sup> P. 16.

<sup>91</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. xxxi–xxxviii ; HEDINGER, p. 12 ; ASANO, '*Mantracārin*', p. 208 ; & Idem, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 59–61.

<sup>92</sup> P. 18.

<sup>93</sup> P. 19.

<sup>94</sup> The titles of the chapters in Table 1.2 & Table 1.3 are from those in the *editio princeps* : cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*'. In places these titles differ slightly from those in the Ms. : cf. BENDALL, *Catalogue*, pp. 108–109.

<sup>95</sup> Cf. esp. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 34, ln. 5 :

Table 1.2: Chapters of the Śs-A.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
PROLOGUE.	1-17	1-19
1a.) <i>Dānapāramitā Nāma Prathamah P°</i> <sup>c</sup>	1-17	1-19
GIVING.	17-34	19-36
1b.) <i>Dānapāramitā Nāma Prathamah P°</i>	17-34	19-36
PRESERVING.	34-158	37-156
One's person.	34-143	37-141
2.) <i>Śīlapāramitāyām Saddharmaparigraho Nāma Dvitiyah P°</i>	34-44	37-45
3.) <i>Dharmabhāṅakādirakṣā Tṛtīyah P°</i>	44-59	46-60
4.) <i>Caturthah P°</i>	59-97	61-99
5.) <i>Śīlapāramitāyām Anarthavarjanaṃ Pañcamah P°</i>	97-117	100-116
6.) <i>Ātmabhāvarakṣā Ṣaṣṭah P°</i>	118-143	117-141
Enjoyments & merit.	143-158	142-156
7.) <i>Bhogapūnyarakṣā Saptamah P°</i>	143-158	142-156

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 1- 158.

<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 1 -156.

<sup>c</sup> I.e., *Paricchedah*.

Table 1.3: Chapters of the Śs-B.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
PURIFYING.	158–273	157–250
One's person.	158–267	157–244
8.) <i>Pāpaśodhanaṃ Aṣṭamaḥ P°</i>	158–178	157–174
9.) <i>Kṣāntipāramitā Navamaḥ P°</i>	179–188	175–183
10.) <i>Vīryapāramitā Daśamaḥ P°</i>	189–192	184–187
11.) <i>Araṇyasamvarṇanaṃ Nāmaikādaśaḥ P°</i>	193–201	188–195
12.) <i>Cittaparikarma<sup>c</sup> Dvādaśaḥ P°</i>	202–228	196–215
13.) <i>Smṛtyupasthāna<sup>o</sup> Trayodaśaḥ</i>	228–241	216–224
14.) <i>Ātmabhāvaparīśuddhiś Caturdaśaḥ P°</i>	242–267	225–244
Enjoyments & merit.	267–273	245–250
15.) <i>Bhogapuṇyaśuddhiḥ Pañcadaśaḥ P°</i>	267–273	245–250
INCREASING.	273–356	251–313
16.) <i>Bhadracaryāvidhiḥ Ṣoḍaśaḥ P°</i>	273–297	251–269
17.) <i>Vandanādyanuśamsāḥ Saptadaśaḥ P°</i>	297–315	270–282
18.) <i>Ratnatrayānusmṛtir Nāmāṣṭādaśaḥ P°</i>	316–347	283–306
19a.) <i>(Puṇyavṛddhiḥ<sup>d</sup>) Navadaśaḥ P°</i>	348–356	307–313
EPILOGUE.	356–366	313–320
19b.) <i>(Puṇyavṛddhiḥ<sup>e</sup>) Navadaśaḥ P°</i>	356–366	313–320

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp.158– 366.

<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp.157–320.

<sup>c</sup> *Iti idaṃ samkṣepān mohaśodhanaṃ citta<sup>o</sup>* : cf. BENDALL, *Catalogue*, p.109.

<sup>d</sup> From : BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p.366, ln. 3.

<sup>e</sup> From : *ibid.*

The simplicity of this *schema* is striking. No doubt it makes the Śs and ŚSKĀ well suited as primers in the theory and practice of the Māhāyāna.

Yet Ś also identifies the central meaning of the Mahāyāna as the practice of the preservation, purification and increase of those things that are given. In addition, he holds that his conception of the Mahāyāna is not new (*apūrva*).<sup>96</sup> What, then, is the traditional basis for Ś's description of the Mahāyāna?

An answer is suggested by Ś's (re)definition of preservation, purification and increase:

In that case, he<sup>97</sup> produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well<sup>98</sup> for the non arising of bad, evil dharmas when they have not arisen: by this arises preservation. And he produces desire for the destruction of them<sup>99</sup> when they have arisen: by this arises purification. He produces desire for the arising of good dharmas when they have not arisen, and when they have arisen, he produces desire and so on for their<sup>100</sup> continuance, for their increase: by this arises increase.<sup>101</sup>

Table 6.4<sup>102</sup> shows that this passage occurs near the end of the Śs. It is meant to explain the final verse of the ŚSKĀ and the main thrust of both the Śs and ŚSKĀ. The final verse of the ŚSKĀ concerns the complete attainment of the right strivings. Ś's auto commentary (re)defines the traditional formula of the right strivings in terms of the practice of preservation, purification and increase. This conception of the right strivings is represented in Figure 1.1.<sup>103</sup>

In short, it appears that Ś ultimately bases his conception of the central meaning of the Mahāyāna on the traditional concept of the four right strivings.

---

*ata evo[23a]ktaṃ ratnameghe ' dānaṃ hi bodhisatvasya bodhir  
iti ||*

This passage is tr. in § 3.1, pp. 69ff.

<sup>96</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 1, ln. 11.

<sup>97</sup> Viz. a bodhisattva.

<sup>98</sup> I.e., *samyakpraṇidadhāti*: cf. DAYAL, p. 103, n. 89.

<sup>99</sup> Viz., bad, evil dharmas.

<sup>100</sup> Viz. good dharmas.

<sup>101</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, lns. 10–14:

*tatra anutpannānāṃ pāpakānāṃ akuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ anutpādāyaiva chandaṃ janayati vyāyacchati vīryam ārabhate cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti samyakpraṇidadhāti ity anena rakṣā || utpannānāṃ ca prahāṇāya chandaṃ janayati ity anena śuddhiḥ | anutpannānāṃ kuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ utpādāya chandaṃ janayati | yāvad utpannānāṃ ca sthitaye bhūyobhāvāya chandaṃ janayati ity ādi | anena vṛddhiḥ |*

<sup>102</sup> P. 171.

<sup>103</sup> P. 21.

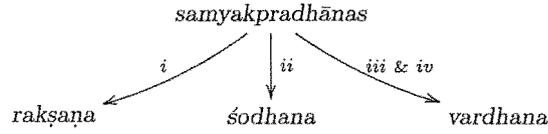


Figure 1.1: The *samyakpradhānas* (for key cf. n. 4 on p. x).

In the literature of the Hīnayāna<sup>104</sup> and Māhayāna, the right strivings are collectively the second of the seven sets of conditions favourable to enlightenment (Skt. *bodhipakṣa dharmas* ≡ Pāli *bodhipakkhiyā dhammas*). The conditions favourable to enlightenment provide the doctrinal context within which the four right strivings must be interpreted.

The rôle of the practice of the conditions favourable to enlightenment in the Śs will now be considered. This will be followed by a discussion of the rôle of the practice of giving and the right strivings.

<sup>104</sup> This is a conventional designation which refers to non Mahāyāna Buddhism. The present writer recognises that such a term is problematic. For the relations between Mahāyāna & non Mahāyāna Buddhism, cf. SILK, pp. 2–51; & NATTIER, pp. 58–82. The present writer is grateful to Assoc. Prof. J. NATTIER, Indiana University, for permitting him to refer to this work.



## 2. BODHIPAKṢA DHARMAS.

It is worthwhile in Buddhist studies to attempt to reconstruct the context in which particular doctrines were formulated, since the context of an utterance or doctrine is of crucial importance in determining its meaning and application. Buddhist doctrines operate within the context of a functioning system of shared symbols and assumptions and a contemporary interpreter should seek to understand and explicate this context.<sup>1</sup>

### 2.1 Remarks.

Subhūti said: ‘Which, Bhagavān, are the good dharmas or the conditions favourable to enlightenment? And which dharmas are the dharmas of the *pratyekabuddhas*, and the dharmas of the bodhisattvas and the dharmas of the Buddhas? Which arrive at the attainment of a unity<sup>2</sup> in the perfection of wisdom?’ The Bhagavān said: ‘As here follows: the four applications of mindfulness; the four right strivings; the four bases of supernatural power; the five faculties; the five powers; the seven members of enlightenment; the noble eightfold way; the four noble truths; the approaches to liberation—emptiness, causeless, aimless<sup>3</sup>; the four *dhyānas*<sup>4</sup>; the four infinitudes<sup>5</sup>; the four formless attainments<sup>6</sup>; the six supernatural knowledges<sup>7</sup>; the perfection of giving; the perfection of morality; the perfection of patience; the perfection of energy; the perfection of concentration; the perfection of wisdom ...’<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> POWERS, p. 162.

<sup>2</sup> I.e., *saṃgraha* & *samavasaraṇa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 566.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 6, ln. 15.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1478–1481, p. 78.

<sup>5</sup> I.e., friendliness (*maitrī*), equanimity (*upekṣā*), compassion (*karuṇā*) & joy (*muditā*). Cf. BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 105, ln. 16; & ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1503–1507, p. 80.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid., ¶¶ 1492–1495, p. 79.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 105, lns. 14–15; p. 214, ln. 15; & p. 243, ln. 13; & ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 202–209, p. 12.

<sup>8</sup> GHOSA, p. 1636, ln. 10ff., quoted in: GETHIN, p. 275, n. 36, as:

*Subhūtir āha | katame bhagavān kuśaladharmmā bodhipakṣāḥ  
vā ke dharmmaś ca pratyekabuddhadharmmaś ca bodhisattvad-  
harmmaś ca buddhadharmmaś ca ye prajñāpāramitāyāṃ saṃ-  
grahaṃ samavasaraṇaṃ gacchanti | bhagavān āha | tad  
yathā catvāri smṛtyupasthānāni | catvāri samyakprahāṇāni |  
catvāra ṛddhipādāḥ | pañcendriyāṇi | pañcabalāni | satta-  
bodhyaṅgāni | āryyāṣṭāṅgo mārgaḥ | catvāryy āryyasatyāni  
| śūnyatānimitāprañihitavimokṣamukhāni | catvāri dhyānāni |*

The corpus of Mahāyāna sūtras is vast. The content of Mahāyāna sūtras is varied and complex. After having read these sūtras it is no doubt common for incipient bodhisattvas to feel bewildered. In an attempt to make sense of their readings it would be natural for them to ask of their teachers ‘What are the essential principles? What are the basic practices?’

So it is with Subhūti. He wants the Buddha to indicate the dharmas that are skillful (*kuśala*), the dharmas that lead to the perfection of wisdom (*prajñāpāramitā*) and the dharmas that tend towards enlightenment. In answer to Subhūti the Buddha lists :

- i.) the four applications of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthānas*);
- ii.) the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*);
- iii.) the four bases of supernatural power (*ṛddhipādas*);
- iv.) the five faculties (*indriyas*);
- v.) the five powers (*balas*);
- vi.) the seven members of enlightenment (*bodhyaṅgas*); and
- vii.) the noble eightfold way (*āryāṣṭāṅgamārga*) and so on.

For all his confusion, the Buddha’s answer cannot have surprised Subhūti. These trainings occur often in the literature of both the Hīnayāna and the Mahāyāna.<sup>9</sup> Collectively they are sometimes called the thirty-seven *bodhipākṣikā dharmas*.<sup>10</sup> More often they are merely referred to as

*catvāryy apramāṇāni | catusra ārūpyasamāpattayaḥ | śaḍabhijñāḥ  
| dānapāramitā | śīlapāramitā | kṣāntipāramitā | vīryapāramitā  
| samādhipāramitā | prajñāpāramitā...*

For another frame question that involves the *bodhipakṣa dharmas*, cf. NATTIER, ¶ 2D, p. 168; & ¶ 20G, p. 214.

<sup>9</sup> For the Hīnayāna, cf. MORRIS & HARDY, I, pp. 39–40; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, II, pp. 11–12; add. ref. in VI, p. 80; FEER, ref. in VI, p. 72; NĀṆAMOLI, ¶ 175, p. 52; & ¶ 483, pp. 116–117; THITṬILA, pp. 159–179 & 251–318; DAVIDS, pp. 193–243, add. ref. on p. 453; & COWELL & NEIL, p. 208, lns. 7–9.

For the Mahāyāna, cf. BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 272, lns. 15–16; DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:45ab, p. 436, lns. 4–6; RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, pp. 38–39; DUTT, ‘*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*’, pp. 207–208; GHOSA, pp. 56–57, 133, 162 & 1473, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 82; LÉVI, I, p. 57, lns. 11–29; & p. 140, ln. 14–p. 146, ln. 4; OBERMILLER, ‘Doctrine’, ch. IV, ¶ 1, p. 77, n. 4; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 43, p. 25; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 953–1004, pp. 51–54; NATTIER, ¶ 2D, p. 168; ¶ 20G, p. 214; ¶ 23E, p. 219; & ¶ 25K, p. 232; & BRAARVIG, II, pp. 480–548.

<sup>10</sup> I.e., *saptatṛiṣṣadbodhipākṣikadharmas*: cf. RAHDER, § Bhūmi, VII, ¶ D, p. 57, ln. 17; VON STEĀL-HOLSTEIN, § 45, p. 75, ln. 3; & LEFMANN, p. 9, ln. 5. In: LÉVI, I, p. 57, lns. 11–12 & 13–14, they are twice referred to as the thirty-seven forms of meditation or cultivation (*saptatṛiṣṣadākārahāvanās*).

the *bodhipakṣa dharmas*.<sup>11</sup>

The term for the thirty-seven practices is variously translated.<sup>12</sup> The Pāli—*bodhipakkhiya* or *bodhipakkhika*—is translated by RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE as 'belonging to enlightenment' and 'qualities or items constituting or contributing to *bodhi*'.<sup>13</sup> This definition is followed by GETHIN

<sup>11</sup> Although several variants of this term exist.

For *bodhipakṣa*, cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 144, ln. 6; & p. 357, ln. 8; NANJIO, p. 25, ln. 12; LEFMANN, p. 8, ln. 6; p. 9, ln. 5; p. 181, ln. 18; & p. 182, ln. 11; COWELL & NEIL, p. 350, ln. 14; LÉVI, I, p. 2, lns. 8–9; p. 16, ln. 32; p. 40, ln. 8; p. 159, ln. 9–p. 177, ln. 15; & p. 183, ln. 24; DAS & ŚĀSTRĪ, p. 127, ln. 8, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 80; & MITRA, p. 194, ln. 18, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 80. For *klesāpakṣa* as 'the side of the vices', cf. BRAARVIG, II, p. cvi.

For *bodhipakṣika*, cf. WOGIHARA, '*Bodhisattvabhūmi*', p. 227, ln. 10; OBERMILLER, 'Doctrine', ch. IV, ¶ 1, p. 77, n. 4; & p. 121; & SENART, II, p. 290, ln. 6. For *mārapakṣika*, cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 314, ln. 8; & EDGERTON, p. 314. Those who 'belong to the party of Māra' are opposed to those who 'belong to the party of enlightenment' (*bodhipakṣika*).

For *bodhipākṣika*, cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 283, ln. 11; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 43, p. 25; DAS & ŚĀSTRĪ, p. 10, ln. 13, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 80; RAHDER, § Bhūmi VI, ¶ R, p. 53, ln. 22; LEFMANN, p. 424, ln. 12; NANJIO, p. 213, ln. 7; & DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *L'Abhidharmakośa*, p. 281.

For *bodhipakṣya*, cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 12, ln. 17; & p. 52, ln. 2; DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, p. 436, ln. 5; DUTT, '*Bodhisattvabhūmi*', p. 1, ln. 8; p. 29, ln. 1; p. 171, lns. 1 & 5; p. 232, lns. 24 & 25; VON STEĀL-HOLSTEIN, § 45, p. 75, ln. 3; WOGIHARA, '*Bodhisattvabhūmi*', p. 236, ln. 17; p. 259, ln. 7; & p. 341, ln. 5; RAHDER, § Bhūmi V, ¶¶ A–B, p. 42, lns. 6 & 9; & § Bhūmi VII, ¶ D, p. 57, ln. 17; & NANJIO, p. 25, n. 6. Of these variants, it is held, in: DAYAL, p. 80, that the use of *bodhipakṣa* & *bodhipakṣya* is most frequent.

<sup>12</sup> As are the terms for each of the seven sets of practices and for each of the thirty-seven practices themselves. Such lack of agreement makes it necessary—following Ibid., pp. 80–164—to note the various interpretations of these terms. This should confirm the accuracy of SEYFORTH RUEGG's words:

... even though the philosophical component in Buddhism has been recognised by many investigators since the inception of Buddhist studies as a modern scholarly discipline more than a century and a half ago, it has to be acknowledged that the main stream of these studies has, nevertheless, quite often paid little attention to the philosophical. The idea somehow appears to have gained currency in some quarters that it is possible to deal with Buddhism in a serious and scholarly manner without being obliged to concern oneself with philosophical content. One has only to look at several dictionaries to see that the European terminology so often employed to render Pali, Sanskrit and Tibetan technical terms is on occasion hardly coherent and did not reflect the state of philosophical knowledge even at the time these dictionaries were first published. This impression is reinforced by many a translation from these three languages as well as by some work on texts written in them. (RUEGG, 'Reflections', p. 145)

<sup>13</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, p. 491.

where the *bodhipakkhiyā dhammas* are 'the conditions that contribute to awakening'.<sup>14</sup> THITṬILA prefers to render this term the 'enlightenment states'.<sup>15</sup>

The Sanskrit—*bodhipakṣa dharma*—is, according to MONIER-WILLIAMS, 'a quality belonging to (or constituent of) perfect intelligence'.<sup>16</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE translate this term as 'the things that belong to supreme enlightenment'.<sup>17</sup> In DAYAL such dharmas are 'Principles which are conducive to Enlightenment'.<sup>18</sup> In the Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit (BHS) lexicon of EDGERTON, the thirty-seven are referred to as 'conditions favourable to enlightenment'.<sup>19</sup> CONZE considers *bodhipakṣa* a 'wing of enlightenment' and *bodhipakṣika* and *bodhipakṣya* dharmas 'dharmas which are (act as) (the) wings to enlightenment' and 'dharmas which constitute the wings to enlightenment' respectively.<sup>20</sup> WAYMAN prefers 'the thirty-seven natures accessory to enlightenment'.<sup>21</sup> LAMOTTE has referred to them as 'les trente-sept auxiliaires de l'illumination'.<sup>22</sup> HUNTINGTON renders *samyaksambodhipakṣas* as the 'ancillaries to perfect awakening'.<sup>23</sup>

These various references and definitions show that the practice of the thirty-seven conditions favourable to enlightenment is considered, by members of both the Hīnayāna and the Mahāyāna, fundamental to the attainment of the *summum bonum* of Buddhist practice.

The *Divyāvadāna*, a text which bears marks of both vehicles<sup>24</sup>, suggests that the conditions favourable to enlightenment summarise the primary teachings of the Buddha.<sup>25</sup> This is implied by the above quoted passage from the *Śatasāhasrikāprañāpāramitāsūtra*. While the Buddha mentions other principles, they appear subordinate and supplementary.

The ŚS is in agreement. About three quarters into the ŚS, in a section on the purification of merit (*puṇyaśuddhi*) and a subsection on the purification of conduct (*śīlaviśuddhi*), Ś quotes the *Ratnacūḍasūtra* :

Then what is emptiness that is endowed with all excellent forms<sup>26</sup> ?

<sup>14</sup> GETHIN, p. xi.

<sup>15</sup> THITṬILA, pp. 326 & 565.

<sup>16</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 734.

<sup>17</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 259.

<sup>18</sup> DAYAL, p. 81.

<sup>19</sup> EDGERTON, p. 402. This def. is followed in: HONDA, § Bhūmi VI, ¶ R, p. 194.

<sup>20</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 301–302.

<sup>21</sup> WAYMAN, 'Buddhism', pp. 435–436, quoted in: idem, 'Indian Buddhism', p. 418.

<sup>22</sup> Cf. esp. LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1119–1207. Although the term 'auxiliary' is infelicitous in: LIMAYE, p. 170.

<sup>23</sup> HUNTINGTON & WANGCHEN, p. 155.

<sup>24</sup> WINTERNITZ, II, pp. 284ff.; & NAKAMURA, p. 138.

<sup>25</sup> COWELL & NEIL, p. 208.

<sup>26</sup> Cf. EDGERTON, p. 586, def. 1; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 419. For the eigh-

That which is not deficient in giving;...not deficient in mindfulness and awareness<sup>27</sup>; not deficient in the applications of mindfulness, the right strivings, the bases of supernatural power, the faculties and the powers, the members of enlightenment and the noble eightfold way<sup>28</sup>;...<sup>29</sup>

Likewise, early in the ŚS, in a passage which emphasises how important it is for a bodhisattva to keep his vows (*prañidhānas*), Ś appeals to the witness of the *Sāgaramatisūtra*. He describes the failure of a king (*rājamātra*) to meet the demands of guest friendship and his subsequent loss of face:

In the same manner, Sāgaramati, acts the bodhisattva, who, having comforted all sentient beings for enabling to cross those who have not crossed, for liberating those who are unliberated, for encouraging those who are discouraged, ...<sup>30</sup> does not apply himself to great learning<sup>31</sup>, nor yet to other dharmas which are the sources of merit favourable to enlightenment; this bodhisattva breaks his word with the inhabitants of the world and gods.<sup>32</sup>

It would seem, then, that for Ś, as for those of the Hīnayāna and Māhayāna in general, a primary duty of any *arhant* or bodhisattva is the practice of the conditions favourable to enlightenment.

This responsibility is stressed by Ś in other passages in the ŚS. In a long section concerning the preservation of one's person (*ātmabhāvarakṣaṇa*), a bodhisattva is advised to do everything within his power to avoid the works of Māra (*māra-karmas*) and all other things which impede the way of the conditions favourable to enlightenment (*bodhipakṣyamārga*).<sup>33</sup>

Later in ŚS, in a section devoted to the increase of merit (*śubhavadhana*) and a subsection devoted to the importance of a firm and indestructible armour (resolve) (*saṃnāha*), Ś quotes the *Akṣayamatisūtra*:

teen kinds of *śūnyatā*, cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 934-951, p. 50.

<sup>27</sup> I.e., *smṛti* & *saṃprajanya*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 577.

<sup>28</sup> I.e., the seven sets of *bodhipakṣa dharmas*.

<sup>29</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, lns. 12ff.:

*tatra katamā sarvākāravāropetā śūnyatā | yā na dānavikalā'...na  
smṛtisamprajanyavikalā | na smṛtyupasthānasamyakprahāṇaṇḍ-  
dhipādendriyabalabodhyāṅgāṣṭāṅgamārgavikalā...*

For the context of this passage, cf. Table 5.4 on p. 126.

<sup>30</sup> I.e., *yāvat*. This usage recurs throughout the ŚS.

<sup>31</sup> I.e., *bahuśrutya*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 399. In: CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 297, *bahuśrutī* is tr. 'learning'.

<sup>32</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 12, ln. 15-p. 13, ln. 1:

*evam eva sāgaramate yo bodhisatvaḥ sarvasatvān āśvāsyātīr-  
natāraṇāyāmuktamocanāyānāśvastāśvāsanāyā yāvan na bahuśru-  
tye 'bhiyogaṃ karoti nāpi tato 'nyesu bodhipakṣyakusālamuleṣu  
dharmeṣu' ayaṃ bodhisatvo viṣaṃvādayati sadevakaṃ lokaṃ |*

<sup>33</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 52, ln. 2.

... This armour<sup>34</sup> which is uncowed<sup>35</sup> is the indestructible armour of a bodhisattva'. Such is the method in giving and so on and in producing the conditions favourable to enlightenment<sup>36</sup> and marks of the great man<sup>37, 38</sup>

In recognition of the emphasis given to the conditions favourable to enlightenment in the literature of the Hīnayāna and Māhāyāna, it is suggested by some scholars that they are fundamental to Indian Buddhism.<sup>39</sup>

It is therefore appropriate to comment on each of the seven sets of conditions and on their rôle in the Śs.

## 2.2 Smṛtyupasthānas.

In the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna the first set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment is usually the applications of mindfulness (Skt. *smṛtyupasthānas* ≡ Pāli *satipaṭṭhānas*).<sup>40</sup> It seems that it has al-

<sup>34</sup> I.e., *saṃnāha*: cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Meanings', p. 259. For various related terms, cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 400–401.

<sup>35</sup> I.e., *anavalīna*, cf. *ibid.*, pp. 24–25.

<sup>36</sup> I.e., *bodhipākṣikas*.

<sup>37</sup> I.e., *mahāpuruṣalakṣaṇa*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 458–460. Cf. also DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9: 36, p. 418, ln. 16.

<sup>38</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 283, lns. 10–12:

...ity anavalīnaḥ (|)† saṃnāho 'yaṃ bodhisatvasyākṣayaḥ  
saṃnāhaḥ | evaṃ dānādiṣu bodhipākṣikamahāpuruṣalakṣaṇeṣu ca  
nayaḥ ||

For a recent ed. of the first part of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 164.

<sup>39</sup> Cf. WARDER, p. 82, where it is asserted that the conditions favourable to enlightenment are the 'basic doctrines of Buddhism as originally propounded by the Buddha'. For a similar position, cf. WATANABE, pp. 3–4 & 66–67; TAKASAKI, pp. 186–188; & MIZUNO, *Essentials*, pp. 163–167. Cf. also GETHIN, p. 342: 'the Nikāya and Abhidharma understanding of the seven sets does in fact fully integrate them with Buddhist teaching as a whole'. The position of WARDER is questioned in: WAYMAN, 'Indian Buddhism', pp. 418–419.

<sup>40</sup> The list of the seven sets of conditions favourable to enlightenment in: BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, lns. 15–16, is representative of the tradition as a whole. It has been noted, in: LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1121–1123, that the Pāli & Skt. sources contain two formulae for the applications of mindfulness.

Formula one. For the Hīnayāna, cf. RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, II, p. 290; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, I, pp. 55–56; FEER, V, pp. 141, 167 & 185; & DAVIDS, p. 193.

For the Mahāyāna, cf. DUTT, '*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*', p. 204; GHOSA, p. 1427; & RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 38.

Formula two. For the Hīnayāna, cf. RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, II, pp. 216 & 292–306; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, I, pp. 56–57 & 59; MORRIS & HARDY, III, p. 450; FEER, V, pp. 143, 294 & 296; & DAVIDS, pp. 193, 195 & 197.

For the Mahāyāna, cf. DUTT, '*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*', pp. 204ff.; GHOSA, pp. 1427ff.; & RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 38.

ways been thought essential for an *arhant* or bodhisattva to practice the applications of mindfulness.

The translation of *smṛtyupasthāna* is various. The Pāli form is rendered by RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS as the 'earnest meditations' and as the 'applications of mindfulness'.<sup>41</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE use 'intent contemplation and mindfulness' and 'earnest thought'.<sup>42</sup> HORNER uses 'applications of mindfulness' and THITṬILA the 'four foundations of mindfulness'.<sup>43</sup>

The Sanskrit form is translated by DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN as 'subjects of mindful reflexion'.<sup>44</sup> The various renderings of BENDALL & ROUSE are similar: 'subjects of intent contemplation', '(four) forms of mindfulness' and 'earnest meditations'.<sup>45</sup> Slightly different are EDGERTON and HONDA with 'application(s) of mentality'.<sup>46</sup> CONZE prefers 'pillar of mindfulness' and 'applications of mindfulness'<sup>47</sup>, BRAARVIG 'presence of recollection'<sup>48</sup> and WAYMAN 'station of mindfulness'.<sup>49</sup> But in many ways summarising and combining all of these interpretations is LAMOTTE: '(les quatre) fixations-de-l'attention'.<sup>50</sup> Distinct from these scholars is DAYAL. He argues for 'the four fields of mindfulness'.<sup>51</sup>

Table 2.1: The applications of mindfulness.

---

i.)	application of mindfulness to the body ( <i>kāyasmṛtyupasthāna</i> )
ii.)	application of mindfulness to perception ( <i>vedanāsmṛtyupasthāna</i> )
iii.)	application of mindfulness to thought ( <i>cittasmṛtyupasthāna</i> )
iv.)	application of mindfulness to phenomena ( <i>dharmasmṛtyupasthāna</i> )

---

In the ŚS and ŚSKĀ the establishment of mindfulness (Skt. *smṛti* ≡ Pāli *sati*) is critical to the progress of a bodhisattva. In the seventh verse of the ŚSKĀ Ś says that a bodhisattva must protect his person by eschewing

<sup>41</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS, pt. II, vol. III, p. 128; & pt. III, vol. IV, p. 214.

<sup>42</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, p. 672.

<sup>43</sup> HORNER, I, pp. 70–82; & III, pp. 344 & 536; & THITṬILA, pp. 251–270.

<sup>44</sup> DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, 'Bodhisattva', p. 752.

<sup>45</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 216ff., 107 & 249.

<sup>46</sup> EDGERTON, p. 614; & HONDA, p. 167, n. 3.

<sup>47</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 436.

<sup>48</sup> BRAARVIG, II, pp. 480–509.

<sup>49</sup> WAYMAN, 'Indian Buddhism', pp. 418–419.

<sup>50</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, p. 1122.

<sup>51</sup> DAYAL, pp. 84–85.

fruitless outcomes (*niṣphalasyandavarjana*). In the eighth verse he says that this is to be attained by constant mindfulness (*sadāsmṛtyā*). In the Śs, in his commentary on the seventh and eighth verses of the ŚSKĀ, Ś enumerates the 'twelve mindfulnesses which secure the abandonment of outcomes which are fruitless'.<sup>52</sup> He concludes his list by indicating the lengths to which a bodhisattva is expected to go to secure mindfulness. The twelfth mindfulness is :

Going before a gathering of a great number of sentient beings,  
mindfulness aimed at preserving the [eleven forms of] mindfulness  
as described, even by forsaking other actions.<sup>53</sup>

In Mahāyāna literature, mindfulness is often associated and in compound with awareness (*saṃprajanya*). In the final verse of the ŚSKĀ the complete attainment of the right strivings is said to arise from mindfulness and awareness. In the Śs the relationship between mindfulness and awareness is described at length in passages taken from the *Ugraparipṛcchā*, the *Ratnacūḍasūtra* and the *Prājñāpāramitā*.<sup>54</sup> Mindfulness and awareness, it seems, are fundamental to the attainment of emptiness.<sup>55</sup>

In the Śs and ŚSKĀ Ś wishes to make it absolutely clear that the cultivation of mindfulness and awareness is prerequisite to progress along the path :

And in this very place<sup>56</sup> regarding a renunciant bodhisattva it was said: 'There is no letting slip of mindfulness and awareness'.<sup>57</sup>

Likewise, much of the fifth chapter of the BCA concerns the value of

<sup>52</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 118, ln. 4:

*dvādaśemāḥ smṛtayo niṣphalasyandavarjanāya saṃvartante |*

<sup>53</sup> Ibid., p. 118, lns. 13–14:

*mahājanasaṃpātaṃ prāyo 'nyakāryatyāgenāpi yathoktasṃti-  
rakṣātātparyasmṛtir iti ||*

<sup>54</sup> Ibid., p. 120, lns. 11ff. Other ref. in the Śs are: Ibid., p. 120, lns. 5 & 6; p. 123, ln. 15; p. 190, ln. 14; p. 271, ln. 10; & p. 357, lns. 7–9.

<sup>55</sup> Ibid., p. 272, lns. 12ff.:

*tatra katamā sarvākāvaropetā sūnyatā | yā na dānavikalā'... na  
smṛtisaṃprajanyavikalā |*

For a more complete version of this passage together with tr., cf. § 5.3.2, pp. 152ff.

<sup>56</sup> Viz. in the *Ugraparipṛcchā*.

<sup>57</sup> Ibid., p. 120, lns. 5–6:

*atraiva ca pravrajitabodhisattvam adhiḥṛtyoktaṃ smṛtisaṃpra-  
janyasyāvīkṣepa iti ||*

mindfulness and awareness.<sup>58</sup> Ś's emphasis reflects the literature of the Mahāyāna in general.<sup>59</sup> It is generally agreed that a bodhisattva will attain little without mindfulness and awareness.

Accordingly, mindfulness is one of those few qualities which appears in more than one set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment. Mindfulness is fundamental not only to the applications of mindfulness. It is also the third faculty (*smṛtīndriya*), the third power (*smṛtibala*), the first member of enlightenment (*smṛtysaṃbodhyaṅga*) and the seventh member of the noble eightfold way (*samyaksmṛti*). It can be seen from Table 2.1<sup>60</sup> that the objects of the application of mindfulness are the body (*kāya*), perception (*vedanās*), thought (*citta*) and phenomena (dharmas). The *Saundarānandakāvya* of Aśvaghōṣa and the *Mahāyānasūtrālaṅkāra* of Asaṅga hold that these four applications are to be applied as antidotes (counter-measures) (*pratipakṣas*) to the four erroneous views (*viparyāsas*).<sup>61</sup>

The nature of the four erroneous views is related in the Śs with a quotation from the *Ugradattaparipṛcchā*:

... Fearing the misapprehension<sup>62</sup> that in that which is impermanent there is that which is permanent. Fearing the misapprehension that in the non self there is a self. Fearing the misapprehension that in that which is impure there is that which is pure. Fearing the misapprehension that in that which is painful there is that which is pleasurable. ...<sup>63</sup>

To counteract the erroneous view associated with purity (*śuciviparyāsa*), a bodhisattva is to focus his mind on the impurity of the body (*kāyāśuci*). To counteract the erroneous view associated with pleasure

<sup>58</sup> Cf. esp. MINAYEFF, BCA 5:18, pp. 170–171; & 5:108, p. 170. For remarks on this subject, cf. also MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 5, pp. 35–37.

<sup>59</sup> LEFMANN, p. 8, ln. 2; p. 34, ln. 15; p. 234, ln. 2; p. 273, ln. 5; p. 373, ln. 4; & p. 434, ln. 16; MITRA, p. 326, ln. 7, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 86, n. 17; LÉVI, I, pp. 140–141; & p. 172, ln. 22; GHOSA, p. 1429, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 86, n. 21; & RAHDER, § Bhūmi I, ¶ O, p. 8, ln. 6; § Bhūmi V, ¶ B, p. 42, ln. 15; & § Bhūmi V, ¶ I, p. 44, ln. 18.

<sup>60</sup> P. 29.

<sup>61</sup> JOHNSTON, xvii, 25, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 90; & LÉVI, I, p. 140, lns. 24–25. For the *viparyāsas*, cf. also LAMOTTE, *Le Traité*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1150ff. For a more detailed discussion of this process in the Śs, cf. § 5.3.1, pp. 127ff..

<sup>62</sup> I.e., *viparyāsa*: 'error' & 'delusion' in: EDGERTON, p. 483; 'perverted view' in: HARRISON, 'Ekottarikāgama', ¶ 20, p. 271; 'erroneous views' & 'misapprehensions' in: OLDMEADOW, p. 170, ln. 5 & n. 1; & 'waywardness' in: WAYMAN, *Calming*, p. 486.

<sup>63</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 198, lns. 11–13:

... 'anītye nītya iti viparyāsabhayabhīto 'nātmany ātmeti viparyāsabhayabhīto 'śucau śucir iti viparyāsabhayabhīto duṣkhe sukham iti viparyāsabhayabhītaḥ'...

For a more complete tr. of this passage, cf. § 5.3.1, pp. 135ff..

(*sukhaviparyāsa*), he is to concentrate on the unsatisfactoriness of sensation (*vedanāduḥkha*). Conversely, it is thought that by concentrating on the impermanence of thought (*cittānityatā*), he will counteract the erroneous view related to permanence (*nityaviparyāsa*), and that by concentrating on the selflessness of phenomena (*dharmānairātmya*), he will counteract the erroneous view related to a belief in the self (*ātmaviparyāsa*).

Ś believes that the correct application of these antidotes is crucial. He therefore allocates one complete chapter of the Śs—*Smṛtyupasthānap° Trayodaśaḥ*—to a discussion of the applications.<sup>64</sup>

It can be seen from Table 5.4<sup>65</sup> that Ś places his description of the applications of mindfulness within a section on the purification of one's person (*ātmabhāvaśuddhi*) and within a subsection on the perfection of wisdom (*prajñāpāramitā*). In this section Ś appeals to the authority of a large number of texts.<sup>66</sup> He concludes that the practice of the first set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment is essential for understanding emptiness (*śūnyatā*)<sup>67</sup>.

The practice of the four applications of mindfulness is believed to lead a bodhisattva to realize that neither his body, nor perception, nor thoughts, nor indeed anything whatsoever should be considered permanent, pure, or satisfactory. Neither will anything appear to exist from its own side independent of other things.<sup>68</sup> It is thought that this realization destroys the four erroneous views.<sup>69</sup>

But more constructively, this experience of the impermanence, impurity, unsatisfactoriness and selflessness of persons and phenomena is also thought to enable a bodhisattva to wholly sacrifice his person that he might become completely devoted to the service of others.<sup>70</sup> In this respect the successful attainment of the four applications of mindfulness is actually the attainment of the principle theme of the Śs and ŚSKĀ—the complete giving of one's person, enjoyments and merit.

### 2.3 *Samyakpradhānas.*

Not producing any evil. The attainment of the good.

The complete purification<sup>71</sup> of one's mind. This is the teaching of

<sup>64</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 228–241.

<sup>65</sup> P. 126.

<sup>66</sup> The *Dharmasamgītisūtra*, *Ratnacūḍa*, *Vīradattaparipṛcchā*, *Akṣayamatisūtra*, *Kṣayamatisūtra*, *Lalitavistara* & *Lokanāthavyākaraṇa*.

<sup>67</sup> For useful discussion of *śūnyatā*, cf. NAGAO, 'Emptiness'; & Idem, 'Ontology'.

<sup>68</sup> For an extensive discourse on the selflessness of persons & phenomena by Ś, cf. MINAYEFF, *BCA* 9:58–151, pp. 212–219. For remarks on this theme, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 9, pp. 66–76.

<sup>69</sup> LÉVI, I, p. 140, ln. 24.

<sup>70</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 230.

<sup>71</sup> I.e., *paryavadana*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 334.

the Buddha.<sup>72</sup>

Thus it is also shown in the *Akṣayamatisūtra*: 'He produces desire for the destruction of bad, evil dharmas [when they have arisen]... And any other things, again, whatsoever other things also, that make the mind distracted, that conduce to<sup>73</sup> hostility<sup>74</sup> towards the religious aggregate of concentration<sup>75</sup>, this is called the opponent of concentration... These are called bad, evil dharmas.'<sup>76</sup>

The second set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment is referred to as the right strivings (Skt. *samyakpradhānas* ≡ Pāli *sammappadhānas*).<sup>77</sup> The interpretation of *samyakpradhāna* is problematic and presents difficulties to a translator.<sup>78</sup>

The Pāli form is rendered 'right exertion' by RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE.<sup>79</sup> For RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS they are the 'supreme efforts' and the 'fourfold great struggle against evil'.<sup>80</sup> HORNER prefers the 'right efforts' and THITṬILA the 'right strivings'.<sup>81</sup>

The Sanskrit form is translated as 'the four kinds of quietism' by BENDALL & ROUSE.<sup>82</sup> LAMOTTE renders *sammappadhāna* as 'efforts

<sup>72</sup> BERNHARD, pp. XXVIII, *Pāpavarga*, p. 651:

*sarvāpāpasyākaraṇam kuśalasyopasampadaḥ |  
svacittaparyavadanam etad buddhasya śāsanam || 1 ||*

For parallel passages, cf. SENART, III, p. 420, lns. 12–13; RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, II, p. 49; HARDY, pp. 43, 81, 171, & 186; & RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS, § 183, pp. 243–244.

<sup>73</sup> I.e., *saṃvartante*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 540.

<sup>74</sup> I.e., *vipakṣa*: cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 356.

<sup>75</sup> I.e., *samādhiskandha*, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 607–608, def. 3. There are three such *skandhas*: *i.*) *śīlaskandha*; *ii.*) *samādhiskandha*; & *iii.*) *prajñāskandha*.

<sup>76</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 117, lns. 13–16:

*tathākṣayamatisūtre 'pi darśitam | pāpakā[61a]nām akuśalānām  
dhārmāṇām prahāṇāya chandaṃ janayatīty atra prastāve yāni  
cānyāni punaḥ kānicid anyāny api cittavikṣepakarāni yāni samādhiskandhasya  
vipakṣāya saṃvartante' ayam ucyate samādhivipakṣaḥ  
| yāvad ime ucyante pāpa(kā)† akuśalā dharmā iti ||*

For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 169.

<sup>77</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 15. For the text & tr. of some primary sources for the right strivings, cf. Appendix B, pp. 203ff.. In addition, cf. VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN, § 5, pp. 10ff.; & § 95, p. 139, lns. 6–7; BRAARVIG, II, p. 510; LÉVI, I, p. 141, ln. 13–p. 142, ln. 11; & NATTIER, ¶ 23E, p. 219.

<sup>78</sup> For comments on the derivation of the compound, cf. DAYAL, pp. 102–104; EDGERTON, pp. 389–390; & GETHIN, pp. 70–72.

<sup>79</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, p. 695.

<sup>80</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS, pt. III, vol. IV, p. 215; & pt. II, vol. III, p. 128.

<sup>81</sup> HORNER, III pp. 344 & 354; & THITṬILA, pp. 271–281.

<sup>82</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 107. Although this is corrected in: *ibid.*, p. 249, by the use of 'the right exertions'.

corrects' and *samyakprahāṇa* as 'destructions correctes'.<sup>83</sup> CONZE translates *samyakprahāṇa* as 'right effort'<sup>84</sup> and BRAARVIG as 'correct elimination'<sup>85</sup>. DAYAL and especially EDGERTON and GETHIN are careful to distinguish between the meaning of the Prakrit form—*pahāṇa*—the Pāli form—*padhāna*—and the Sanskrit—*prahāṇa*.<sup>86</sup>

DAYAL holds that the use of the Sanskrit word *prahāṇa*—relinquishing, abandoning, avoiding<sup>87</sup>—is incorrect. He asserts that the proper Sanskrit rendering of the Pāli word *padhāna* is *pradhāna*, that is, exertion.<sup>88</sup> In support, he appeals to the usage of words derived from *pra + √ dhā* in a number of significant Mahāyāna texts but acknowledges that the usage of words derived from *pra + √ hā* gradually came to be accepted.<sup>89</sup>

EDGERTON appears to agree. He identifies the Sanskrit *prahāṇa* with the Pāli *padhāna*, the Prakrit *pahāṇa*, and with the Sanskrit *pradhāna*.<sup>90</sup> All of these words he generally translates as exertion or strenuousness. EDGERTON also seems in agreement about the gradual shift of meaning from the four exertions to the four abandonments. In addition, EDGERTON notes—as does LAMOTTE—that in the *Abhidharmakośa* the earlier Chinese translation of *samyakpradhānāḥ* stresses effort while the later abandonment.<sup>91</sup> WAYMAN's translation successfully combines these two meanings—'the four right elimination-exertions'.<sup>92</sup>

The emphasis, then, may gradually have moved away from endeavour towards relinquishment. Even so, the various formulae for the four right

<sup>83</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, p. 1123.

<sup>84</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 415.

<sup>85</sup> BRAARVIG, II, pp. 510–520.

<sup>86</sup> DAYAL, pp. 102–103; EDGERTON, pp. 389–390; & GETHIN, pp. 69–72. The multivalence of *prahāṇa* is noted in: BRAARVIG, II, p. 510, n. 2. In: SILK, p. 103, ... *nāpi kasyacid dharmasya prahāṇāyābhīyukta...* is tr. '... He does not exert himself for the removal of anything at all...'

<sup>87</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 700.

<sup>88</sup> EDGERTON, p. 380.

<sup>89</sup> For words derived from *pra + √ dhā*, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, ln. 11; SENART, III p. 120, ln. 14; JOHNSTON, xvii, 24, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 102; GHOSA, p. 1436, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 102; LÉVI, I, p. 57, ln. 16; & p. 141, ln. 13–p. 142, ln. 11; RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 38, ln. 26.

For words derived from *pra + √ hā*, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', xlvii, p. 105, ln. 14; p. 272, ln. 15; & p. 356, ln. 8; DAS & ŚĀSTRĪ, p. 104, ln. 23, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 103; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 959, p. 51; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 45, p. 26; & LÉVI, I, pp. 141–142.

<sup>90</sup> EDGERTON, pp. 380 & 389. In support, in addition to some of the ref. used by DAYAL, EDGERTON notes: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 105, ln. 14; SENART, III, p. 120, ln. 14; LEFMANN, p. 8, ln. 5; p. 256, ln. 6; & p. 426, ln. 7; VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN, § 95, p. 139, ln. 6; & COWELL & NEIL, p. 208, ln. 8.

<sup>91</sup> EDGERTON, p. 380; & LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, p. 1123. For the text itself, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *L'Abhidharmakośa*, Bk. VI p. 281. Cf. also NATTIER, ¶ 23E, p. 219, & n. 374. *Apropos Chin. usage*, cf. HARRISON, '*Ekottarikāgama*', ¶ 26, p. 272.

<sup>92</sup> WAYMAN, '*Indian Buddhism*', p. 419.

Table 2.2: The right strivings.

---

i.)	non production of non existing bad dharmas
ii.)	destruction of existing bad dharmas
iii.)	production of non existing good dharmas
iv.)	increase of existing good dharmas

---

strivings remain similar. It can be seen from the passage quoted in § 1.2<sup>93</sup> and those in Appendix B<sup>94</sup> that almost all of the formulae of the right strivings, whether they be of the Hīnayāna or Mahāyāna, agree with the framework given in Table 2.2.<sup>95</sup>

The summary of the right strivings in the Śs is typical<sup>96</sup>: *a.*) when bad (*akuśala*) and evil (*pāpaka*) dharmas have not been produced, a bodhisattva is to develop a strong desire (*chanda*) that they shall not be produced; *b.*) when evil dharmas have been produced, he is to desire their destruction (*prahāṇa*); *c.*) when good (*kuśala*) dharmas have not been produced, he is to desire that they be produced; *d.*) when good dharmas have been produced, he is to desire that they should continue (*sthitaye*) and increase (*bhūyobhāvāya*); and *e.*) that each of these four endeavours might successfully come to pass, he is to strive (*vyāyacchati*), to generate energy (*vīryam ārabhate*), to take hold of or master his mind (*cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti*) and to wholeheartedly exert himself (*samyakpraṇidadhāti*).

In his summary of the right strivings, Ś highlights the importance of energy (Skt. *vīryārambha* ≡ Pāli *viriyārambha*). The same emphasis is found in all sources for the formula of the right strivings. The acquisition and deployment of energy (*vīrya*) is necessary for any *arhant* or bodhisattva. As Ś says in the BCA:

In this way, possessing patience, may he obtain energy, for enlightenment depends on energy.<sup>97</sup>

This theme recurs in the Śs. At the beginning of a chapter in praise of the perfection of energy (*vīryapāramitā*) it is said:

<sup>93</sup> P. 20.

<sup>94</sup> Pp. 203ff..

<sup>95</sup> P. 35.

<sup>96</sup> Quoted above on p. 20. Cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, lns. 10–14.

<sup>97</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 7: 1ab, p. 188:

*evam kṣamī bhajed vīryaṃ vīrye bodhir yataḥ sthitā |*

Thus established in patience, may he apply energy to sacred knowledge<sup>98</sup>.

Otherwise the very sacred knowledge is conducive to his destruction.<sup>99</sup>

A bodhisattva clearly needs an abundance of energy, not merely to practice the right strivings, but to move any real distance along the path.<sup>100</sup>

At a more general level, Table 2.2<sup>101</sup> shows that the four right strivings possess a twofold structure. The first two elements—the non production of non existing bad dharmas and the destruction of existing bad dharmas—can be subsumed under the heading of relinquishing, abandoning, or avoiding (*prahāṇa*). Both elements concern essentially negative actions: *a.*) protecting one's person and so on from the creation of unprofitable dharmas; and *b.*) purifying one's person and so on from unprofitable dharmas.

The last two elements—the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas—concern exerting, striving and devoting oneself towards something (*pradhāna*).<sup>102</sup> These two elements are essentially positive. Together they involve the creation, maintenance and increase of profitable dharmas.

The formula of the four right strivings, then, as it appears in the literature of the Hīnayāna and the Mahāyāna, embraces the two concepts found in *pra + √hā* and *pra + √dhā*. The right strivings signify both avoidance and endeavour. They affirm, at one and the same time, the destruction of negative dharmas and the effortful creation of positive dharmas. Destruction and construction are intrinsic to the formula and neither contradicts the other.

Although the possibility of confusion remains, it would be hard to signify both the positive and negative aspects of the right strivings without recourse to a multivalent term such as *samyakpradhāna*. The various renderings of *samyakpradhāna* reflect its multivalence but also its tendency to confuse. One translator stresses the practice of abandonment, another that of endeavour. Yet neither of these reflects the full significance of *samyakpradhāna*. It actually means both right abandonment and right endeavour.

<sup>98</sup> I.e., *śruta*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 536; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 386.

<sup>99</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 189, ln. 3:

*evaṃ kṣāntipratisthitāḥ śrute vīryam ārabheta |*  
*anyathā śrutam evāśya vināśāya saṃpadyate ||*

<sup>100</sup> As the present writer considers this subject in another paper—MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 7, pp. 48–55—no more will be said of the importance of the generation of energy.

<sup>101</sup> P. 35.

<sup>102</sup> For the latter, cf. the def. of *pradhā* in: MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 680.

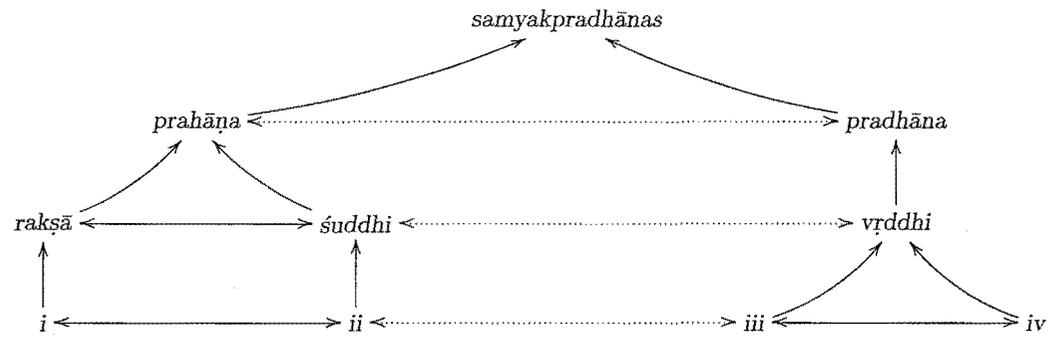


Figure 2.1: The right strivings (for key cf. n. 4 on p. x).

The term *samyakpradhāna* shows that the actual meaning of words sometimes escapes simple definition. It also shows that an over focus on the philological origins of words as an explanation of meaning will at times have results which are at best barren.<sup>103</sup>

The formula of the right strivings which occurs in the Śs elucidates and perhaps extends the meaning of each element : *i.*) the non production of non existing dharmas is defined as the practice of preservation (*rakṣā*) ; *ii.*) the destruction of existing bad dharmas is defined as the practice of purification (*śuddhi*) ; & *iii.*) the generation of non existing good dharmas and the development of existing good dharmas is defined as growth or increase (*vṛddhi*).<sup>104</sup> The practice of the four right strivings, then, is defined as the practice of preservation, purification and increase. This *schema*—represented in Figure 2.1<sup>105</sup>—is not without parallel.

Two parallel formulae from the Nikāyas are given in Appendix B.<sup>106</sup> Both formulae occur in the *Āṅguttara-Nikāya*. Only one occurs in the *Dīgha-Nikāya*. All formulae begin :

Four, O Bhikkhu, are the endeavours. What four? The endeavour of restraint. The endeavour of abandoning. The endeavour of development. The endeavour of protecting.<sup>107</sup>

In the *Āṅguttara-Nikāya* and *Dīgha-Nikāya* the right strivings (*padhānas*) are defined as the strivings of restraint (*saṃvara*), abandoning (*pahāna*), development (*bhāvana*) and preservation (*anurakkhana*). The formula from the *Āṅguttara-Nikāya* given in Appendix B<sup>108</sup> as Formula B1 is, apart from this classification, almost identical with the most commonly used formula of the four right strivings.

In the Nikāyas, then, the definition of the right strivings is fourfold : *i.*) the non production of non existing bad dhammas is defined as the practice of restraint (*saṃvara*) ; *ii.*) the destruction of existing bad dhammas is defined as the practice of abandoning (*pahāna*) ; *iii.*) the production of non existing good dhammas is defined as the practice of generation or cultivation (*bhāvana*) ; and *iv.*) the increase of existing good dhammas is defined as the practice of preservation (*anurakkhana*). While in both the

<sup>103</sup> This may be so with some discussions of the meaning of *samyakpradhāna* over and against *samyakpradhāna*.

<sup>104</sup> For more on this, cf. § 6, pp. 159ff.

<sup>105</sup> P. 37.

<sup>106</sup> Pp. 206ff..

<sup>107</sup> MORRIS & HARDY, II, § 14, pp. 16–17 ; & § 69, p. 74 :

*Cattār' imāni bhikkhave padhānāni. Katamāni cattāri? Saṃvarapadhānaṃ pahānappadhānaṃ bhāvanappadhānaṃ, anurakkhanappadhānaṃ.*

Cf. also RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, pp. 225–226.

<sup>108</sup> Pp. 206ff..

Table 2.3: The right strivings in the ŚS, AN &amp; DN.

	ŚS <sup>a</sup>	AN <sup>b</sup> & DN <sup>c</sup>
i.) non production of non existing bad dharmas	rakṣā	saṃvara
ii.) destruction of existing bad dharmas	śuddhi	pahāna
iii.) production of non existing good dharmas	vṛddhi	bhāvana
iv.) increase of existing good dharmas	vṛddhi	anurakkhana

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 356, lns. 10–14.<sup>b</sup> MORRIS & HARDY, II, § 14, pp. 16–17; & § 69, p. 74.<sup>c</sup> RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, pp. 225–226.

ŚS and Nikāyas the right strivings remain subject to the twofold classification of abandonment (*pra + √ hā*) and endeavour (*pra + √ dhā*), different terms are associated with each striving. The nomenclature of the right strivings in the ŚS and Nikāyas is compared in brief in Table 2.3.<sup>109</sup>

The gradual path to liberation or enlightenment is typical of both the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna.<sup>110</sup> A number of Hīnayāna texts, especially post-canonical texts, advocate the practice of the conditions favourable to enlightenment and the right strivings at definite stages on the path.<sup>111</sup> Likewise, some significant Mahāyāna texts suggest that the conditions and right strivings be practised at the fourth of the ten stages (*bhūmis*).<sup>112</sup>

In the literature of the Mahāyāna and Hīnayāna, then, the rôle of the right strivings is determined by the concept of the path which prevails in a particular text.<sup>113</sup> This paper suggests that the characteristic feature of the right strivings in the ŚS is that rather than being assigned to a particular stage on the path, they provide the framework for the complete

<sup>109</sup> P. 39.<sup>110</sup> COX, 'Attainment'; & BOND.<sup>111</sup> GETHIN, pp. 23–24 & 72–76.<sup>112</sup> RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, pp. 38–39; WOGIHARA, 'Bodhisattvabhūmi', p. 341; LÉVI, I, p. 141, ln. 13–p. 142, ln. 11; HUNTINGTON & WANGCHEN, p. 155; & JOHNSTON, xvii, 24, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 103. For a useful summary of the *bhūmis* and their significance on the path of a bodhisattva, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, 'Bodhisattva', § III, pp. 743–749; & LINDTNER, pp. 267–268. Other texts assign the conditions to other positions. For ref. to the *Abhidharmakośa*, *Abhidharmadīpa*, *Abhidharmahr̥daya*, & *Abhidharmasamuccaya*, cf. GETHIN, pp. 71 & 338–342.<sup>113</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 76.

path.

## 2.4 *Ṛddhipādas.*

The third set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment consists of the four bases of supernatural power (Skt. *ṛddhipādāḥ* ≡ Pāli *iddhipādāḥ*).<sup>114</sup> An *arhant* or bodhisattva is generally expected to cultivate these powers.<sup>115</sup>

The formula which describes the bases of supernatural power in the literature of the Mahāyāna differs slightly from that in the literature of the Hīnayāna.<sup>116</sup> GETHIN suggests the general sense of the formula :

Here a *bhikkhu* develops the basis of success that is furnished both with concentration gained by means of desire to act, and with forces of endeavour ; he develops the basis of success that is furnished both with concentration gained by means of strength and with forces of endeavour ; he develops the basis of success that is furnished both with concentration gained by means of mind and with forces of endeavour ; he develops the basis of success that is furnished both with concentration gained by means of investigation, and with forces of endeavour.<sup>117</sup>

The actual meaning of this formula is somewhat obscure. Scholars translate *ṛddhipāda* in various ways.

RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS translate the Pāli as 'stages to efficiency' and 'roads to saintship'.<sup>118</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE prefer the 'constituent or basis of psychic power'.<sup>119</sup> HORNER uses 'bases of psychic

<sup>114</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 15.

<sup>115</sup> For the Hīnayāna, cf. MORRIS & HARDY, I, pp. 39 & 297; II, p. 256; III, p. 82; IV, p. 464; add. ref. in VI, p. 21; RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, II, p. 213; III, pp. 77 & 221; add. ref. in III, p. 303; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, I, p. 103; add. ref. in IV, p. 29; FEER, IV, p. 365; V, pp. 254, 263-264 & 278; add. ref. in VI, p. 18; TAYLOR, I, pp. 111 & 113; II, p. 205, quoted in: GETHIN, p. 81, n. 1; SENART, I, p. 74, ln. 4; II, p. 324, ln. 4; & III, p. 120, ln. 12; COWELL & NEIL, p. 95, ln. 14; p. 201, lns. 9-10; p. 208, ln. 8; & p. 264, ln. 29; SPEYER, I, p. 16, ln. 11; & p. 327, ln. 6; & DAVIDS, p. 216; add. ref. on p. 442.

For the Mahāyāna, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 15; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 46, p. 27; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 966-970, pp. 51-52; GHOSA, p. 1436, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 106; RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, pp. 38-39; DUTT, '*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*', pp. 207-208; LEFMANN, p. 8, ln. 5; p. 33; & p. 183, ln. 5; VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN, § 95, p. 139, ln. 8; FINOT, p. 5, ln. 17; LÉVI, I, p. 142, ln. 11; & BRAARVIG, II, pp. 520-525.

<sup>116</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1124-1125; & GETHIN, pp. 92-94.

<sup>117</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 81.

<sup>118</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS, pt. II, vol. III, p. 128; & pt. III, vol. IV, p. 215.

<sup>119</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, p. 121.

power', THITṬILA the 'bases of accomplishment' and GETHIN the 'bases of success'.<sup>120</sup>

According to MONIER-WILLIAMS, the Sanskrit is best translated as 'the four constituent parts of supernatural power'.<sup>121</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE prefer 'the constituents of magic power'.<sup>122</sup> DAYAL argues for the 'bases of wonder-working power'.<sup>123</sup> EDGERTON uses 'elements or bases of supernatural power',<sup>124</sup> and CONZE 'roads to psychic power' and 'bases of psychic power'.<sup>125</sup> LAMOTTE, perhaps influenced by LÉVI—'les pieds-de-Magie'<sup>126</sup>—translates *catvāra ṛddhipādāḥ* as 'les quatre fondements du pouvoir magique'.<sup>127</sup> Although the precise meaning of the formula of the four bases of supernatural power remains uncertain, their general significance seems clear.<sup>128</sup>

For a bodhisattva engaged in meditative practice, the tendency for thought that is focused (*ekāgracitta*) to become scattered (*vikṣipta*) is constant. To counteract mental sinking a bodhisattva is expected to apply the four concentrations (*samādhi*) of the bases of supernatural power: *i.*) the concentration of desire (*chanda*); *ii.*) the concentration of energy (*vīrya*); *iii.*) the concentration of thought (*citta*); and *iv.*) the concentration of investigation (*mīmāṃsā*). Each of these concentrations gives predominance (*adhipati*) to a quality which counteracts mental sinking.<sup>129</sup> These concentrations are supposed to refocus thought so that the practice of the applications of mindfulness, right strivings and so on might continue.<sup>130</sup>

Although the actual formula of the bases of supernatural power does not occur in the Śs, it should not be assumed that Ś is ignorant of their value. In agreement with Hīnayānist and Mahāyānist literature in general, he lists the four bases of supernatural power as the third set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment.<sup>131</sup> It seems that Ś completely integrates the practice of the bases of supernatural power with his general description of meditative practice.<sup>132</sup>

<sup>120</sup> HORNER, III, pp. 344 & 357; THITṬILA, pp. 282–296; & GETHIN, pp. 80–103.

<sup>121</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 226.

<sup>122</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 249.

<sup>123</sup> DAYAL, pp. 104–106.

<sup>124</sup> EDGERTON, pp. 151–152.

<sup>125</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 137.

<sup>126</sup> LÉVI, II, p. 239.

<sup>127</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traité*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1124–1125.

<sup>128</sup> Cf. BRAARVIG, II, pp. 520–525.

<sup>129</sup> For this practice in the Nikāyas and Abhidhamma and to some extent in Buddhist Sanskrit literature, cf. GETHIN, pp. 90–94.

<sup>130</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traité*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1177–1179.

<sup>131</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 15.

<sup>132</sup> The association of the applications of mindfulness, right strivings & supernatural knowledge of supernatural power (*ṛddhyabhijñā*) in: *ibid.*, p. 105, lns. 13–15, may ref. to the bases of supernatural power.

## 2.5 Indriyas &amp; Balas.

The fourth and fifth sets of the conditions favourable to enlightenment are the faculties (*indriyas*) and powers (*balas*).<sup>133</sup> In the literature of the Mahāyāna both sets usually to appear in succession.<sup>134</sup> It can be seen from Table 2.4<sup>135</sup> and Table 2.5<sup>136</sup> that the faculties and powers have the same names. This makes it necessary to clearly distinguish between them.

Table 2.4: The faculties.

---

i.)	faculty of faith ( <i>śraddhendriya</i> )
ii.)	faculty of energy ( <i>vīryendriya</i> )
iii.)	faculty of mindfulness ( <i>smṛtīndriya</i> )
iv.)	faculty of concentration ( <i>samādhīndriya</i> )
v.)	faculty of wisdom ( <i>prajñendriya</i> )

---

*Indriyas.*

MONIER-WILLIAMS translates *indriya* as ‘power’, ‘force’, ‘the quality which belongs especially to the mighty Indra’, ‘*semen virile*’, the ‘faculty of sense’, ‘sense’ itself and the ‘organ of sense’.<sup>137</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE translate both *indriya* and *bala* as ‘power’.<sup>138</sup> Following RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, EDGERTON defines an *indriya* as ‘one of the five moral *faculties*. . . to which correspond the five *powers* (*bala*) with the same names’.<sup>139</sup> THITṬILA considers an *indriya* a ‘controlling faculty’.<sup>140</sup> DAYAL considers ‘faculty’ and ‘organ’ inaccurate and argues for ‘chief categories’ or ‘chief

<sup>133</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 272, lns. 15–16.

<sup>134</sup> For the Mahāyāna, cf. *ibid.*, p. 3, ln. 6; p. 30, ln. 15; p. 32, lns. 10–14; p. 272, lns. 15–16; & pp. 316–317; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 43, p. 25; § 47, p. 27; & § 48, p. 28; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 977–987, pp. 52–53; LÉVI, I, p. 143, ln. 16–p. 144, ln. 1; RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 39; GHOSA, p. 1437, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 144; LEFMANN, p. 33, ln. 17–20; KERN & NANJIO, p. 80, ln. 1; DUTT, ‘*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*’, p. 208, lns. 3–7; BRAARVIG, II, pp. 525–535; & VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN, § 95, p. 139, lns. 8–9.

<sup>135</sup> P. 42.

<sup>136</sup> P. 43.

<sup>137</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 167.

<sup>138</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 283–285. Although in: *ibid.*, p. 249, the preferred rendering is ‘the moral qualities’ and ‘the forces’.

<sup>139</sup> EDGERTON, p. 115; & RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, pp. 121–122.

<sup>140</sup> THITṬILA, pp. 159–179.

controlling principles'.<sup>141</sup> LAMOTTE, while he warns against confusing the five faculties with 'les cinq organes', prefers to use 'les cinq facultés spirituelles'.<sup>142</sup> CONZE<sup>143</sup> and GETHIN<sup>144</sup> consider the *indriyas* 'faculties'. BRAARVIG considers them 'abilities'.<sup>145</sup>

Table 2.5: The powers.

---

i.)	power of faith ( <i>śraddhābala</i> )
ii.)	power of energy ( <i>vīryabala</i> )
iii.)	power of mindfulness ( <i>smṛtibala</i> )
iv.)	power of concentration ( <i>samādhībala</i> )
v.)	power of wisdom ( <i>prajñābala</i> )

---

The faculties of faith, energy, mindfulness, concentration and wisdom appear to be derived from a more extensive list which includes twenty-two faculties.<sup>146</sup> DAYAL and GETHIN suggest that this list can be subdivided into five sets which consist of three biological faculties, six faculties of sense and feeling, five spiritual faculties conducive to enlightenment and three faculties of knowledge.<sup>147</sup> This *schema* embraces the full range of an individual's physical, sensory, emotional, spiritual and intellectual experience. It seems that the development of these faculties is central to the well rounded development of an *arhant* or *bodhisattva*.

*Vīryendriya*. Reference is made to energy (*vīrya*) in § 2.3<sup>148</sup>. It remains only to stress the close association between the faculty of energy (*vīryen-*

<sup>141</sup> DAYAL, p. 144.

<sup>142</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traité*, T. III, ch. XXXI, p. 1125. For the five, or rather six, sense organs (*indriyas*), cf. TAKASAKI, pp. 112–113.

<sup>143</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 117.

<sup>144</sup> GETHIN, pp. 104–145.

<sup>145</sup> BRAARVIG, II, pp. 525–529.

<sup>146</sup> For the *Hīnayāna*, cf. MORRIS & HARDY, ref. in VI, pp. 21–22; RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, ref. in III, p. 303; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, ref. in IV, pp. 29–30; & FEER, V, pp. 203–207; add. ref. in VI, pp. 18–19; & DAVIDS, pp. 122–124, add. ref. on pp. 442–443. For the sense faculties, cf. Formula B2, pp. 207ff.

For the *Mahāyāna*, cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 2059–2081, pp. 110–111; & DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, '*Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*', pp. 158–184.

For the sense faculties, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 202, lns. 8–19.

<sup>147</sup> DAYAL, pp. 142–144; & GETHIN, pp. 104–106. For a slightly different classification, cf. LAMOTTE, *Le Traité*, T. III, ch. XXXVIII, pp. 1494–1495.

<sup>148</sup> Pp. 32ff.

*driya*) and the right strivings. The faculty of energy is described in the *Samyutta-Nikāya* :

In respect of the four right endeavours—here is the faculty of strength to be seen.<sup>149</sup>

And what is the faculty of strength? Here the noble disciple dwells as one who has produced strength; for the sake of abandoning unskillful *dhammas* and arousing skillful *dhammas* he is firm, of steady valour, un-relinquishing in purpose with regard to skillful *dhammas*.<sup>150</sup>

The strength which he acquires having produced the four right endeavours, this is called the faculty of strength.<sup>151</sup>

The faculty of energy, it seems, enables a bodhisattva to engage in the twofold training associated with the right strivings: *i.*) abandoning things which are unprofitable (*prahāṇa*); and *ii.*) striving for or devoting himself to things which are profitable (*pradhāna*). In addition, the faculty of energy is generated through and is manifest in such practice. In the *Samyutta-Nikāya* the relationship between the faculty of mindfulness and the applications of mindfulness is comparable.<sup>152</sup>

*Śraddhendriya*. The first member of the faculties conducive to enlightenment is the faculty of faith (*śraddhendriya*). It would be difficult to overstate the importance given to faith (Skt. *śraddhā* ≡ Pāli *saddhā*) in the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna.<sup>153</sup> For an *arhant* and bodhisattva, for a monk and lay person, faith is universally considered the *sine qua non* of spiritual progress. In the career of a bodhisattva, DAYAL believes that the Alpha is faith and that the Omega is wisdom or enlightenment.<sup>154</sup>

<sup>149</sup> Tr. in: GETHIN, p. 117. Cf. FEER, V, p. 196:

*catusu sammappadhānesu || ettha viriyindriyaṃ daṭṭhabbaṃ || ||*

<sup>150</sup> Tr. in: GETHIN, p. 117. Cf. FEER, V, p. 197:

*katamañ ca bhikkave viriyindriyaṃ || || idha bhikkave ariyasāvako āradhaviṛiyo viharati || akusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ pahānāya kusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ upasampadāya thāmaṃvā daḥaparakkamo anikkhattadhuro kusalesu dhammesu || ||*

<sup>151</sup> Tr. in: GETHIN, p. 117. Cf. FEER, V, p. 199:

*yaṃ kho bhikkhave cattāro sammappadhāne ārabba viriyam paṭilabhati || || idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave viriyindriyaṃ || ||*

<sup>152</sup> Ibid., V, p. 196ff.

<sup>153</sup> For the Hīnayāna, cf. TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, ref. in IV, pp. 154–155; MORRIS & HARDY, ref. in VI, pp. 116–117; RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, ref. in III, p. 320; & FEER, ref. in VI, p. 106.

<sup>154</sup> DAYAL, p. 145.

It is unfortunate that *śraddhā* proves so difficult to interpret and translate.<sup>155</sup> *Śraddhā* is often rendered as faith, but faith has too many significations and is potentially confusing.<sup>156</sup>

Whatever the precise meaning of *śraddhā* there is little doubt that it is given first place in a many lists. Faith is: *a.*) the first faculty; *b.*) the first power; *c.*) the first of the seven spiritual treasures (*dhanas*)<sup>157</sup>; *d.*) the first of the four requisites of success (*sampadās*)<sup>158</sup>; *e.*) the first of the one hundred and eight ways to enter into the light of the Dharma (*dharmaṃlokamukhas*)<sup>159</sup>; and *f.*) the first of the ten stage purifying (*bhūmipariśodhaka*) dharmas.<sup>160</sup>

Many passages in the BCA, ŚSKĀ and ŚS show that faith is significant. In the fourth chapter of the BCA, Ś compares faith in rareness and value to the attainment of human form and the appearance of Buddhas in the world.<sup>161</sup> In the tenth chapter, he evokes a triptych consisting of wisdom, faith and love (*śraddhāprajñākṛpānvita*).<sup>162</sup> In the second verse of the ŚSKĀ, he suggests that the basis which is faith (*śraddhāmūla*) should be strengthened before the generation of the mind of enlightenment.<sup>163</sup> In the first chapter of the ŚS, he says that faith in the Buddhas, in the scion of the Buddhas and in the highest enlightenment, leads to the development of the thought of the great beings (*cittaṃ mahāpuruṣāṇām*). Faith is also said to be like a mother who guides, produces, protects and increases all good qualities (*sarvagūṇas*).<sup>164</sup> Furthermore Ś believes that faith ensures the sharpness, clarity and endurance of the faculties and the powers.<sup>165</sup>

Ś believes, in short, that faith is the highest vehicle (*paramaḥ yānaḥ*)<sup>166</sup>, that for a bodhisattva:

... the practice of faith and so on should be constant. ...<sup>167</sup>

<sup>155</sup> Shown by the numerous papers devoted to this subject. For useful—although not recent—bibliographies on *śraddhā*, cf. AUGUSTINE, pp. 347–371; & ERGARDT, pp. 173–176.

<sup>156</sup> For a discussion of this issue and its relationship to the interpretation of Pāli literature, cf. GETHIN, pp. 106–112.

<sup>157</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1565–1572, p. 87; & EDGERTON, p. 275.

<sup>158</sup> SPEYER, I, p. 205, ln. 5; MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 1172; & EDGERTON, p. 575.

<sup>159</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 6973, p. 329; LEFMANN, p. 31, lns. 12ff.; & p. 207, ln. 1; & EDGERTON, pp. 281–282.

<sup>160</sup> RAHDER, § Bhūmi I, ¶ UU, p. 19, lns. 19–20.

<sup>161</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 4: 15, p. 166.

<sup>162</sup> Ibid., BCA 10: 27ab, p. 223.

<sup>163</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', ŚSKĀ 2, p. xxxix; & p. 2, lns. 13–14.

<sup>164</sup> Ibid., p. 2, lns. 16–18.

<sup>165</sup> Ibid., p. 3, ln. 6.

<sup>166</sup> Ibid., p. 5, ln. 8.

<sup>167</sup> Ibid., ŚSKĀ 25c, p. xlvii; & p. 316, lns. 3–4:

... *śraddhādīnāṃ sadābhyāsaḥ* ...

The final two faculties conducive to enlightenment are concentration (*samādhi*) and wisdom (Skt. *prajñā* ≡ Pāli *paññā*). Little will be said of these faculties. It is well known that in the works of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna it is considered essential to obtain concentration and wisdom.<sup>168</sup>

In the ŚS the relationship between each of the five faculties is explained with an extensive quotation :

Practice of these<sup>169</sup>—faith and so on<sup>170</sup>—is to be constant. Or rather of others<sup>171</sup>—faith and so on<sup>172</sup>—as he said in the noble *Akṣayamatisūtra*, the five faculties: ‘Which five? The faculty of faith. The faculty of energy. The faculty of mindfulness. The faculty of concentration. The faculty of wisdom. Then what is faith? That faith by which he has faith in four dharmas. Which four? He has faith regarding right view regarding the sphere<sup>173</sup> of transmigratory existence<sup>174</sup> and the mundane sphere. Confidence in the ripening of *karma* arises: ‘Whatsoever action I shall do, I shall enjoy the ripening of the fruit of this action’. He, even for the sake of his life, does not commit an action which is evil. He has faith in the way of the bodhisattva. And having resorted to this way, he does not cause to arise a strong desire for another way (vehicle). After having learnt about all the dharmas—real, clear, profound—which have the marks of dependent arising, non self, non being, non living, non person, designation, emptiness, causeless(ness) and desireless(ness), he has faith. And he does not adhere closely to all instances of false view<sup>175</sup>. He has faith in all the dharmas of the Buddhas, in their strength and skillfulness and so on. And having faith, doubt disappeared, he attains the dharmas of the Buddhas. This is said to be the faculty of faith. Then what is the faculty of energy? Those dharmas in which he has faith through the faculty of faith, these dharmas he attains through the faculty of energy. This is said to be the faculty of energy. Then what is the faculty of mindfulness? Those dharmas which he attains through the faculty of energy, these dharmas he does not cause to be lost through the faculty of mindfulness. This is said to be the faculty of mindfulness. Then what is the faculty of concentration? Those dharmas which he does not cause to be lost through the faculty of mindfulness, on these dharmas he establishes one-pointedness through the faculty of concentration. This is said to be the faculty of concentration. Then what is the faculty of

<sup>168</sup> Concentration & wisdom in the BCA & to a lesser extent in the ŚS, are discussed in MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 8 & ch. 9.

<sup>169</sup> Viz. the four dharmas conducive to specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*). For ref., cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>170</sup> Viz. faith (*śraddhā*), reverence (*gaurava*), humility (*nirmāna*) & energy (*vīrya*).

<sup>171</sup> Viz. the five faculties (*indriyas*). For ref., cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>172</sup> Viz. faith (*śraddhā*), energy (*vīrya*), mindfulness (*smṛti*), concentration (*samādhi*) & wisdom (*prajñā*).

<sup>173</sup> I.e., *avacarī*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 70–71.

<sup>174</sup> I.e., *saṃsāra*.

<sup>175</sup> I.e., *dr̥ṣṭīkṛta*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 269.

wisdom? Those dharmas on which he established one-pointedness through the faculty of concentration, these dharmas he examines and penetrates (understands) through the faculty of wisdom. This wisdom with respect to these dharmas, is one's own wisdom, it is not wisdom caused by others. This is said to be the faculty of wisdom. Thus these five faculties, which are connected and bound together, cause to be attained all the dharmas of the Buddhas and cause to be entered the stage of prediction<sup>176</sup>,<sup>177</sup>

This passage defines faith as: *i.*) belief in the workings of *karma*; *ii.*) belief in the value of bodhisattvas and the way of the bodhisattva; *iii.*) belief in doctrines associated with dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpāda*) and emptiness (*śūnyatā*); and *iv.*) belief in the dharmas of the Buddhas and in the value of striving to attain such dharmas for oneself. The other four faculties which contribute to enlightenment are supposed to help a bodhisattva actualise these four objects of belief<sup>178</sup>: *i.*) energy enables the attainment of the goal; *ii.*) mindfulness prevents the loss of the goal; *iii.*) concentration facilitates single minded focus on the goal;

<sup>176</sup> I.e., *vyākaraṇabhūmi*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 517, def. 3.

<sup>177</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 316, ln. 13–p. 317, ln. 12:

esāṃ śraddhādīnāṃ sadābhyāsaḥ kāryaḥ | athavānyeṣāṃ śraddhādīnāṃ || yathāha āryākṣayamatisūtre pañcemānīndriyāni | katamāni pañca | śraddhendriyaṃ vīryendriyaṃ smṛtīndriyaṃ samādhīndriyaṃ prajñendriyaṃ iti || tatra katamā śraddhā<sup>1</sup> yathā śraddhāyās catur dharmān abhiśraddadhāti | katamāṃś caturāḥ | saṃsārāvacarīṃ laukikīṃ samyagdr̥ṣṭiṃ śraddadhāti | sa karmavipākapratisāraṇo bhavati yad<sup>2</sup> yat karma kariṣyāmi tasya tasya karmaṇaḥ phalavipākam pratyanubhaviṣyāmīti | sa jīvitahetor apī pāpaṃ karma na karoti | bodhisatvacārikāṃ abhiśraddadhāti | taccaryāpratipannaś cānyatra yāne sphāṃ notpādayati | paramārthanīrthaṃ gambhīrapratītyasamutpādanairātmyaniḥsatvanirjīvaniḥpudgalavyavahārasūnyatānimitāprāṇihitalakṣaṇān sarvadharmān śrutvā śraddadhāti | sarvaḍṣṭīkṛtāni ca nānuṣete sarvabuddhadharmān balavaiśāradyaḥprabhṛtaṃś ca śraddadhāti | śraddhāya ca vigatakathamkathas tān buddhadharmān sumudānāyati | idam ucyate śraddhendriyaṃ || tatra katamad vīryendriyaṃ | yān dharmān śraddhendriyeṇa śraddadhāti tān dharmān vīryendriyeṇa samudānāyati idam ucyate vīryendriyaṃ || tatra katamat smṛtīndriyaṃ | yān dharmān vīryendriyeṇa samudānāyati tān dharmān [142a] smṛtīndriyeṇa na vipraṇāśayati | idam ucyate smṛtīndriyaṃ || tatra katamat samādhīndriyaṃ | yān dharmān smṛtīndriyeṇa na vipraṇāśayati tān samādhīndriyeṇaikāgrī karotīdam ucyate samādhīndriyaṃ || tatra katamat prajñendriyaṃ | yān dharmān samādhīndriyeṇaikāgrī karoti tān prajñendriyeṇa pratyavekṣate pratividhyati | yad eteṣu dharmeṣu pratyātmaññānam aparapratyayaññānam idam ucyate prajñendriyaṃ || evam imāni pañcendriyāni sahitāny anuprabadhāni sarvabuddhadharmān paripūrayanti<sup>3</sup> vyākaraṇabhūmiḥ cāpyayanti (iti)<sup>4</sup> ||

For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, pp. 169–170.

<sup>178</sup> LÉVI, I, verse 55, p. 143.

and *iv.*) wisdom helps a bodhisattva to perceive the true nature of the goal.

According to Ś, then, the practice of each of the five faculties supports and strengthens the practice of each of the others. He emphasises their interdependence. They should never, it seems, be considered in isolation.

*Balas.*

The faculties and powers refer to the same five dharmas. This leads some scholars to minimise their differences. KERN, LAMOTTE and GETHIN hold that the only real difference between them is that the powers are the more intense, strong and forceful.<sup>179</sup> DAYAL, on the other hand, argues for a 'radical distinction between the two categories'.<sup>180</sup> He holds that the faculties are essentially static, the powers dynamic. The description of the powers in the ŚS affirms the position of DAYAL.

In the ŚS Ś holds that the faculties mutually support each other in the generation, attainment, maintenance and increase of various objects of belief. When he describes the powers he makes no such claims. On the authority of the *Ratnacūḍasūtra* he asserts that the powers are typically martial. The powers: *a.*) wage war against all the Māras: *b.*) fight for the Mahāyāna against the Śrāvākayāna and Pratyekabuddhayāna; and *c.*) defeat all the mental defilements (*sarvakleśas*) and make the body strong and resilient and so on.<sup>181</sup> A bodhisattva, when he applies his merit for the benefit of others, is expected to say :

I apply my merit for a state of the body of unlimited strength and power in all sentient beings. I apply my merit for the arising of bodily power not to be crushed<sup>182</sup>—like the Cakravāḍa<sup>183</sup> mountains—in all sentient beings. I apply my merit for the inexhaustibility<sup>184</sup> of all powers and supports in all sentient beings.<sup>185</sup>

<sup>179</sup> Cf. ref. to KERN in: DAYAL, p. 144, n. 273; LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, p. 1127; & p. 1180, n. 1; & GETHIN, p. 145.

<sup>180</sup> DAYAL, p. 144.

<sup>181</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 317, lns. 13–17.

<sup>182</sup> I.e., *anavamardya*, fr. *an + ava + √mṛd*, lit. not to crush, tread down. Cf. EDGERTON, p. 73; & MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 102..

<sup>183</sup> Cf. EDGERTON, p. 221. For a useful diagram of this mountain range which surrounds the world, cf. TAKASAKI, p. 134.

<sup>184</sup> I.e., *atrptatā*, lit. insatiability: cf. EDGERTON, p. 256; & MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 453–454. For *atrpta* tr. as 'never getting tired', cf. BRAARVIG, II, pp. 206–207.

<sup>185</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 32, lns. 10–12 :

*sarvasatveṣv aparyantasthāmabalaśarīratāyām pariṇāmayāmi | sarvasatvānām cakravāḍaparvatānavamardyakāyabalopapattaye pariṇāmayāmi | sarvasatvānām sarvabalopastambhanātrptatāyām pariṇāmayāmi ||*

Similar prowess and invincibility is noted in the *Arthaviniścayasūtra*.<sup>186</sup> And the *Mahāyānasūtrālaṅkāra* says that the powers are so named for they make their opponents (*vipakṣas*) appear weak (*durbala*).<sup>187</sup>

In sum, training in the five faculties and powers is, in the Śs and ŚSKĀ, as in the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna in general, of singular importance on the way to enlightenment.

## 2.6 Bodhyaṅgas.

The sixth set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment is the members of enlightenment (Skt. *bodhyaṅgas* ≡ Pāli *bojjhaṅgas*).<sup>188</sup> In the literature of the Hīnayāna and the Mahāyāna, the members of enlightenment are practised by *arhants* and bodhisattvas.<sup>189</sup>

The significance of the members of enlightenment is evident from frequent reference to them as jewels (*ratnas*).<sup>190</sup> As the four applications of mindfulness counteract the four erroneous views (*viparyāsas*), so the seven members of enlightenment counteract the seven evil latent propensities (Skt. *anusāyas* ≡ Pāli *anusayas*).<sup>191</sup> In the Śs, the way of a bodhisattva is marked by departure from life as a householder (*abhinīṣkrāntaḡṛhāvāsa*) and practice of the members (*bodhyaṅgair abhiyuktaḡ*).<sup>192</sup> In addition, Ś advises a bodhisattva to apply his merit that sentient beings become

<sup>186</sup> Cf. passage tr. in: GETHIN, p. 145.

<sup>187</sup> LÉVI, I, verse 56, p. 143. For the martial aspect of *bala*, cf. esp. CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 296–297.

<sup>188</sup> Or Skt. *saṃbodhyaṅgas* ≡ Pāli *sambojjhaṅgas*: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 16.

<sup>189</sup> For the Hīnayāna, cf. RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, pp. 101, 106, 226, 251, 282 & 284; add. ref. in III, pp. 313 & 321; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, I, pp. 11 & 61–62; III, pp. 85–88 & 275; add. ref. in IV, p. 112; FEER, I, p. 54; V, pp. 24, 63–140, 161, 312 & 331–340; add. ref. in VI, pp. 110–111; MORRIS & HARDY, I, pp. 14 & 53; II, pp. 16 & 237; III, p. 390; IV, pp. 23, 148 & 225; V, pp. 114ff., 195, 211, 233 & 253; add. ref. in VI, p. 80; SPEYER, I, p. 16, ln. 13; & COWELL & NEIL, p. 95, ln. 20; p. 208, ln. 9; & p. 265, ln. 3.

For the Mahāyāna, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 16; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 988–995, p. 53; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 49, pp. 28–29; GHOSA, p. 1437, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 150; RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 39, ln. 6–8; & § Bhūmi VII, ¶ D, p. 57, lns. 18 & 22; DUTT, '*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*', p. 208; LÉVI, I, p. 144, ln. 1–p. 145, ln. 2; LEFMANN, p. 34, ln. 3ff.; KERN & NANJIO, p. 80, ln. 1; VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN, § 95, p. 139, ln. 10; NATTIER, ¶ 12C, p. 191, & n. 199; & BRAARVIG, II, pp. 536–542.

<sup>190</sup> LÉVI, I, p. 144, lns. 6ff.; COWELL & NEIL, p. 211; SENART, II, p. 147, ln. 7; & p. 323, ln. 22; III, p. 112, ln. 13; & LEFMANN, pp. 14 & 101.

<sup>191</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 19, ln. 18; p. 50, ln. 9; & p. 232, ln. 12; JOHNSTON, xvii, 58, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 155, n. 345; MORRIS & HARDY, IV, pp. 9ff.; & RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, p. 254.

<sup>192</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 144, lns. 9–10.

Table 2.6: The members of enlightenment.

---

i.)	member of mindfulness ( <i>smṛtysaṃbodhyaṅga</i> )
ii.)	member of discernment of the dharmas (or Dharma) ( <i>dharmapravicayasāṃbodhyaṅga</i> )
iii.)	member of energy ( <i>vīryasaṃbodhyaṅga</i> )
iv.)	member of joy ( <i>prīṭisaṃbodhyaṅga</i> )
v.)	member of tranquility ( <i>praśrabdhisaṃbodhyaṅga</i> <sup>a</sup> )
vi.)	member of concentration ( <i>samādhisaṃbodhyaṅga</i> )
vii.)	member of equanimity ( <i>upekṣāsaṃbodhyaṅga</i> )

---

<sup>a</sup> *pras*°.

endowed with the qualities of the member of concentration (*samādhibodhyaṅgagūṇas*).<sup>193</sup>

*Bodhyaṅga* is variously translated. RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE prefer ‘factor or constituent of knowledge or wisdom’.<sup>194</sup> NĀṆAMOLI and THITṬILA use ‘enlightenment factors’.<sup>195</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE use ‘the things necessary for attaining enlightenment’ and ‘the requisites of supreme knowledge’.<sup>196</sup> LÉVI and LAMOTTE prefer ‘les membres de l’illumination’.<sup>197</sup> EDGERTON also makes a literal translation: ‘member of enlightenment’.<sup>198</sup> GETHIN prefers a ‘factor of awakening’<sup>199</sup>, BRAARVIG a ‘limb of awakening’<sup>200</sup> and CONZE a ‘limb of enlightenment’<sup>201</sup>.

In the literature of the Hīnayāna, the bare list of the seven members of enlightenment is often developed into long formulae. Such formulae do not seem to exist in the literature of the Mahāyāna.<sup>202</sup> Even so, these formulae show why the members of enlightenment are valued. The formula in the *Vibhaṅga* abridges one of the most common of these formulae:

<sup>193</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 216, ln. 13.

<sup>194</sup> RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE, p. 490.

<sup>195</sup> NĀṆAMOLI, ¶ 175, p. 52; & THITṬILA, pp. 297–307.

<sup>196</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 142.

<sup>197</sup> LÉVI, II, p. 241; & LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1128–1129 & 1180–1181.

<sup>198</sup> EDGERTON, p. 403.

<sup>199</sup> GETHIN, pp. 146–189.

<sup>200</sup> BRAARVIG, II, pp. 536–542.

<sup>201</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 303.

<sup>202</sup> GETHIN, p. 169, n. 125; & LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, pp. 1128–1129.

466. [227] The seven enlightenment factors are: Mindfulness enlightenment factor, truth investigation enlightenment factors, energy enlightenment factor, zest enlightenment factor, calmness enlightenment factor, concentration enlightenment factor, equanimity enlightenment factor.

467. Therein what is mindfulness enlightenment factor? Herein a bhikkhu is mindful, furnished with excellent mindfulness penetration, he remembers, remembers constantly, what has long been done and long been said (concerning release). This is called mindfulness enlightenment factor.

He, dwelling mindful in the above manner, searches, investigates and reasons out thoroughly that same thing with wisdom. This is called truth investigation enlightenment factor.

The energy of his searching, investigating and reasoning out thoroughly that same thing with wisdom, is strenuous, unshrinking. This is called energy enlightenment factor.

For him of strenuous energy there arises zest that is not worldly. This is called zest enlightenment factor.

For him of zestful mind and body (of mental aggregates) becomes calm, also consciousness becomes calm. This is called calmness enlightenment factor.

For him of calm body (of mental aggregates) and mental pleasure, consciousness is concentrated. This is called concentration enlightenment factor.

He, having consciousness concentrated in the above manner, is well balanced. This is called equanimity enlightenment factor.<sup>203</sup>

This passage shows that each member is attained through meditation. The fundamental attainment is mindfulness.<sup>204</sup> After the attainment of mindfulness, a meditator deepens his attainment through discursive reason or analysis (*pravicaya*). The attainment of discernment of the dharmas (or Dharma) ends the second stage. The application of energy takes a meditator to the third stage. The stages continue until he attains a state which is at once joyful (*prīti*), tranquil (*praśrabdhi*), concentrated (*samādhi*) and balanced (*upekṣā*). The members of enlightenment, then, represent the gradual development and intensification of mindfulness. Yet while the Nikāyas and *Vibhaṅga* relate the seven members of enlightenment to the cultivation of mindfulness, it is likely that the gradual process which they describe also relates to the cultivation of other good dharmas.

Three of the members of enlightenment appear in at least one other set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment. The significance of mindfulness (*smṛti*), energy (*vīrya*) and concentration (*samādhi*) cannot be fully contained within the relations of a single set. The nature of these three qualities is discussed elsewhere in this paper. At present it is sufficient to note that in the ŚS mindfulness occurs most frequently, followed by energy,

<sup>203</sup> THITĪLA, p. 297. On the identification of this abbreviated formula with the formula often given in the Nikāyas, cf. GETHIN, p. 169, n. 125.

<sup>204</sup> For the identification of *smṛtysaṃbodhyaṅga* with the *smṛtyupasthānas*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 169.

concentration, joy, tranquility, equanimity and discernment of the dharmas (or Dharma).<sup>205</sup> No more will be said of mindfulness, energy and concentration. Discussion will focus on the other four qualities—discernment of the dharmas (or Dharma), joy, tranquility and equanimity—and on their rôle in the Śs.

*Dharmapracayasambodhyaṅga*. Discernment of the dharmas (or Dharma) (*dharmapracayasambodhyaṅga*) is the second member of enlightenment. *Pravicaya* is from *pra + vi + √ ci*. MONIER-WILLIAMS defines *pravici* as 'to search through, investigate, examine' and *pravicaya* as 'investigation, examination'.<sup>206</sup> EDGERTON does not consider this entirely satisfactory. He translates *pravicaya* as 'discriminating comprehension'.<sup>207</sup> The term *dharma* is even more difficult to render.<sup>208</sup> It is often suggested that it refers either to Buddhist doctrine (the Dharma) or to things or phenomenon (dharmas).<sup>209</sup>

DAYAL considers that *dharmapracayasambodhyaṅga* means the discernment of 'all that has been uttered and taught by the Buddha'.<sup>210</sup> CONZE considers *dharmapracaya* 'investigation into dharma'<sup>211</sup> while GETHIN considers it 'either the "discrimination of *dhammas*" or the "discernment of *dhamma*"' with the qualification that 'to discriminate *dhammas* is precisely to discern *dhamma*'.<sup>212</sup>

The sense of *dharmapracayasambodhyaṅga*, then, is that an *arhant* or *bodhisattva* should attain the ability to critical comprehend the true nature of dharmas and the Dharma. While the term *pravicaya* does not occur in either the Śs or BCA, one of Ś's primary intentions is clearly to facilitate the development of such comprehension.

*Prīṭisambodhyaṅga*. Joy is the fourth member of enlightenment. MONIER-WILLIAMS renders *prīṭi* as 'any pleasurable sensation, pleasure, joy, gladness, satisfaction'.<sup>213</sup> EDGERTON notes that in Buddhist Sanskrit literature *prīṭi* is often compounded with *prāmodya*, another word meaning joy and *prasāda*, meaning tranquility.<sup>214</sup> This is true of the Śs where *prīṭi*

<sup>205</sup> This can be found by a count of the occurrence of these words alone & in compound.

<sup>206</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 691.

<sup>207</sup> EDGERTON, p. 386. For *pravicaya* as 'investigation' & 'discernment', cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 288.

<sup>208</sup> On the various meanings of *dhamma* in the Nikāyas, cf. 'On the Polysemy of the Word 'Dhamma'' in: WATANABE, pp. 9–17; & HIRAKAWA.

<sup>209</sup> For ref., cf. DAYAL, pp. 150–151; & GETHIN, pp. 147–154.

<sup>210</sup> DAYAL, p. 150.

<sup>211</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 210.

<sup>212</sup> GETHIN, p. 152.

<sup>213</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 711.

<sup>214</sup> For ref., cf. EDGERTON, p. 393; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 293.

is often associated with *prāmodya*, with *prasāda* and with both *prāmodya* and *prasāda*.<sup>215</sup> It is supposed to be characteristic of a bodhisattva that :

He increases the abundant streams (impulses) of joy and pleasure by the quality of assuming a person capable of bringing forth all the dharmas of the Buddhas, of sustaining all sentient beings and of not angering spiritual friends. . . .<sup>216</sup>

In the world, as a lotus undefiled in the water, they act causing joy and tranquility.<sup>217</sup>

And those sentient beings obtain joy and tranquility and pleasure in his presence.<sup>218</sup>

Clearly, then, it is expected that joy, tranquility and pleasure attend all the practices of a bodhisattva, even the most painful.<sup>219</sup>

*Praśrabhdisaṃbodhyaṅga*. Tranquility is the fifth member of enlightenment. MONIER-WILLIAMS translates *praśrabdhi* as 'trust, confidence'. He holds that this term stems from  $\sqrt{\text{śrambh}}$ —to trust, confide.<sup>220</sup> EDGERTON, on the other hand, prefers 'alleviation, calming, of pain etc. . . .' and 'calm, serenity, lack of any disturbance, bodily or mental. . .'.<sup>221</sup> JOHNSTON agrees :

<sup>215</sup> For *prīti* & *prāmodya*, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 20, ln. 4; & p. 277, ln. 12. For *prīti* & *prasāda*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 330, ln. 14. For *prīti*, *prāmodya* & *prasāda*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 27, ln. 10; p. 183, lns. 4-5 & 8; & p. 197, ln. 17.

<sup>216</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 277, lns. 11-12:

*sarvabuddhadharmothāpakasarvajagadupajīvyasarvakalyāṇamitrā-  
rāgaṇasamarthātmabhāvaparigrahaṇatayā vipulapṛītiprāmodya-  
vegān vivardhayamānaḥ. . .*

<sup>217</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 330, ln. 14:

*loki alipta jale yatha padyaṃ pṛītiprasādakarā vicaranti ||*

It is noted in : BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 294, n. 2, that following the Tib. *padyaṃ* should be read *padmaṃ*.

<sup>218</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 197, lns. 16-17:

*te ca satvās tasyāntike pṛītiṃ ca prasādaṃ ca prāmodyaṃ ca pratilābhanta iti ||*

<sup>219</sup> Including the sacrifice of his very body: cf. *ibid.*, p. 24, lns. 12 & 14. Ś's emphasis on joy is also prominent in the BCA: cf. esp. MINAYEFF, BCA 10:13b, p. 222; & BCA 10:21b, p. 223, where Ś ardently desires that 'streams of bliss gush forth' (*pṛītivegāḥ pravṛttāḥ*) and that 'those oppressed by grief find joy' (*śokārtāḥ pṛītilābhinaḥ*).

<sup>220</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 696 & 1096.

<sup>221</sup> EDGERTON, p. 388. Cf. also WOGIHARA, '*Bodhisattvabhūmi*', p. 110, lns. 5-6; & p. 207, ln. 14; SUZUKI & IDZUMI, p. 165, ln. 22; & p. 189, ln. 12; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 1940, p. 105; JOHNSTON, xiii, 24, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 153, n. 326; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 289.

*Praṣrabdhi* is properly the sensation of intense, almost buoyant calm, that ensues on the sudden cessation of great pain and has a similar meaning, as applied to the mind.<sup>222</sup>

GETHIN thinks that *passaddhi* is closely related to *pīti* :

...*pīti* and *passaddhi* as *bojjhaṅgas* link into the range of ideas associated with the notion of the mind as happy, content and calm... Together *pīti* and *passaddhi* are terms suggestive of the positive emotional content of ancient Buddhism.<sup>223</sup>

It seems, then, that *praśrabdhi* refers to the unshakeable calm, peacefulness and tranquility of a true *arhant* or bodhisattva. This definition is consonant with the use of *praśrabdhi* and its synonym *pratipraśrabdhi* by Ś.<sup>224</sup>

In the Śs *praśrabdhi* is the state of being free from misfortune.<sup>225</sup> It is the steadfast calm of a bodhisattva before his tormenters, the cessation of unprofitable thoughts, being undisturbed by flavours and the quelling of all sensation.<sup>226</sup> For Ś the practice of the member of tranquility is fundamental to the way.<sup>227</sup>

*Upekṣāsambodhyaṅga*. Equanimity is the seventh and final member of enlightenment. In the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna equanimity is essential for *arhants* and bodhisattvas. It is the last of the Hīnayānist perfections.<sup>228</sup> In the *Mahāvvyutpatti* alone, equanimity appears in six lists: *i.*) it is fundamental to an epithet of a bodhisattva—one who dwells in equanimity (*upekṣāvihārī*)<sup>229</sup>; *ii.*) it is the seventh member of enlightenment (*upekṣāsambodhyaṅga*)<sup>230</sup>; *iii.*) regarding happiness (*sukha*) and suffering (*duḥkha*), it is fundamental to the attainment of the fourth meditation (*dhyāna*)<sup>231</sup>; *iv.*) it is the fourth infinitude (*apramāṇa*)<sup>232</sup>; *v.*) it is the fourth of the six elements for riddance from faults (*niḥsaraṇīyadhā-*

<sup>222</sup> JOHNSTON, p. 156, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 152.

<sup>223</sup> GETHIN, p. 156.

<sup>224</sup> For the resemblance of *praśrabdhi* & *pratipraśrabdhi*, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 388 & 365–366.

<sup>225</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 255, ln. 14. Cf. also SPEYER, I, p. 32, ln. 4.

<sup>226</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 24, ln. 12; p. 35, ln. 5; p. 130, ln. 10; & p. 270, lns. 14–15, respectively.

<sup>227</sup> Cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', pp. 205–206: where it is noted that the practice of a bodhisattva should be without effort (*anābhoga*) and the equivalent of play or sport (*vikrīḍita*).

<sup>228</sup> FAUSBÖLL, I, pp. 45–47.

<sup>229</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 879, p. 47.

<sup>230</sup> Ibid., ¶ 995, p. 53.

<sup>231</sup> Ibid., ¶ 1481, p. 78.

<sup>232</sup> Ibid., ¶ 1507, p. 80. Cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 105, ln. 16.

tava)<sup>233</sup>; and vi.) it is the twenty-first notion formed regarding animate and inanimate things.<sup>234</sup>

In both technical and non technical usage the meaning of *upekṣā* is similar.<sup>235</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS translates it as 'overlooking, disregard, negligence, indifference, contempt, abandonment. . . ; endurance, patience'.<sup>236</sup> It signifies, according to EDGERTON, 'indifference (Tib. *btan sñoms*), putting up with whatever happens, patience, long suffering'.<sup>237</sup> DAYAL defines *upekṣā* as a point of balance between opposing or contrary forces:

When *upekṣā* is regarded as 'equanimity', it is the neutral middle term between *sukha* and *duḥkha*. When it is interpreted as 'impartiality', it is the neutral middle term between *anunaya* (friendliness) and *pratigha* (repugnance); it then corresponds to *udāsīna* (neutral), which is the mean between *mitra* and *amitra*.<sup>238</sup>

Most often Mahāyānist literature explains *upekṣā* as evenness of mind (*cittasamatā*).<sup>239</sup> This is consistent with Ś's usage of *upekṣā* in the Śs.

On his rounds, a monk (*bhikṣu*) is to be indifferent (*upekṣaka*) as to the quality of the food he receives.<sup>240</sup> Equanimity is not to be destroyed on account of a great many enjoyments.<sup>241</sup> Further, emptiness is not to be deficient in equanimity<sup>242</sup> and is to remain balanced and even minded regarding all dharmas (*upekṣikā ca sarvadharmāṇām*) and dharmas of the Buddhas (*avekṣikā ca buddhadharmāṇām*).<sup>243</sup> Ś's general position is well expressed in his quotation from the *Akṣayamatisūtra*:

But equanimity is to be practised by him<sup>244</sup> in season or out.<sup>245</sup>

<sup>233</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 64, ln. 14; & p. 191, ln. 7; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, § 82, ¶ 1600, p. 89.

<sup>234</sup> Ibid., ¶ 1942, p. 105.

<sup>235</sup> EDGERTON, p. 147; & GETHIN, p. 159.

<sup>236</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 215.

<sup>237</sup> EDGERTON, p. 147.

<sup>238</sup> DAYAL, p. 154. Cf. also LEFMANN, p. 442, ln. 5—acquisition of *upekṣā* leads to *getting rid of love and hatred, anunayapratighotsarga*—in: EDGERTON, p. 147. This idea is to some extent taken up in: GETHIN, pp. 159–160.

<sup>239</sup> Cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 135; & BRAARVIG, II, pp. xcvi–xcvii. For a detailed discussion of this subject, cf. NAGAO, 'Flow'.

<sup>240</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 131, ln. 7.

<sup>241</sup> Ibid., p. 144, ln. 4.

<sup>242</sup> Ibid., p. 272, lns. 13 & 14.

<sup>243</sup> Ibid., p. 273, ln. 1.

<sup>244</sup> Viz. a bodhisattva.

<sup>245</sup> Ibid., p. 167, ln. 1:

*kālākāle punar anenopekṣā karaṇīyeti ||*

For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 167.

## 2.7 Āryāṣṭāṅgamārga.

The seventh and final set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment is the noble eightfold way (Skt. *āryāṣṭāṅgamārga* ≡ Pāli *ariyāṭṭaṅgikamagga*).<sup>246</sup> In the Nikāyas the plain list of the members of the eightfold way occurs more often than any other list.<sup>247</sup> A formula defining each of the eight members also exists in the literature of the Hīnayāna.<sup>248</sup> Similar lists appear in Mahāyāna literature.<sup>249</sup> LAMOTTE gives the simple formula of the noble eightfold way as :

This is the noble eightfold way, namely, right view, right conception, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, right concentration.<sup>250</sup>

Each member is qualified by *samyāñc*. *Samyāñc* means correct, accurate, proper, true and right.<sup>251</sup> This adjective does not mean that the significance of each member is relative. The plain formula of the eightfold path is not a template into which an *arhant* or bodhisattva is to project their personal conception of what is right. A cursory reading of commentaries in the Nikāyas and *Vibhaṅga* shows that the plain formula of the eightfold path is a key for the recollection of more extensive teachings. The significance of each member cannot be known from the plain formula alone.

In the *Vibhaṅga* the members of the eightfold way are explained as follows :

486. [235] The Noble Eight Constituent Path. That is; right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, right concentration.

<sup>246</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, ln. 16.

<sup>247</sup> GETHIN, p. 190. For the Hīnayāna, cf. RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, I, p. 157; II, pp. 251 & 311; add. ref. in III, p. 314; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, I, pp. 15, 49 & 299; II, pp. 82–83; III, p. 231; add. ref. in IV, p. 118; FEER, III, p. 159; IV, pp. 133 & 233; V, pp. 8, 347–348, 421 & 425; add. ref. in VI, pp. 75–76; MORRIS & HARDY, I, pp. 177, & 217; III, p. 411; add. ref. in VI, p. 85; & DAVIDS, ref. on p. 453.

<sup>248</sup> For the Hīnayāna, cf. RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, II, pp. 311–313; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, III, pp. 251–252; FEER, V, pp. 8–10; & DAVIDS, pp. 235–236.

<sup>249</sup> For the Mahāyāna, cf. LEFMANN, p. 417; DUTT, '*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā*', p. 208; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 996–1004, pp. 53–54; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 50, p. 29; GHOSA, p. 1438, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 161, n. 372; RAHDER, Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 39, lns. 8–11; & BRAARVIG, II, pp. 543–548.

<sup>250</sup> LAMOTTE, *Le Traite*, T. III, ch. XXXI, p. 1129:

*āryāṣṭāṅgo mārgas tadyathā samyagdr̥ṣṭiḥ samyaksamkalpaḥ  
samyagvāk samyakkarmāntaḥ samyagājivaḥ samyagvyāyamaḥ  
samyaksmṛtiḥ samyaksamādhiḥ*

The content of this formula is summarised in Table 2.7 on p. 57.

<sup>251</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 1181.

Table 2.7: The eightfold way.

---

<i>i.</i> )	right view ( <i>samyagdr̥ṣṭi</i> )
<i>ii.</i> )	right intention ( <i>samyaksaṃkalpa</i> )
<i>iii.</i> )	right speech ( <i>samyagvāc</i> )
<i>iv.</i> )	right action ( <i>samyakkarmānta</i> )
<i>v.</i> )	right livelihood ( <i>samyagājīva</i> )
<i>vi.</i> )	right endeavour ( <i>samyagvyāyāma</i> )
<i>vii.</i> )	right mindfulness ( <i>samyaksmṛti</i> )
<i>viii.</i> )	right concentration ( <i>samyaksamādhi</i> )

---

487. Therein what is right view? Knowledge of suffering, knowledge of the cause of suffering, knowledge of cessation of suffering, knowledge of the the way leading to the cessation of suffering. This is called right view.

Therein what is right thought? Thought (associated with) renunciation, thought (associated) with absence of ill-will, thought (associated with) absence of cruelty. This is called right thought.

Therein what is right speech? Abstaining from false speech; abstaining from slanderous speech; abstaining from harsh speech; abstaining from frivolous speech. This is called right speech.

Therein what is right action? Abstaining from killing beings; abstaining from taking that which is not given; abstaining from sexual misconduct. This is called right action.

Therein what is right livelihood? Herein a noble disciple having abandoned wrong livelihood makes a living by means of right livelihood. This is called right livelihood.

Therein what is right effort? Herein a bhikkhu engenders wish, makes effort, arouses energy, exerts the mind, strives for the non arising of evil bad states that have not arisen... engenders wish, makes effort, arouses energy, exerts the mind, strives for the stabilising, for the collocation, for the increase, for the maturity, for the development, for the completion of good states that have arisen. This is called right effort. [236]

Therein what is right mindfulness? Herein a bhikkhu dwells contemplating body in the the body... dwells contemplating feeling in feelings... dwells contemplating consciousness in consciousness... dwells contemplating ideational object in ideational objects... This is called right mindfulness.

Therein what is right concentration? Herein a bhikkhu aloof from sense pleasures, aloof from bad states, attains and dwells in the first jhāna... dwells in the second jhāna... dwells in the third

jhāna... dwells in the fourth jhāna... This is called right concentration.<sup>252</sup>

The *Vibhaṅga* relates each member to specific practices common to both the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna: *i.*) right view is to know the four noble truths (Skt. *āryasatyāni* ≡ Pāli *ariyasaccāni*); *ii.*) right intention is to cultivate thoughts untainted by passion (*kāma*), malice (*vyāpāda*), or violence (*hiṃsā*); *iii.*) right speech and *iv.*) right action are to practice nine of the ten virtuous actions (Skt. *kuśalāni* ≡ Pāli *kusalāni*); *v.*) right livelihood is to make a living in a decent manner; *vi.*) right endeavour is to practice the right strivings; *vii.*) right mindfulness is to practice the applications of mindfulness; and *viii.*) right concentration is to practice the four knowledges (Skt. *jñānāni* ≡ Pāli *jhānāni*).

The noble eightfold way, then, consists of members which appear in other lists throughout Hīnayānist and Mahāyānist literature. While the noble eightfold way is the final set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment, it is also an intersection for various other lists. In a sense the formula of the noble eightfold way subsumes and surpasses other lists. It is related to other lists but remains independent. These characteristics are marked in Ś's description of the noble eightfold way in the Śs.<sup>253</sup>

In the Śs the noble eightfold way is listed as the seventh set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment.<sup>254</sup> While no formula of the eightfold way occurs in the Śs, Ś explicitly defines four of the eight members: *a.*) right view is contrasted with wrong views (*dṛṣṭikṛtas*)<sup>255</sup> and right view regarding the sphere of transmigratory existence and the mundane sphere is defined as the first of the four critical objects of faith<sup>256</sup>; *b.*) a bodhisattva is expected to cultivate right intention regarding the whole way of the bodhisattva (*sarvabodhisatvacaryāsamyaksaṃkalpa*)<sup>257</sup>; *c.*) a bodhisattva is also to practice purification through right livelihood.<sup>258</sup> Wrong livelihood (*viṣamājīva*), on the other hand, is to be eschewed<sup>259</sup>; and *d.*) right mindfulness is defined with a quotation from the *Ratnacūḍasūtra*.<sup>260</sup> Right mindfulness—among other things—denies entrance to bad (*akuśala*) dharmas of mind and thought.

In the literature of the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna it is not uncommon for individual members of the eightfold way to be discussed

<sup>252</sup> THITṬILA, pp. 308–309.

<sup>253</sup> BENDALL, '*Āḥārasamuccaya*', pp. 101–116. For an overview, cf. Table 4.3 on p. 105.

<sup>254</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 272, ln. 16.

<sup>255</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 190, ln. 1. Cf. also EDGERTON, p. 269.

<sup>256</sup> BENDALL, '*Āḥārasamuccaya*', p. 316, ln. 16. For a tr. of this passage cf. § 2.5, pp. 42ff..

<sup>257</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 277, ln. 3.

<sup>258</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 267, ln. 11; & *Ibid.*, ŚSKĀ 21b, p. xlv.

<sup>259</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 267, ln. 13.

<sup>260</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 120, lns. 7–10.

with only implicit reference to the formulae.<sup>261</sup> Rather than reciting stock formulae, Ś generally prefers to stress the value of each member by describing its contrary or opposite. Ś is most interested in the consequences of not following the eightfold way.<sup>262</sup>

*Samyagdr̥ṣṭi & Samyaksamkalpa.* A bodhisattva displays right view when he understands that all beings suffer and when he desires to remove their suffering.<sup>263</sup> He displays right intention when he recognises the mischief caused by desire (*rāga*), malice (*doṣa*) and delusion (*moha*) and when he forms the resolution to generate goodwill (*maitrī*), love (*sneha*), the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*) and compassion.<sup>264</sup> Motivated by these qualities:

He destroys discord and mental defilements caused by Māra. He purifies impurity and mental defilements caused by perverse views.  
He perseveres in the liberation of all sentient beings. He is always skilful in making distinctions.<sup>265</sup>

*Samyagvāc.* Right speech incorporates five members of the ten virtuous actions: *i.*) engaging in good actions with speech; *ii.*) abstaining from lying; *iii.*) abstaining from abusive speech; *iv.*) abstaining from slander; and *v.*) abstaining from incoherent and nonsensical speech.<sup>266</sup>

In the Śs a bodhisattva is advised to avoid pleasure in speech (*bhāṣyārāma*), especially in mindless speech (*amanaskavacana*).<sup>267</sup> To delight in the speech of the world (*lokasya mantra*) is considered typical of fools.<sup>268</sup> Idle chatter is believed to cause countless ills: lack of respectfulness, contentiousness, forgetfulness, lack of discernment, lack of tranquility, mental instability and pride and depression. A bodhisattva, in short, is expected to eschew all delight in intemperate talk and to consider that which is good.<sup>269</sup>

<sup>261</sup> GETHIN, p. 190.

<sup>262</sup> For ref. cf. Table 4.3 on p. 105.

<sup>263</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 101, lns. 15–18. Cf. also the meditation on impermanence (*anitya*) in: *ibid.*, p. 206, ln. 11–p. 209, ln. 2.

<sup>264</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 102–103.

<sup>265</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 104, lns. 1–2:

eṣa mārakalikleśasūdano (')<sup>†</sup> eṣa dr̥ṣṭimalakleśasodhanaḥ |  
eṣa sarvajagamokṣaṇodyato (')<sup>†</sup> eṣa te sada viśeṣa paṇḍitaḥ ||

The meaning of the fourth *pāda* is unclear to the present writer. The additional punctuation is from the Cambridge Ms., 56b. It may read: 'eṣate sadaviśeṣapaṇḍitaḥ ||'. In which case it could be translated: 'He is an excellent learned man always'. Cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 365 & 398.

<sup>266</sup> Cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1690–1694, p. 93.

<sup>267</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 104, ln. 13ff.; & p. 106, ln. 19–p. 111, ln. 4.

<sup>268</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 106, ln. 19.

<sup>269</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 111, lns. 1–4.

*Samyakkarmānta*. Right action incorporates the first four members of the ten virtuous actions: *i.*) engaging in good actions with the body; *ii.*) abstaining from taking the life of other beings; *iii.*) abstaining from taking that which is not given; and *iv.*) abstaining from sexual misconduct.<sup>270</sup> Ś's description of right action focuses on a failing akin to taking that which is not given, that is, the desire for gain and honour (*lābhasatkāra*).

The Śs suggests that the desire for gain and honour engenders passion, the degeneration of mindfulness, pride and depression, delusion, extreme selfishness and a lack of respect for social norms.<sup>271</sup> The failing that causes a bodhisattva to desire the possessions of others actually leads him to lose his own possessions. His desire robs him of the four applications of mindfulness, enfeebles his virtuous qualities (*śukladharmas*), destroys his practice of the four right strivings, his attainment of the supernatural knowledge of supernatural powers (*ṛddhyabhijñā*) and causes him to forsake the meditations (*dhyānas*) and four infinitudes (*apramāṇas*).<sup>272</sup> The desire for gain and honour is, in brief, a cause of fundamental transgression (*mūlāpatti*).<sup>273</sup> To counteract such an enervating propensity, a bodhisattva is advised to delight in desiring little (*alpecchatā āsevitavyā*).<sup>274</sup>

*Samyagājīva*. A bodhisattva is expected to behave with moderation. Likewise, he is to practice right livelihood.<sup>275</sup> A bodhisattva householder is not to delight in, or become overly concerned with, mundane affairs (*kar-mārāma*).<sup>276</sup> The practice of wrong livelihood by a bodhisattva householder is thought to result in the non attainment of the meditations (*dhyānas*) and right strivings (*prahāṇas*).<sup>277</sup> A bodhisattva mendicant, for his part, is to practice right livelihood through candid and unpretentious solicitation for alms.<sup>278</sup> To do otherwise is thought to be a fault of the body (*kāyakṣati*) and mind (*cittakṣati*), in sum, the practice of poor form (*dauṣṭīlyasamudācaraṇa*).<sup>279</sup>

*Samyavyāyāma*. Both lay and monastic bodhisattvas, then, are advised not to be overly zealous in their attention to making a living. Even so, they are also cautioned about being too slothful. Above all else, a bodhisattva is not<sup>to</sup> delight in laziness (*nidrārāma*).<sup>280</sup> He is constantly to practice

<sup>270</sup> Cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1686–1689, p. 93.

<sup>271</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 105.

<sup>272</sup> Ibid., p. 105, lns. 13–16.

<sup>273</sup> Ibid., p. 10, ln. 14.

<sup>274</sup> Ibid., p. 106, ln. 10.

<sup>275</sup> Ibid., p. 267, lns. 10–13. Cf. also NATTIER, ¶ 5A, p. 174.

<sup>276</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 105, ln. 2; & p. 112, lns. 12ff..

<sup>277</sup> Ibid., p. 112, ln. 19.

<sup>278</sup> Ibid., p. 267, ln. 14–p. 269, ln. 9.

<sup>279</sup> Ibid., p. 268, lns. 12 & 13.

<sup>280</sup> Ibid., p. 105, ln. 2; & p. 111, lns. 5ff..

with energy, manly vigour and heroism ( $\equiv$  *āryavīrya*).<sup>281</sup> The practice of energy (*vīrya*) is thought to destroy mental darkness (*tamas*) and all the various kinds of suffering (*sarvaduṣkha*).

*Vyāyāma* has a similar semantic range to *vīrya*. MONIER-WILLIAMS translates *vyāyāma* as ‘exertion’, ‘manly effort’ and ‘athletic or gymnastic exercise’. He also notes a technical Buddhist sense: ‘right exercise or training’.<sup>282</sup> While *vyāyāma* is not used in the Śs as a synonym for *vīrya*, the *Dhammasaṅgaṇi* holds that *vyāyāma* and *vīrya* have a similar meaning.<sup>283</sup>

*Vyāyāma* is identified in the Nikāyas and *Vibhaṅga* with *pradhāna*. Both consider right exertion (*samyagvyāyāma*) synonymous with the right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*).

It seems likely, then, that in the Śs there is an implied relationship, between the practice of energy (*vīrya*), exertion (*vyāyāma*), striving (*pradhāna*) and the way of the bodhisattva.<sup>284</sup> The nature of these relations is suggested in Figure 2.2.<sup>285</sup>

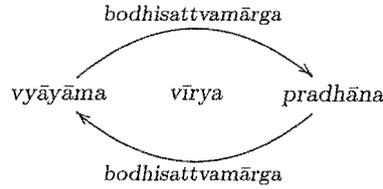


Figure 2.2: *Vīrya*, *vyāyāma* & *pradhāna*.

*Samyaksamṛti*. Right mindfulness is the seventh member of the eightfold way. The significance of mindfulness was briefly considered in § 2.2.<sup>286</sup> The Nikāyas and *Vibhaṅga* identify right mindfulness with the four applications of mindfulness. In the Śs Ś associates right mindfulness with the prevention of the arising of bad dharmas of mind and thought.<sup>287</sup> Yet, in general, Ś is most concerned to describe the characteristics and consequences of a lack of mindfulness, whether that mindfulness be right

<sup>281</sup> Cf. esp. BENDALL, ‘*Āryāṣṭāṅgamārga*’, p. 112, lns. 8–11.

<sup>282</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 1038.

<sup>283</sup> MÜLLER, §§ 13, 22, 289 & 302, quoted in: DAYAL, p. 163. For *vyāyāma* in the Śs, cf. BENDALL, ‘*Āryāṣṭāṅgamārga*’, p. 238, ln. 2; p. 240, ln. 1; & p. 240, ln. 1.

<sup>284</sup> Cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *L’Abhidharmakośa*, p. 281, n. 2.

<sup>285</sup> P. 61.

<sup>286</sup> Pp. 28ff..

<sup>287</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Āryāṣṭāṅgamārga*’, p. 120, lns. 9–10.

mindfulness or the applications of mindfulness.<sup>288</sup>

A bodhisattva who lacks mindfulness is someone who, after abandoning higher (*agra*) dharmas, devotes himself to inferior actions (*hīnāni karmāni*).<sup>289</sup> Ś believes that such a lapse raises the question of whether such a practitioner is indeed a bodhisattva :

They that have no application, no meditation, no striving, no studiousness, no searching for great learning, they are not bodhisattvas, renunciants in the teaching of the Tathāgata. Moreover, Maitreya, the teaching of the Tathāgata arises from meditation and striving, it is conditioned<sup>290</sup> by knowledge, it is concentrated<sup>291</sup> on knowledge, it arises from application : it does not arise from work at the duties of householders<sup>292 293</sup>

Deficient mindfulness of higher dharmas is thought to prevent progress towards the attainment of wisdom (*prajñā*). Ś is under no illusion about the difficulty of attaining wisdom. With words which echo part of the stock formula of the right strivings, he says :

This action for the sake of wisdom<sup>294</sup>, this action is difficult. It<sup>295</sup> is risen<sup>296</sup> higher, the highest, above all the three worlds : therefore, Maitreya, action is to be applied to wisdom by a bodhisattva that desires application, by he that wishes to attain energy.<sup>297</sup>

*Samyaksamādhi*. Right concentration is the final member of the eightfold way. The Nikāyas and *Vibhaṅga* define right concentration as the practice of the four knowledges (*jñānas*). In the ŚS Ś does not to associate specific

<sup>288</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 113, ln. 15–p. 114, ln. 12.

<sup>289</sup> Ibid.

<sup>290</sup> I.e., *saṃskṛta* : cf. EDGERTON, p. 543.

<sup>291</sup> I.e., *samāhita* : cf. ibid., p. 570.

<sup>292</sup> I.e., *gṛhikarmāntavaiyāprīya* : cf. ibid., p. 511.

<sup>293</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 113, ln. 19–p. 114, ln. 3 :

*na te bodhisatvās tathāgataśāsane pravrajitā yeṣāṃ nāsti yogo nāsti dhyānaṃ nāsti prahāṇaṃ nāsty adhyayanaṃ nāsti bāhuśrutya-paryeṣṭiḥ | api tu maitreya dhyānaprahāṇaprabhāvitaṃ tathāgataśāsanaṃ jñānasamskṛtaṃ jñānasamāhitaṃ abhiyogaprabhāvitaṃ | na gṛhikarmāntavaiyāprīyaprabhāvitaṃ |*

<sup>294</sup> I.e., *prajñākarma*.

<sup>295</sup> *Vis.*, action for the sake of wisdom.

<sup>296</sup> I.e., *abhyudgata* : cf. EDGERTON, pp. 61–62.

<sup>297</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 114, lns. 10–12 :

*duṣkaram etat karma yad uta prajñākarma | uttaraṃ niruttaraṃ sarvatrailokyaprativiśiṣṭam abhyudgataṃ tasmāt tarhi maitreya bodhisatvena yogārthikena vīryam ārabdhukāmena prajñāyām abhiyoktavyam iti ||*

For similar syntax, cf. ibid., ŚSKĀ 2ab, p. xxxix ; & p. 2, ln. 13.

meditative states with the practice of right concentration. As with his description of right mindfulness, he prefers to describe what it is to lack right concentration. In the Śs the opposite of concentration (*samādhi*) is *prapañca*.

*Prapañca* is variously translated. BENDALL & ROUSE translate it as 'useless activities'.<sup>298</sup> A number of tentative suggestions are made by EDGERTON although he generally believes that it 'is a word which in Pāli and BHS is very hard to define'.<sup>299</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS is less hesitant.<sup>300</sup> He holds that *prapañca* is from √*pac* or √*pañc*, that is, 'to spread out, make clear or evident'<sup>301</sup>, and renders *prapañca* as 'expansion', 'development' and 'manifestation' and as 'amplification', 'prolixity' and 'diffuseness'. CONZE prefers 'obstacle', 'discoursing', 'futile discoursing', 'multiplicity' and 'that which delays'<sup>302</sup>, KALUPAHANA 'obsession'.<sup>303</sup> KAJIYAMA prefers 'manifold discourse', 'the manifold fiction of human ideas' and 'manifoldness'.<sup>304</sup> OLDMEADOW translates *prapañca* as 'conceptual elaboration'.<sup>305</sup> This emphasis is confirmed by the verses on *prapañca* in the Śs.<sup>306</sup>

In the Śs the most prominent quality associated with *prapañca* is a lack of mental focus.<sup>307</sup> A bodhisattva who delights in *prapañca* (*prapañcarāma*) produces various evils (*anarthas*) and faults (*doṣas*), not the least of which is birth under the eight unfavourable conditions (*akṣaṇas*) and the loss of the good fortune of his present favourable condition (*kṣaṇasampad*).<sup>308</sup> To prevent such misfortune, Ś advises a bodhisattva never to

<sup>298</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 113.

<sup>299</sup> EDGERTON, p. 380.

<sup>300</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 681.

<sup>301</sup> Ibid., p. 575.

<sup>302</sup> CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 283.

<sup>303</sup> KALUPAHANA, p. 398.

<sup>304</sup> KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation', pp. 139 & 130; Idem, 'Controversy', p. 398; & Idem, 'Tarkabhāṣā', p. 344.

<sup>305</sup> Cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 1, ln. 4 & n. 4. In agreement are: LINDTNER, pp. 270–271 & n. 240; MAY, p. 175, n. 562, quoted in: OLDMEADOW, p. 1, n. 4; & SCHMITHAUSEN, pp. 137ff., quoted in: OLDMEADOW, p. 1, n. 4. Accordingly, it is correctly noted in: BRAARVIG, II, p. cx, that:

... This is the case with *vitarka*, cognate to *prapañca*, discursive thinking and *vikalpa*, thought-constructions, etc., words designating the mental activity building up the illusory world and thus being the real cause of vices and suffering according to the Mahāyāna, be it thought-constructions concerned with worldly things, or concepts concerned with liberation.

<sup>306</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 114, ln. 13–p. 115, ln. 22. For remarks on these verses, cf. EDGERTON, p. 381.

<sup>307</sup> One could almost say that in the Śs *samyksamādhi* ≡ *niṣprapañca*.

<sup>308</sup> For the eight *akṣaṇas*, cf. ZANGMO & CHIME, § 134, pp. 88–89; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 2298, p. 121; & EDGERTON, pp. 2–3. For *kṣaṇasampad*, cf. *ibid.*,

abide in *prapañca* but rather to cultivate qualities associated with concentration :

Be tranquil, calm and at peace,  
abandoning *prapañca*, beget patience.<sup>309</sup>

The noble eightfold way is significant in the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna. The eightfold way is the seventh and final set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment. The formula of the eightfold way attempts to encapsulate the fundamental meaning of the words of the Buddha. Ś does not repeat this formula in the Śs. He takes the formula as understood and describes what it is to lack the qualities which the formula promotes.

Ś's description of each member of the eightfold way is relevant to the daily issues faced by incipient bodhisattvas. His advice on the practice of each member of the eightfold way is meant to be above all else pragmatic: *i.*) right view is attained by perceiving the pervasiveness of suffering; *ii.*) right intention, by generating goodwill and compassion; *iii.*) right speech, by avoiding unprofitable speech; *iv.*) right action, by desiring little; *v.*) right livelihood, by being relatively unconcerned with making a living; *vi.*) right effort, by not indulging in laziness; *vii.*) right mindfulness, by avoiding inattention and lack of application; and *viii.*) right concentration, by avoiding diffuse and dissipated thought.

## 2.8 Conclusion.

*Genre & Purpose.* The Śs and ŚSKĀ belong to the genres of *śāstra* and *kārikā* respectively. The Śs is an extensive training manual written to guide untrained (*aśikṣita*) bodhisattvas entering on the Mahāyāna. It consists of quotations from a large number of Mahāyāna texts together with a commentary. The ŚSKĀ is a short verse summary of the main points of the Śs. Both texts were probably composed at the same time. The Śs and ŚSKĀ are meant to explain the essential principles (*marmasthānas*) of the Mahāyāna.

*Authority.* The teachings given in the Śs and ŚSKĀ are thought to be authoritative. Ś claims that his compilation and exposition is not innovative (*apūrva*), but traditional. The Śs and ŚSKĀ are thought to reflect the true word of the Buddha (*buddhabhāṣita*). Not only are the teachings

p. 198.

<sup>309</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 115, lns. 14–15:

*sāntaprasāntā upasānta bhotha |*  
*prapañca varjitva janetha kṣāntim ||*

which they contain believed to be associated with the truth (*satya*), the Dharma, the destruction of the mental defilements (*kleśas*) and with the qualities of liberation (*nirvāṇaguṇa*), they are also believed to be well said (*subhāṣita*). Yet for all the alleged traditional content of his works, the hand of Ś remains apparent.

*Content & Structure.* The hand of Ś is evident in the selection and arrangement of his material. Both the Śs and ŚSKĀ share the same structure and theme. The organisation of the Śs and ŚSKĀ is shown in Table 1.1.<sup>310</sup> In general, they consider giving (*ut + √srj*), especially of one's person (*ātmabhāva*), enjoyments (*bhogas*) and merit (*puṇya*). In particular, they consider the preservation (*rakṣā*), purification (*śuddhi*) and increase (*vṛddhi*) of those things that are given. Ś's conception of giving through the preservation, purification and increase of gifts is based on the traditional concept of the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*).

*Samyakpradhānas.* The practice of the four right strivings involves the relentless destruction of negative dharmas (*pra + √hā*) combined with the effortful creation of positive dharmas (*pra + √dhā*). In brief, they consist of: *i.*) the non production of non existing bad dharmas; *ii.*) the destruction of existing bad dharmas; *iii.*) the production of non existing good dharmas; & *iv.*) the increase of existing good dharmas. The right strivings are the second of the seven sets of conditions favourable to enlightenment (*bodhipakṣa dharmas*).

*Bodhipakṣa dharmas.* The conditions favourable to enlightenment are, according to the Buddha, the trainings most favourable to the attainment of liberation or enlightenment. In the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna these trainings are prominent. Ś expects incipient bodhisattvas to practice the conditions. Not only are they to engage in the four right strivings, but equally in the four applications of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthānas*), the four bases of supernatural power (*ṛddhipādas*), the five faculties (*indriyas*) and powers (*balas*), the seven members of enlightenment (*bodhyaṅgas*) and in the noble eightfold way (*āryāṣṭāṅgamārga*).<sup>311</sup>

*Smṛtyupasthānas.* Ś holds that a bodhisattva who trains in the four applications of mindfulness experiences the impermanence, impurity, unsatisfactoriness and selflessness of persons and phenomena. This experience, he believes, enables a bodhisattva to give himself entirely for the welfare of others.

<sup>310</sup> P. 16.

<sup>311</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 272, lns. 15–16.

*Ṛddhipādas.* The attainment of the four bases of supernatural power, on the other hand, enables a bodhisattva to constantly refocus his thought that he might maintain his practice of the applications of mindfulness and the right strivings.

*Indriyas & Balas.* Generating the five faculties, for their part, stabilises and consolidates his experience of faith (*śraddhā*). A bodhisattva who has attained true faith is unshakable in his belief in the workings of *karma* and in the doctrines of emptiness (*śūnyatā*). He firmly believes in the value of bodhisattvas and in the way of the bodhisattva. Likewise, he worships the Buddha and he desires—perhaps more than anything else—to become a Buddha himself. The practice of the five powers gives the strength and invincibility needed to attain these goals.

*Bodhyaṅgas.* The seven members of enlightenment bring to all practices the requisite degree of comprehension (*pravicaya*), energy (*vīrya*), joyfulness (*prīti*), tranquility (*praśrabdhi*), concentration (*samādhi*) and balance (*upekṣā*).

*Āryaṣṭāṅgamārga.* Lastly, Ś holds that training in the noble eightfold way enables a bodhisattva to combine all of his daily activities—whether he is forming opinions or intentions, or is speaking or acting, or making of a living, or whether he is engaged in some other endeavour, or in contemplation or concentration—into one single all embracing whole that is consistent with the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*).

Part I suggests that Ś shares the traditional Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna belief in the primacy of the seven sets of conditions favourable to enlightenment. It also suggests that although the conditions are manifest in the Śs they do not wholly determine the structure of the Śs.

Part I suggests that while the conditions provide the doctrinal context and basis for Ś's conception of the way of the bodhisattva, the actual structural principle of the Śs and ŚSKĀ is Ś's conception of the second of the seven sets of conditions—the right strivings.

Part II considers the rôle of the right strivings in the Śs and ŚSKĀ in more detail.

Part II

SAMYAKPRADHĀNAS.



### 3. GIVING (UTSARJANA).

A person who is trying to understand a text is always performing an act of projecting. He projects before himself a meaning for the text as a whole as soon as some initial meaning emerges in the text. Again, the latter emerges only because he is reading the text with particular expectations in regard to a certain meaning. The working out of this fore-project, which is constantly revised in terms of what emerges as he penetrates into the meaning, is understanding what is there.<sup>1</sup>

#### 3.1 Remarks.

For this very reason it was said in the *Ratnamegha*: 'For giving is the enlightenment of a bodhisattva'.<sup>2</sup>

In Buddhist literature the practice of giving (*dāna*) is considered essential.<sup>3</sup> The perfection of giving (*dānapāramitā*) is the first perfection for both the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna.<sup>4</sup> In the *Dharmasaṃgraha* giving is said to be of three kinds: *i.*) the giving of spiritual things (*dharmadāna*);

<sup>1</sup> GADAMER, p. 236, quoted in: LOPEZ, 'Interpretation', p. 65; & in: POWERS, p. 139.

<sup>2</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 34, lns. 4-5:

*ata evo[23a]ktaṃ ratnameghe' dānaṃ hi bodhisatvasya bodhir iti ||*

<sup>3</sup> For the Hīnayāna, cf. MORRIS & HARDY, ref. in VI, p. 51; RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, ref. in III, p. 308; & TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, ref. in IV, p. 67.

In: KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', p. 199, it is noted that while in the Hīnayāna *dāna* focuses on the alms giving of the laity to monks, in the Mahāyāna it focuses on the complete giving of a bodhisattva for the sake of others. In: NAKAMURA, p. 293, a similar position is adopted:

Mahāyāna Buddhism accentuates above all the characteristic of altruism, with the virtue of Compassion as its spiritual foundation. Wealth was more respected than in other periods, as long as it was used. Earthly life was re-evaluated. Doing or action was esteemed as the substantial meaning of the virtue of 'giving'; if one does not do one cannot give....

<sup>4</sup> For the Hīnayāna: cf. EDGERTON, p. 342.

For the Mahāyāna: cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 914, p. 49; & ZANGMO & CHIME, § 27, ¶ 1; & § 28, ¶ 1.

ii.) the giving of worldly things (*āmiṣadāna*); and iii.) the giving of affection (*maitrīdāna*).<sup>5</sup> In the *Mahāvvyutpatti* giving is: a.) the third of the ten Dharma practices (*dharmacaryas*)<sup>6</sup>; b.) the first of the four things which tend towards popularity (*saṃgrahavastūni*)<sup>7</sup>; and c.) the first of the four things which generate merit (*puṇyakriyāvastūni*).<sup>8</sup> Ś—like the compilers of the *Dharmasaṃgraha* and *Mahāvvyutpatti*—holds giving in special esteem.

The first chapter of the Śs is called 'The Perfection of Giving' (*Dānapāramitā Nāma Prathamah P°*).<sup>9</sup> Ś summarises and concludes this chapter with a quotation from the *Ratnamegha* in praise of giving.<sup>10</sup> His summary of the prologue to the ŚSKĀ is similar.<sup>11</sup> In both passages, the tone is that of joyous abandonment for the benefit of others.<sup>12</sup> The main difference is Ś's choice of words: *dāna* in the introduction to the Śs; *utsarga* in that of the ŚSKĀ. For Ś *dāna* and *utsarga* are interchangeable. Both signify the sincere act of giving, granting, abandoning and forsaking.<sup>13</sup> The important point for Ś is that an incipient bodhisattva learns, at the start of his career, the importance of self sacrifice.

In the Śs, alongside *dāna* and *utsarga*, a third term is used for giving—*tyāga*.<sup>14</sup> In the literature of the Mahāyāna the practice of *tyāga* is significant. In the *Mahāvvyutpatti*: a.) the recollection of giving (*tyāgānumṛti*) is the fifth of the six recollections (*anusmṛtis*)<sup>15</sup>; b.) the treasure of giving (*tyāgadhana*) is the sixth of the seven treasures (*dhanas*)<sup>16</sup>; c.) the benediction on a gift (*tyāgādhiṣṭhāna*) is the second of the four benedictions (*adhiṣṭhānas*)<sup>17</sup>; and d.) giving is listed as of twenty-six different kinds.<sup>18</sup>

In common with the compilers of the *Mahāvvyutpatti* Ś believes that it is imperative for bodhisattva to engage in the practice of complete giving (*sarvatyāga* ≡ *parityāga*).<sup>19</sup> In the Śs, ŚSKĀ, and BCA, a bodhisattva is

<sup>5</sup> ZANGMO & CHIME, § 105, p. 75. On the contrast between dharma and *āmiṣa*, cf. EDGERTON, p. 100.

<sup>6</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 905, p. 48.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid., ¶¶ 924–928, p. 49. For ref. to Chin. & Pāli sources, cf. HARRISON, 'Ekottarikāgama', ¶ 21, p. 271.

<sup>8</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 925, p. 49; & ¶ 1700, p. 94.

<sup>9</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 34, ln. 6.

<sup>10</sup> Ibid., p. 34, lns. 4–5.

<sup>11</sup> Ibid., ŚSKĀ: 4, p. xl; & p. 17, lns. 13–14.

<sup>12</sup> For the centrality of giving & so on, cf. also DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:1, p. 344, lns. 6ff.

<sup>13</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 474 & 182.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid., p. 456.

<sup>15</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 1153, p. 60.

<sup>16</sup> Ibid., ¶ 1571, p. 87.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid., ¶ 1582, p. 87.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid., ¶¶ 2843–2869, p. 147.

<sup>19</sup> For *sarvatyāga*, cf. BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 18, ln. 2; p. 26, ln. 7; p. 31, ln. 16; & p. 34, ln. 1.

For *parityāga*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 18, ln. 2; p. 20, ln. 18; p. 28, ln. 5; & p. 31, ln. 16.

constantly advised to give or sacrifice all that he has for the welfare of other sentient beings.<sup>20</sup>

It was suggested in Part I<sup>21</sup> that the overarching theme of the Śs and ŚSKĀ is giving (*dāna* ≡ *utsarga* ≡ *tyāga*). It can be seen from Table 1.1<sup>22</sup> that the prologue to the Śs is merely an introduction to various aspects of giving.<sup>23</sup> The tenor of this section is clear in a quotation from the *Nārāyaṇaparipṛcchā*:

Thus it was also said in the *Nārāyaṇaparipṛcchā*: 'Nothing is to be acquired about which he<sup>24</sup> has no thought of renunciation, no cognition<sup>25</sup> of renunciation. No possession is to be possessed about which there is no mind of renunciation. No retinue<sup>26</sup> is to be acquired about which—when asked for alms by beggars—there is the cognition of possession. No empire is to be acquired, no enjoyments, no wealth is to be acquired, . . . nothing whatever is to be acquired about which a bodhisattva has the mind of non renunciation.'<sup>27</sup>

For Ś, the main opponent facing a bodhisattva mounting the Mahāyāna is attachment (*parigraha*). The dangers of attachment are stressed with reference to the *Bodhisatvaprātimokṣa*, *Candrapradīpasūtra*, *Anantamukhanirhārādhāraṇi* and *Ugradattaparipṛcchā*.<sup>28</sup>

Whenever sentient beings start to fight with each other it is held that attachment or possessiveness is the fundamental condition (*nidānamūla*).<sup>29</sup> Possessiveness is said to cause the increase of desire (*tṛṣṇāvardhana*), greed (*parigraha*), fear (*bhaya*), pain (*duṣkha*), the increase of the mental defilements (*kleśāvardhana*) and the development of the mind of a despicable person (*kāpuruṣacitta*).<sup>30</sup> The appropriation of things for

For *sarvasvaparityāga*, cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 230, lns. 4–5. Cf. also ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 2559, p. 133.

<sup>20</sup> For a discussion of giving in the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 4, pp. 26–34.

<sup>21</sup> Pp. 3ff.

<sup>22</sup> P. 16.

<sup>23</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 1–34; & BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 1–36.

<sup>24</sup> *Viz.*, a bodhisattva.

<sup>25</sup> I.e., *buddhi*: cf. WAYMAN, *Calming*, p. 484.

<sup>26</sup> I.e., *parivāra*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 329; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 252.

<sup>27</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 21, lns. 1–5:

*evaṃ nārāyaṇaparipṛcchāyām apy uktaṃ<sup>1</sup> na tad vastūpādātavyaṃ yasmi(n)<sup>†</sup> [14b] vastuni nāsyā tyāgacittam utpadyate<sup>1</sup> na tyāgabuddhiḥ krameta<sup>1</sup> na sa parigrahaḥ parigrahītavyo yasmin parigrahe notsarjananacittam upādayen na sa parivāra upādātavyo yasmin yācanakair yācyamānasya parigrahābuddhir utpadyate | na tad rājyam upādātavyaṃ na te bhogā na tad ratnam upādātavyaṃ yāvan na tat kiñcid vastūpādātavyaṃ<sup>1</sup> yasmin vastuni bodhisatvasyā-parityāgabuddhir utpadyate ||*

<sup>28</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 17–20.

<sup>29</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 18, lns. 15–16.

<sup>30</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 19, lns. 1–7.

oneself is described as perilous.<sup>31</sup> To counter an innate tendency towards attachment, an incipient bodhisattva is advised to begin to sacrifice of all that he has for the well being of others.

Sacrifice involves the giving of his person (*ātmabhāvotsarjana*), enjoyments (*bhogotsarjana*) and merit (*puṇyotsarjana* ≡ *śubhotsarjana*).

### 3.2 Giving in the Śikṣāsamuccayakārikā.

The prologue to the ŚSKĀ is complete by the end of the fourth verse. Within a few lines Ś introduces the main structural and thematic principles.

Prologue.

*yadā mama pareṣāṃ ca bhayaṃ duṣkhaṃ ca na priyaṃ |*  
*tadātmanaḥ ko viśeṣo yat taṃ rakṣāmi netaraṃ || 1 ||*<sup>32</sup>

‘When fear and suffering are disliked by myself and others,  
then about the self, what is special, that I preserve it, not another?’ (1)

Ś begins the ŚSKĀ with an appeal to common humanity. In words almost identical to those he uses in the BCA, Ś says to his reader that he is not isolated or alone.<sup>33</sup> He tells his reader that he is a member of a community which shares his fear and suffering. He tells him that there is no essential difference (*viśeṣa*) between himself and others. He wants him to see that between all the various conditions of sentient beings, there is a fundamental lack of distinction, sameness and equality.<sup>34</sup> The first thing that Ś impresses on the mind of a bodhisattva starting on the Mahāyāna is that there is really no justification for him to protect (*√ rakṣ*) his own interests instead of the interests of others.

Yet recognising—perhaps for the first time—the beleaguered condition of all sentient beings, it would be natural for a bodhisattva new to the way to ask ‘What can I—abject being that I am—possibly do?’ The rest of the ŚSKĀ is in answer to his question.

*duṣkhāntaṃ kartukāmena sukhāntaṃ gantum icchatā |*  
*śraddhāmūlaṃ dṛḍhikṛtya bodhau kāryā matir dṛḍhā || 2 ||*<sup>35</sup>

<sup>31</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Śikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 18, ln. 18:

*upādānaṃ hi bhayaṃ iti ||*

<sup>32</sup> Ibid., p. xxxix. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 2, lns. 10–11.

<sup>33</sup> Cf. MINAYEFF, BCA 8: 96, p. 201. On this theme in the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 8. pp. 56–65.

<sup>34</sup> It is notable that the Śs begins & ends on the same note. Cf. Table 6.4 on p. 171 for ref. to the practice of the equality of self & others (*parātmasamatā*) & exchanging self and others (*parātmaparivartana*).

<sup>35</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Śikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. xxxix. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 2, lns. 13–14.

By he that wishes to destroy suffering, by he that strives to reach  
the limits of happiness,  
after strengthening the basis which is faith, the mind should be set  
firm on enlightenment. (2)

To remove suffering (*duṣkha*) and obtain happiness (*sukha*), Ś advises an untrained bodhisattva to establish: *i.*) the basis which is faith (*śraddhāmūla*); and *ii.*) the mind resolved on enlightenment ( $\equiv$  *bodhiprañidhicitta*).<sup>36</sup>

In agreement with the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna Ś considers faith (*śraddhā*) the foundation of spiritual development. As faith is discussed in § 2.5<sup>37</sup> little will be said here. According to Ś, an incipient bodhisattva must not only have unshakable faith in the Buddhas, sons of the Buddhas and highest enlightenment, but also an unwavering aspiration to obtain enlightenment for the sake of all sentient beings.

(*sūtrānteṣu durvijñeyo*)<sup>†</sup><sup>38</sup> *bodhisatvasya saṃvaraḥ |*  
*marmasthānāny ato vidyād yenānāpattiko bhavet || 3 ||*<sup>39</sup>

The restraint (practice) of a bodhisattva is hard to discern in the  
sūtras;  
hence he should know the essential principles so that he may be-  
come a non transgressor. (3)

<sup>36</sup> The distinction, here, is between: *a.*) the aspiring mind of enlightenment, i.e., a mind resolved on the attainment of enlightenment (*bodhiprañidhicitta*); & *b.*) the engaging mind of enlightenment, i.e., a mind actually engaged in the practices necessary for the attainment of enlightenment (*bodhiprasthānacitta*). In agreement with much Mahāyāna literature, Ś holds that the aspiring mind of enlightenment precedes the engaging mind of enlightenment. On this, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp.8-11; & MINAYEFF, BCA 1:15-16, p. 156. This distinction is also discussed in: MAHONEY, pt. I, ch. 3, pp. 18-20.

<sup>37</sup> Pp. 44ff.

<sup>38</sup> Variant readings exist for the first *pāda* of the third verse: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xxxix, . . . *mahāyānād*; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, p. 69, n. 92, *durvijñeyo mahāyānād*; & a restoration suggested by Prof. P. HARRISON, *sūtreṣu vistareṇokto*. -

It is curious to note that BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 17, lns. 11-12, contains a clause which does not appear in the Cambridge Ms., 12a: *yāni hi . . . oktāni ||*. In agreement with the Ms. a more satisfactory reading for the passage might be:

<sup>†</sup> *durvijñeyo | vistaroktatvād bodhisatvasya saṃvaraḥ | tataḥ kiṃ*  
*yuktaṃ || marmasthānāny ato vidyād yenānāpattiko bhavet ||*  
*katamāni ca tāni marmasthānāni || yad uta || ātmabhāvasya*  
*bhogānām tryadhvavṛtteḥ śubhasya ca | utsargaḥ sarvasatvebhyas*  
*tadrakṣāśuddhivardhanam ||* (cf. *ibid.*, p. 17, lns. 10-14)

The present writer would like to accept '*durvijñeyo | vistaroktatvād bodhisatvasya saṃvaraḥ*' as the first line of the third verse of the ŚSKĀ. Unfortunately, the extra syllable which attends the abstract form of *ukta* would appear to prevent this.

<sup>39</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xxxix. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 17, lns. 10-11.

Once a bodhisattva has developed faith and the aspiring mind of enlightenment, he is to begin to train (*śikṣā*) in the practices of the Mahāyāna. It is imperative, Ś believes, for a bodhisattva entering the Mahāyāna to become restrained through the restraint (*saṃvara*) of the religious discipline of a bodhisattva.<sup>40</sup> This is not simply the restraint of monastic discipline (*prātimokṣa*). It is the restraint that comes from learning the proper bodhisattva practices enjoined by the Buddha in the sūtras.<sup>41</sup>

Yet as the sūtras are vast in extent and detailed in content, it is not expected of an unschooled bodhisattva to be able to identify—let alone practice—all the moral precepts (*śikṣāpadas*) that the sūtras contain. Instead, in the beginning, Ś considers it sufficient to avoid transgression (*āpatti*) by learning only the essential principles (*marmasthānas*). The essential principles of the Mahāyāna are given in the fourth verse of the ŚSKĀ.

Giving one's  
person, enjoyments  
& merit.

*ātmabhāvasya bhogānāṃ tryadhvavṛtteḥ śubhasya ca |*  
*utsargaḥ sarvasatvebhyas tadrakṣāsuddhivardhanam || 4 ||*<sup>42</sup>

The gift to all sentient beings of one's person<sup>43</sup>, enjoyments<sup>44</sup> and

<sup>40</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 17, ln. 6:

*kathaṃ ca kulaputra bodhisatvā bodhisatvaśikṣāsavarasamvṛtā*  
(<sup>o</sup>saṃvara<sup>o</sup>)<sup>†</sup> bhavanti |

<sup>41</sup> Ibid., p. 17, lns. 6–8.

<sup>42</sup> Ibid., p. xl. Cf. also ibid., p. 17, lns. 13–14.

<sup>43</sup> I.e., *ātmabhāva*. Fr. *ātman* + *bhāva*: lit. self being, the state of being a self, the condition of self, selfhood.

In: EDGERTON, p. 92, it is held that *ātmabhāva* = *śarīra*, i.e., the physical body. The present writer considers this tr. narrow. It does not account for the full range of meanings associated with *ātmabhāva* in the Śs & ŚSKĀ.

In these texts *ātmabhāva*—like the five aggregates (*skandhas*) (cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', p. 202; & NAGAO, 'Ontology', p. 164.)—signifies the physical body and the mind.

In theory, *ātmabhāva* ≡ *skandhas*: a.) form (physical body) (*rūpa*); b.) perception (*vedanā*); c.) cognition (ideation) (*saṃjñā*); d.) volition (*saṃskāra*); & e.) consciousness (*viññāna*). In practice, *ātmabhāva* refers to each aggregate either alone or together with the others. For the five aggregates, cf. KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § XXII, p. 5; TAKASAKI, pp. 107ff.; & EDGERTON, p. 607, def. 2.

*Ātmabhāva*, then, signifies all dharmas that constitute individual existence: cf. MROZIK, pp. 16ff.. This is clearly described in: BARNETT, p. 104, n. 1:

The word *ātma-bhāva*, literally "condition of self," i.e. person or body, properly denotes the plexus of concepts which collectively form the idea of an individual being as conceived by himself.

*Ātmabhāva* might be referred to as one's entire person, or in brief, as one's person: cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. xl; BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 19; BARNETT, p. 104; HEDINGER, p. 10, n. 39; & MROZIK, p. 20.

<sup>44</sup> I.e., *bhoga*. Fr. *√ bhuj*, i.e., to enjoy, use, possess. *Bhoga* signifies: i.) en-

merit<sup>45</sup> arising in the three times<sup>46</sup> ;  
the preservation, purification and increase of these<sup>47</sup>. (4)<sup>48</sup>

For Ś, the central meaning of the Mahāyāna subsists in the practice of giving or abandonment (*utsarga* ≡ *dāna* ≡ *tyāga*). In these few words, he tries to embrace the most significant aspects of the act of giving. It is, he believes, of the cardinal importance for a bodhisattva to learn to abandon everything for the welfare of others.<sup>49</sup>

In practice, complete giving (*sarvotsarga* ≡ *sarvadāna* ≡ *sarvatyāga*) means that a bodhisattva should become accustomed to give himself (*ātma-bhāvotsarga*), enjoyments (*bhogotsarga*) and merit (*puṇyotsarga* ≡ *śubhotsarga*). These three varieties of giving are to be effected through the preservation (*rakṣā*), purification (*śuddhi*) and increase (*vardhana*) of those things that are to be given.<sup>50</sup>

In the Śs, Ś holds that the practice of the giving of one's person and so on is the epitome of the restraint of a bodhisattva (*bodhisattvasaṃvarasaṃgraha*). To neglect the constant exercise of this practice is to commit a serious transgression (*āpatti*).<sup>51</sup> In short, Ś believes:

joyment, use, or possession; & *ii.*) an object of enjoyment, use, or possession: cf. HEDINGER, p. 10, n. 40. In terms of def. 2, *bhogas* signify the six external sense-fields (*bāhyāyatana*s) which are the objects of the six internal sense-fields (*ādhyātmikāyatana*s): cf. EDGERTON, p. 101, def. 5; & TAKASAKI, pp. 107ff..

The external sense-fields are: *a.*) form (*rūpa*); *b.*) sound (*śabda*); *c.*) smell (*gandha*); *d.*) taste (*rasa*); *e.*) tangible object (*spraṣṭavya*); & *f.*) mind-object (*dharma*).

The internal sense-fields are: *a.*) eyes (*cakṣus*); *b.*) ears (*śrota*); *c.*) nose (*ghrāṇa*); *d.*) tongue (*jihvā*); *e.*) body (*kāya*); & *f.*) mind (*manas*).

*Bhogas* are the external sense-objects identified by the internal sense-fields with sensations (*vedanās*) of pleasure or happiness (*sukha*).

As objects or items of enjoyment—cf. MROZIK, p. 169—*bhogas* might be referred to as pleasures or enjoyments: cf. CROSBY & SKILTON, p. 20; BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xl; & BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 19.

<sup>45</sup> I.e., *śubha*. Fr. *√śubh* which means: *i.*) to beautify, embellish & adorn; & *ii.*) to prepare, make fit or ready. *Śubha* signifies: *i.*) anything bright or beautiful; & *ii.*) benefit, service, good or virtuous action. In terms of def. 2, *śubha* is synonymous with *puṇya*, i.e., merit.

<sup>46</sup> I.e., *tryadhva*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 260. This ref. to the past, present & future.

<sup>47</sup> Viz. one's person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>48</sup> Following Ś's commentary in: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 18, lns. 8–9, tr. at the end of § 3.2, pp. 72ff..

<sup>49</sup> This theme is prominent in: MINAYEFF, BCA 3:10, p. 163:

*ātma-bhāvāṃs tathā boghān sarvaṃ tryadhvagataṃ śubham |*  
*nirapekṣastyajāmy eṣa sarvasattvārthasiddhaye || 10 ||*

<sup>50</sup> The relations between the various aspects of this practice are represented in Figure 7.2 on p. 191.

<sup>51</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 17, ln. 15.

Therefore, in such a manner, the gift, the preservation, the purification and the increase of one's person, enjoyments and merit, are to be continually and properly cultivated.<sup>52</sup>

### 3.3 Giving in the Śikṣāsamuccaya.

#### 3.3.1 The Prologue.

The main themes of the ŚSKĀ are introduced in the first four verses. The ŚS is introduced in the first chapter. The first four verses of the ŚSKĀ summarise the first chapter of the ŚS. Four short verses condense the meaning of almost thirty-four pages of prose. The content of these pages of prose and their correspondence to the verse of the ŚSKĀ is given in Table 3.1.<sup>53</sup>

The prologue to the ŚS incorporates and develops the prologue to the ŚSKĀ. It can be seen from Table 3.1<sup>54</sup> that Ś includes the first four verses of the ŚSKĀ in the body of the first chapter of the ŚS. This is accomplished in three ways :

- i.) by incorporation of a whole verse ;
- ii.) by incorporation of part of a verse ; and
- iii.) by reiteration of the contents of a verse.

Ś inserts the first, second and fourth verses of the ŚSKĀ into the body of the ŚS without change. Their verse marks them off from the surrounding prose. The third verse is divided before being worked it into the body of the prose. The second half of the second verse and the whole of the fourth verse are reiterated, that is, they appear twice in the body of the ŚS. The form of their first appearance resembles that of the ŚSKĀ. Their second appearance—although it carries a similar meaning to that of the ŚSKĀ—uses synonyms and a different word order. Ś employs all three methods of incorporation throughout the ŚS.<sup>55</sup>

<sup>52</sup> BENDALL, 'Śikṣāsamuccaya', p. 18, lns. 8-9 :

*tasmād evam ātmabhāvabhogapuṇyānāṃ aviratam utsargarak-  
sāsuddhivṛddhaya yathāyogaṃ bhāvanīyāḥ ||*

<sup>53</sup> P. 77.

<sup>54</sup> P. 77.

<sup>55</sup> The method of incorporation adopted with any particular *kārikā* can be seen in the Tables : a.) a whole number—e.g. 1.)—indicates that the complete verse is incorporated as a single unit ; b.) a number together with a letter—e.g. 3b.)—indicates that the verse is divided before incorporation ; & c.) reiteration is noted as such.

PRAJÑĀKARAMATI adopts a similar method in his commentary on the BCA,

Table 3.1: Giving in the ŚS.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
DĀNAPĀRAMITĀ NĀMA PRATHAMAḤ P° ॥	1-34	1-36
Prologue.	1-17	1-19
Listen to the true Dharma ( <i>saddharma</i> )!	1	1
Purpose of the ŚS.	1	1-2
Take the essence of this precious human life!	2	2
1.) <sup>c</sup>	2	3
2.)	2	3
In praise of faith ( <i>śraddhā</i> ).	2-5	3-5
2cd.)	5	5
In praise of the mind of enlightenment ( <i>bodhicitta</i> ).	5-6	5-6
Stage of lineage ( <i>gotrabhūmi</i> ).	6	6
Stage of zealous conduct ( <i>adhimuktīcaryābhūmi</i> ).	7	7-8
Aspiring mind of enlightenment ( <i>bodhiprañidhicitta</i> ).	8-11	9-12
Vows ( <i>saṃvaras</i> ).	11-14	12-15
Transgression ( <i>āpatti</i> ).	15	16-17
Characteristics of the words of the Buddha.	15	17
Purpose of the ŚS.	16	17
Training ( <i>śikṣaṇa</i> ).	16-17	17-19
3b.)	17	19
3cd.)	17	19
3a.)	17	19
<i>The Perfection of Giving.</i>	17-34	19-36
4.)	17	19
Procedures bringing immediate results ( <i>ānantaryas</i> ).	17-18	19-20
4.)	18	20
Attachment ( <i>parigraha</i> ).	18-20	20-23
Giving one's person.	21-26	23-28
Giving enjoyments.	26-29	28-32
Giving merit.	29-34	32-36

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 1-34.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 1-36.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 3.1<sup>56</sup> shows that all of the major themes that occur in the first four verses of the ŚSKĀ receive further development in the first chapter of the ŚS: *a.*) non difference (*aviśeṣa*); *b.*) faith (*śraddhā*); *c.*) the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*); *d.*) restraint (*saṃvara*); *e.*) the essential principles (*marmasthānas*); and *f.*) giving or abandonment (*utsarga*).

In the ŚS, Ś contextualises and legitimises the ŚSKĀ. Typical is the way that he leads the reader to see the context and truth of the first and second verses of the ŚSKĀ:

After he has attained this kind of conjunction<sup>57</sup>, when the desire for the happiness of the cessation of the suffering associated with transmigratory existence<sup>58</sup> is well known, conventionally<sup>59</sup> and ultimately<sup>60</sup>, then, by the power of the lineage<sup>61</sup> of the Buddhas, so thus, an enquiry arises from this *mahāsattva*:

‘When fear and suffering are disliked by myself and others,  
then about the self, what is special, that I preserve it,  
not another?’<sup>62</sup>

By him, for himself and for the realm of sentient beings:

By he that wishes to destroy suffering, by he that strives to reach the limits of happiness,  
after strengthening the basis which is faith, the mind should be set firm on enlightenment<sup>63, 64</sup>

as does BUDDHAPĀLITA in his commentary on the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā*: cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*; OLDMEADOW; & SAITO, ‘Buddhapālitamūlamadhyamakavṛtti’.

To the knowledge of the present writer there exists no comprehensive study of the commentarial methodology and stylistics of Indian *Madhyamaka* scholars. Until such a study is published, further comments on the relationship between the ŚS & ŚSKĀ would be highly conjectural and precipitous.

<sup>56</sup> P. 77.

<sup>57</sup> Viz. birth free from the eight unfavourable conditions (*akṣaṇa*). For these, cf. BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 2, lns. 4–7; DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm on BCA 9:162cd & 163, p. 598, lns. 6ff.; & ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 2298–2306, p. 121.

<sup>58</sup> I.e., *saṃsāra*.

<sup>59</sup> I.e., *saṃvṛti*. For an interpretation of this term, cf. NAGAO, ‘*Saṃvṛti*’.

<sup>60</sup> I.e., *paramārtha*.

<sup>61</sup> I.e., *gotra*, lit. family: cf. EDGERTON, p. 216; CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 167–168; & OBERMILLER, ‘*Doctrine*’, pp. 31–33. For discussion of *gotras*, cf. RUEGG, ‘*Prajñāpāramitā*’; & Idem, *La Théorie*.

<sup>62</sup> Cf. BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, ŚSKĀ 1, p. xxxix.

<sup>63</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, ŚSKĀ 2, p. xxxix.

<sup>64</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 2, lns. 8–14:

*tad evaṃvidhaṃ samāgamam āsādyā saṃvṛtiparamārthataḥ suvid-  
itasamśāraduṣkhasyopaśamanasukhābhilāṣiṇo buddhagoṭrānubhāvāt  
tu yasya mahāsatvasyaivaṃ pratyavekṣotpadyate ||*

*yadā mama pareṣāṃ ca bhayaṃ duṣkhaṃ ca na priyaṃ |  
tadātmanaḥ ko viśeṣo yat taṃ rakṣāmi netaram | iti*

From the ŚSKĀ alone it is apparent that the first verse is a question. Yet it is unclear who asks the question. The wider context of the ŚS makes it clear that the interlocutor is a *mahāsattva*—a being who desires the benefit of others.<sup>65</sup>

Like the incipient bodhisattva to whom the ŚS and ŚSKĀ is addressed, this *mahāsattva* has attained a favourable birth (*kṣaṇa*). Unlike him he has developed a good understanding (*suvidyā*)<sup>66</sup> of the pervasiveness of the desire for the happiness of the cessation of the suffering associated with transmigratory existence. This knowledge enables the *mahāsattva* to perceive the truth of suffering and the equality of self and others.

Quoting the *Tathāgataguhyasūtra*, Ś mentions the equality of self and others (*parātmasamatā*) and exchange of self and others (*parātmaparivartana*) near the end of the ŚS<sup>67</sup>:

From attaining the equality of self and others, the mind of enlightenment is established.  
Self and other are relative—as are the further and nearer shore—  
hence false.<sup>68</sup>

Therefore, by the practice of exchanging your self with others,  
for the sake of the cessation of self and others, one  
should completely renounce self and so on.<sup>69</sup>

In the ŚS—as in the BCA<sup>70</sup>—the equality and exchange of self and others are assigned to the stage when a bodhisattva begins to develop the perfection of meditation (*dhyānapāramitā*). Ś does not expect an untrained bodhisattva to understand either the two truths (*satyadvaya*) or the perfection of meditation. These are simply goals towards which he should work.

*tenātmanaḥ satvadhātoś ca ||*

*duṣkhāntaṃ kartukāmena sukhāntaṃ gantum icchatā |*  
*śraddhāmūlaṃ dṛḍhikṛtya bodhau kāryā matir dṛdhā ||*

<sup>65</sup> Cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', p. 91; & Idem, 'Meanings', pp. 265–266.

<sup>66</sup> Based on an appreciation of conventional (*lokasaṃvṛtisatyas*) and ultimate truths (*paramārthasatyas*).

<sup>67</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.4 on p. 171.

<sup>68</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 357, lns. 16–17:

*parātmasamatābhyāsād bodhicittaṃ dṛḍhībhavet |*  
*āpekṣikaṃ parātmatvaṃ pārāvāram yathā mṛṣā ||*

<sup>69</sup> Ibid., p. 361, lns. 11–12:

*tasmād ātmatvam āropya satveṣv abhyāsayogataḥ |*  
*parātmaduṣkhaśāntyartham ātmādīm sarvathotsṛjet ||*

<sup>70</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 8, pp. 194–208. For discussion of the equality and exchange of self and others, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 8, pp. 56–65.

After reflecting on the ideal described in the first verse, a bodhisattva is to begin to establish that which is described in the second: *a.*) faith; and *b.*) the mind of enlightenment. Accordingly, the rest of the introduction to the Śs concerns the preparation needed before a bodhisattva can engage in the Mahāyāna proper.

Table 3.1<sup>71</sup> shows that Ś, in agreement with the literature of the Mahāyāna, believes that entrance into the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*) involves gradual progress through a number of stages<sup>72</sup>:

- a.*) birth under favourable conditions (*kṣaṇa*);
- b.*) growth of faith (*śraddhā*);
- c.*) the stage of lineage (*gotrabhūmi*);
- d.*) the stage of zealous conduct (*adhimuktīcaryābhūmi*);
- e.*) growth of the aspiring mind of enlightenment (*bodhipraṇidhicitta*);
- f.*) taking the vows of restraint (*saṃvaras*); and
- g.*) religious discipline (*śikṣaṇa*) in the true Dharma.

It seems that the Śs is not compiled to assist the progress of a bodhisattva though the first six of these stages. It is suggested in § 1.2<sup>73</sup> that the Śs is a training manual for the seventh stage—religious discipline in the Dharma. The Śs is compiled for someone who wishes to live a life devoted to the study and practice of the Dharma.

*Ānantaryas.* In the third verse of the ŚSKĀ Ś claims that one of the most pressing needs for those beginning the Mahāyāna is to know the vital points (*marmasthānas*). It is thought that an understanding of these basic principles will defeat misfortune and transgression (*āpatti*). Such knowledge concerns the gradual reformation of volition.<sup>74</sup> A bodhisattva is expected to align his volition with the five procedures bringing immediate results (*ānantaryas*).<sup>75</sup>

In all his thoughts, words and actions, a bodhisattva is to express five basic motivations, that is, the desire (*citta*):

- i.*) for the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of a Buddha (*anuttarasamyaksaṃbodhi*);

<sup>71</sup> P. 77.

<sup>72</sup> For useful descriptions of these stages, cf. GUENTHER, pp. 232–256; & OBERMILLER, 'Doctrine', pp. 14ff..

<sup>73</sup> Pp. 9ff..

<sup>74</sup> I.e., *saṃskāra*, the fourth of the five aggregates (*skandhas*): cf. EDGERTON, p. 542, def. 1; & TAKASAKI, pp. 110–111.

<sup>75</sup> For this tr. of *ānantaryas*, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 95–96.

- ii.) for complete renunciation (*sarvasvaparityājana*);
- iii.) for the protection (*trāṇa*) of all sentient beings;
- iv.) to understand all dharmas (or Dharma) (*sarvadharmā*); and
- v.) to understand all dharmas (or Dharma) with wisdom (*prajñā*).<sup>76</sup>

These practices are supposed to be salutary at all levels of development. Practised together they are meant to keep a bodhisattva firmly on the Mahāyāna and ill-inclined to lapse into either the Śrāvakayāna or *Pratyek-abuddhayāna*.

*Parigraha*. The primary danger facing an incipient bodhisattva are all the various forms of attachment (*parigraha*). Most of the second half of the prologue to the ŚS concerns attachment and its countermeasure—the second of the five continuities—the desire to give to others all that one possesses (*sarvasvaparityājana*).<sup>77</sup>

In the second half of the prologue Ś establishes the basis for a twofold meditation.<sup>78</sup> The first part is the basis for a meditation (*bhāvanā*) on the fault associated with attachment (*parigrahadoṣa*).<sup>79</sup> The second part is the basis for a meditation on the praises of giving (*tyāgānuśaṃsas*).<sup>80</sup> The tenor of the part which condemns attachment is reflected in a quotation from the *Candrapradīpasūtra*:

Those who are fools are attached to this completely putrid body,  
to life that is inevitably inconstant, most like an illusion, a dream.  
Having committed very violent actions, having entered into the  
power of delusion,  
they go to violent hells. They are fools gone the way of death.<sup>81</sup>

Ś has nothing good to say about attachment. It is merely an evil to be defeated through giving. The value of giving is emphasised with a quotation from the *Ugradattaparipṛcchā*.<sup>82</sup> In a long series of antitheses that which is possessed (*yadgr̥ha*) is compared unfavourably with that

<sup>76</sup> For the five *ānantaryas*, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 17, ln. 20–p. 18, ln. 7.

<sup>77</sup> Ibid., pp. 18–34.

<sup>78</sup> Ibid., p. 18, lns. 9–10.

<sup>79</sup> Ibid., p. 18, ln. 10–p. 20, ln. 17.

<sup>80</sup> Ibid., p. 20, ln. 18–p. 34, ln. 6.

<sup>81</sup> Ibid., p. 18, lns. 11–14:

*adhyavasitā ye bālāḥ kāye 'smin pūṭike samyag |*  
*jīvite cañcale 'vaśye māyāsvapnanibhopame ||*  
*atiraudrāṇi karmāni kṛtvā mohavaśānugāḥ |*  
*te yānti narakān ghorān mṛtyuyānagatābudhā iti ||*

<sup>82</sup> Ibid., p. 18, ln. 18–p. 19, ln. 7.

which is given (*yaddatta*). Giving is the basis of the path to enlightenment (*bodhimārgopastambha*), attachment of the path to Māra (*māramārgopastambha*). A bodhisattva who wishes to become a hero of the mind (*cittaśūra*) is advised first of all to become a renouncer (*parityāgin*).<sup>83</sup> In particular, he is advised to practice the giving of his person (*ātmabhāvotsarjana*), enjoyments (*bhogotsarjana*) and merit (*puṇyotsarjana*).

Much of the prologue to the Śs is devoted to introducing these three types of giving. The space allotted to the giving of one's person, enjoyments and merit is consonant with their importance. As Table 1.1<sup>84</sup>, Table 1.2<sup>85</sup>, and Table 1.3<sup>86</sup> show, these three forms of giving—together with the preservation, purification and increase of that which is given—provide the foundation for the Śs and ŚSKĀ. In the prologue the reader is given an outline that is meant to be filled as reading progresses and understanding and practice deepens.

### 3.3.2 Giving one's person.

Ś begins by describing the giving of one's person.<sup>87</sup> In brief, a bodhisattva is to completely give himself (*ātman*) to all sentient beings (*sarvasattvas*).<sup>88</sup>

The practice of giving one's person (*ātmabhāva*) is related primarily in terms of the volition and mental condition of the giver. Ideally, while engaged in complete giving—the second procedure bringing immediate results—he is to be mindful only of the benefit he brings others—the third procedure bringing immediate results. When giving his person, a bodhisattva is supposed to want to be a lamp, happiness, asylum, a friend, a path, a sun for all the world, a resting place, a benefactor, wise, omniscient, dutiful, a pleasure-garden, contentment, a father and a servant for all.

Motivated by altruism, a bodhisattva is meant to be ready to give anything, even parts of his body, for the sake of others:

But then again, whomsoever shall stand in need of whatsoever, to this sentient being, I shall give whatsoever gift there is. Without regret, without remorse<sup>89</sup>, without longing for the fruition of merit, I shall give it up. Impartially, I shall give for the assistance of sentient beings, with compassion for sentient beings, with sympathy for sentient beings, so for the protection of these sentient beings. So that these sentient beings, protected by me, by

<sup>83</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 20, ln. 18.

<sup>84</sup> P. 16.

<sup>85</sup> P. 18.

<sup>86</sup> P. 19.

<sup>87</sup> Cf. Table 3.1 on p. 77.

<sup>88</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 22, lns. 5ff..

<sup>89</sup> I.e., *vipratīṣāra*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 492.

one who has attained enlightenment, might become knowers of the Dharma.<sup>90</sup>

Asked for his ears and nose, for his tongue, head, hands and feet, or blood, he is to be ready to give. Yet not only is he to be ready, he is to be delighted by such an opportunity to benefit others. Towards those who would request his mutilation and dismemberment he is to feel no anger, but rather, to behave with affection (*preman*), friendliness (*maitrī*), politeness (*upacāra*), magnanimity (*mahātman* ≡ *māhātmya*), great generosity (*mahādāna*) and equanimity (*samatā*). Facing such a request his mind is to remain stable (*alulita*). In his thoughts and bearing he is to display heroism (*vikrama*) and excellence (*siṃha*). Walking the path of total renunciation he is to experience joy, pleasure and cheerfulness (*pramuditapṛīṭisaumanas*).<sup>91</sup>

For Ś, such extraordinary behaviour represents ‘the intention to take the essence from the body which has no essence’.<sup>92</sup> Macabre and perverse as these visions appear, they merely arise from a firm belief that all bodies are essentially impermanent (*anitya*) and without own being (*svabhāva*).<sup>93</sup>

### 3.3.3 Giving enjoyments.

As Ś emphasises the need for a bodhisattva to be willing to completely give his person to others, so he emphasises the necessity for a bodhisattva to completely give his enjoyments (*bhogas*).

Yet in his description of the giving of enjoyments, Ś devotes little attention to the mental condition and motives of the giver. It is true that it is said that a bodhisattva who gives his enjoyments should manifest—as he does in all forms of giving—an emancipated mind (*muktacitta*), a mind which is not niggardly (*nāgṛhītacitta*), great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*), great renunciation (*mahātyāga*) and purity of motive (*pariśodhayamāna*). Even so, Ś fails to qualify these qualities.<sup>94</sup> Most of the passage involves a description of that which is to be given and to whom.

<sup>90</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsammuccaya*’, p. 21, lns. 12–16:

*api tu khalu punar yasya yasya yena yena yad yat kāryaṃ bhaviṣyati  
tasmai tasmai satvāya tat tad deyaṃ saṃvidyamānaṃ dāsyāmi |  
aśocan na vipratīṣārī avipākapratikāṅkṣī parityakṣyāmi | anapekṣo  
dāsyāmi satvānugrahāya satvakāruṇyena satvānukampayā teṣāṃ eva  
satvānāṃ saṃgrahāya ' yathā me 'mī satvāḥ saṃ[15a]gṛhītā bod-  
hiprāptasya dharmajñānakāḥ syur iti |*

<sup>91</sup> On these qualities, cf. § 2.6 on p. 52.

<sup>92</sup> I.e., ... *asārāc charīrāt sārādānābhiprāya*... & so on: cf. *ibid.*, p. 23, ln. 13; p. 25, ln. 13; & p. 26, ln. 2.

<sup>93</sup> For a clear description of this belief, cf. *ibid.*, p. 358, lns. 3–19; & DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramatī*, comm. on BCA 9:79–88, p. 494, lns. 5ff..

<sup>94</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsammuccaya*’, p. 28, lns. 5–11.

The objects of enjoyment which a bodhisattva is to be ready to give are many and varied. It is hard to read the lists which Ś seems to shorten from the *Vajradhvajasūtra* without surprise. If a bodhisattva truly possesses such things, then many people live lives of comparative asceticism. With a mind set on complete giving (*sarvatyāgamanasā*), a bodhisattva is to give not only any service which any suppliant may desire of him, but sundry jewels, carriages, furniture, victuals, perfumes, creams and powders, flowers, elephants, music and entertainment and a good supply of women and so on.

The exaggerated worldliness of Ś's description of the gift of various enjoyments may be in balance to the exaggerated unworldliness of his description of the the gift of various body parts.<sup>95</sup> Whatever the reason for Ś's use of hyperbole, those to whom he believes it is appropriate to give such enjoyments are more restricted than the term 'all sentient beings' (*sarvasattvas*) would imply.

A bodhisattva is expected to be circumspect when he gives his enjoyments. Ś may advise him to give his person to whomsoever stands to benefit, but in giving his enjoyments he is to be more cautious. Worthy recipients—from first to last, highest to the lowest—are:

- i.) Blessed Buddhas (*buddhāḥ bhagavantaḥ*);
- ii.) treasured bodhisattvas (*bodhisattvaratnas*);
- iii.) the noble community (*āryasaṃgha*);
- iv.) people who support the teaching of the Buddhas (*buddhaśāsano-pasthambhapudgalas*);
- v.) *śrāvakas* and *pratyekabuddhas*;
- vi.) one's mother and father;
- vii.) teachers (*gurus* and *ācāryas*);
- viii.) poor mendicants and beggars (*kṛpaṇavanīpakayācanakas*); and
- ix.) all sentient beings (*sarvasattvas*).<sup>96</sup>

An incipient bodhisattva is advised to donate his enjoyments in accordance with the spiritual hierarchy of the Mahāyāna. He is to give to Buddhas and exalted bodhisattvas first, to the poor and all other sentient

<sup>95</sup> As a corrective to the 'doctrinal' conception of the way of the bodhisattva in the Śs one could with profit refer to: SCHOPEN.

<sup>96</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 27, lns. 15–20.

beings last. That this list reflects the precedence of high ranking Buddhists as beneficiaries of enjoyments is emphasised when, near the end of the passage on the giving of enjoyments, it is repeated.<sup>97</sup>

### 3.3.4 Giving merit.

Every bodhisattva is expected to give not only his person and enjoyments but also his merit (*puṇya* ≡ *śubha*). To effect the gift of merit, Ś advises him to generate the ardent desire (*prañidhāna*) to make a dedication (*pariṇāmana*) of all his merit (*sarvakuśalamūlas* ≡ *sarvapūnyas*) for the well being of all sentient beings.<sup>98</sup>

The giving of merit is divided into two stages: *i.*) the meditation (*bhāvanā*) on offering merit which generates a strong desire to make an offering; and *ii.*) the offering or dedication (*pariṇāmana*) itself which is to be recited (*paṭhitavya*) in accordance with the desire generated by the meditation.<sup>99</sup>

*Bhāvanā.* The meditation is to begin with the bodhisattva imagining how he could benefit others. He is to generate the desire to become the protector of all beings, a shelter, a path, a refuge, a light and a fire and a radiance, a guide and a leader.<sup>100</sup> He is to generate this intention (*adhyāśaya*) not only in word (*vacanamātra*) but in his mind (*citta*). Contemplating the benefit he could bring to others, he is to generate a mind which is exalted, filled with rapture, tranquil, delighted, affectionate, friendly, loving, a mind showing favour, well disposed and happy.<sup>101</sup>

This meditation is to be completed with a consideration of the actual benefits imagined to be bestowed upon sentient beings through the dedication of merit.<sup>102</sup> A bodhisattva is to imagine the beneficiaries of his generosity becoming transformed into his own likeness. In purity, merit, magnanimity, valour, non attachment, stability of thought, in conduct and in wisdom, they are to be alike. According to Ś, those who receive the dedication of merit are to be imagined as successful Mahāyānist:

<sup>97</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 29, lns. 6–8. For another eg. of this scale of value, cf. *ibid.*, p. 213, ln. 8–p. 216, ln. 5.

<sup>98</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 29, lns. 8ff.. For the various meanings of *pariṇamana*, *pariṇāma* & *pariṇāmana* and so on, cf. EDGERTON, p. 323. Although the prologue to the ŚŚ does not appear to be organised around the pattern of ritual worship, the dedication of merit is usually the last of the seven supreme forms of worship (*saptavidhā anuttarapūjā*): cf. ZANGMO & CHIME, § 24, p. 9. For useful discussion of *pariṇāmanā*, cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Transfer'; & NAGAO, 'Pariṇāmanā'.

<sup>99</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 31, ln. 11.

<sup>100</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 29, lns. 13–21.

<sup>101</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 29, ln. 21–p. 30, ln. 2.

<sup>102</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 30, ln. 2–p. 31, ln. 10.

Having become completely non desirous<sup>103</sup> of excellent flavours<sup>104</sup>, may all sentient beings be non attached to the appearance<sup>105</sup> of flavours, completely focused in thought on the dharmas of the Buddhas, may they be in the vehicle<sup>106</sup> that does not go astray, the foremost vehicle, the highest vehicle, the quick vehicle, the great vehicle.<sup>107</sup>

*Pariṇāmana*. Once a bodhisattva generates an appropriate frame of mind by offering himself (*ātmānam upanidhāya*), he is expected to apply his merit to others with a recitation in agreement with his meditation (*svabhāvanānukūlya*).<sup>108</sup>

The recitation provided by Ś is consistent with the meditation which precedes it. The emphasis however is different. In his recitation, a bodhisattva is not to apply merit for his own benefit. He is to intercede only on behalf of others and to apply his merit solely for their benefit.

The terms of his application are similar to those with which Ś begins the tenth chapter—*Pariṇāmanā P<sup>o</sup> Daśamaḥ*—of the BCA:

By my merit from reflecting upon the *bodhicaryāvatāra*, may all sentient beings adorn the way to enlightenment.<sup>109</sup>

Merit is to be applied, not to alleviate the suffering of sentient beings, but rather, to <sup>help</sup> them along the Mahāyāna:

May all beings be furnished with the scent of morality, morality undivided, morality from the perfections of bodhisattvas. May all beings be permeated<sup>110</sup> by giving, forsaking with complete renunciation. May all beings be permeated by patience, possessing imperturbable thoughts. May all beings be permeated by energy, equipt for the path with great energy. May all beings be permeated by meditation, standing face to face with the Buddhas of the

<sup>103</sup> I.e., *agṛdvā*. Fr. *√gṛdh*. For *rasagrāddhi*, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 39, ln. 15–p. 40, ln. 1; & EDGERTON, p. 214.

<sup>104</sup> I.e., *rasāgra*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 453–454.

<sup>105</sup> I.e., *nimittāgrahītāra*, fr. *nimitta* + *agra* + *√hīṭr*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 297–298.

<sup>106</sup> I.e., *yāna*: lit. advancing, travelling.

<sup>107</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 31, lns. 5–7:

*sarvasatvāḥ sarvarasāgrajihvā (°rasāgrāgṛdvā)† bhavantu rasānimittā grahītāraḥ (°nimittāgrahītāraḥ)† sarvabuddhadharmacittanaprayuktāḥ avipannayānā agrayānā uttamayānāḥ śighrayānā mahāyānāḥ |*

In agreement with the Cambridge Ms., 21a, °*rasāgrāgṛdvā* is preferred to °*rasāgrajihvā*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 31, ln. 5 & n. 2.

<sup>108</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 31, ln. 11.

<sup>109</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 10:1, p. 221:

*bodhicaryāvatāraṃ me yad vicintayataḥ śubham |  
tena sarve janāḥ santu bodhicaryāvibhūṣaṇāḥ || 1 ||*

<sup>110</sup> I.e., *vāsita*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 478–479.

present<sup>111</sup>, possessing *samādhi*. May all beings be permeated by the dedication of the bodhisattvas. May all beings be permeated by dharmas which are completely pure, devoid of dharmas which are completely bad.<sup>112</sup> ... May all beings be dwelling in reliance on the Buddha. ...<sup>113</sup>

When a bodhisattva applies his merit he is to hope that the beneficiaries of his merit will become successful on the Mahāyāna. He is to hope that, through the application of all of his merit (*sarvakuśalamūlas*), they will become permeated by the good latent impressions of giving (*dāna*), morality (*śīlā*), patience (*kṣānti*), energy (*vīrya*) and meditation (*dhyāna*). He is also to hope that they will come face-to-face with the present Buddha and come to live in dependence on the Buddha. In addition, he is to hope that they will be permeated by dharmas that are completely pure or good (*sarvaśukladharmas*) and devoid of dharmas that are completely bad (*sarvakuśaladharmas*).

A bodhisattva, then, when giving his merit, is to desire for all beings the result of the successful practice of the right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*):

- a.) the non production of non existing bad dharmas and the destruction of existing bad dharmas; and
- b.) the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas.<sup>114</sup>

Not only is a bodhisattva to hope that all beings attain the right strivings. He is also expected to apply his merit for the inexhaustibility of

<sup>111</sup> On this *samādhi*, cf. HARRISON, 'Pratyutpannabuddhasammukhāvasthitasamādhisūtra'.

<sup>112</sup> In this passage, the contrast between dharmas that are pure (*śukla*) and therefore good (*kuśala*) and dharmas that are impure (*aśukla*) and therefore bad (*akuśala*), is marked. This typology is recurrent. For *śukladharmas*, cf. BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 23, ln. 3; p. 31, ln. 19; p. 33, ln. 8; p. 102, ln. 12; p. 105, ln. 14; p. 187, ln. 16; p. 199, lns. 13–14; & p. 324, lns. 7–8.

<sup>113</sup> Ibid., p. 31, ln. 15–p. 32, ln. 4:

sarvasatvāḥ śīlagandhopetā bhavantv anācchedyaśīlā bodhisatvapāramitāśīlā[21b]ḥ || sarvasatvā dānavāsītā bhavantu sarvatyāgaparityāgināḥ | sarvasatvāḥ kṣāntivāsītā bhavantu akṣobhyacetanāpratīlabdhāḥ | sarvasatvā vīryavāsītā bhavantu mahāvīryayānasannaddhāḥ | sarvasatvā dhyānavāsītā bhavantu pratyutpannabuddhasammukhībhāvasthitāḥ samādhipratīlabdhāḥ | sarvasatvā bodhisatvapariṇāmanāvāsītā bhavantu sarvasatvāḥ sarvaśukladharmavāsītā bhavantu sarvakuśaladharmaprahīṇāḥ | ... sarvasatvā buddhopaniśrayavīhāriṇo bhavantu | ...

It should be noted that *buddhopaniśrayavīhāriṇa* is tr. in: EDGERTON, p. 137, as 'dwelling in reliance on the Buddha', but in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 34, as 'enjoy[ing] the potentiality of becoming a Buddha'.

<sup>114</sup> On the reduction of the right strivings to these principles, cf. § 2.3, pp. 32ff..

all powers and supports in all sentient beings (*sarvabalopastambhanātrp-tatā*)<sup>115</sup>, and is to hope that sentient beings become furnished with the faculty of mindfulness (*smṛtīndriyopeta*). Words reminiscent of the right strivings and conditions favourable to enlightenment are also employed when Ś suggests how a bodhisattva should dedicate merit that accrues in the past, present and future:

Indeed the giving of past and future merit is set forth in the noble *Akṣayamatisūtra*: ‘The recollection of intentions and mental states which have been good; and after recollecting, the dedication towards enlightenment: this is skillfulness regarding the past. The focusing of attention<sup>116</sup> on the realisation<sup>117</sup> of enlightenment by the comprehension<sup>118</sup> of future sources of good (merit)—“Those good intentions of mine which shall arise, they I shall dedicate to the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of the Buddha”—this is skillfulness regarding the future’.<sup>119</sup>

In sum, it seems that Ś believes that a bodhisattva could do no better in thought, word, or action than to constantly offer up the heartfelt aspiration:

May I possess no source of good (merit) or skillfulness in knowledge of the Dharma (dharma) that would not be useful to all sentient beings.<sup>120</sup>

### 3.4 Conclusion.

Thus by mental exercise the aspiration of complete renunciation is attained. By the application of the body, with the impetus of the

<sup>115</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 32, lns. 10–13. For a tr. of part of this passage, cf. § 2.5, pp. 48ff.

<sup>116</sup> Cf. *samanvāharati* in: EDGERTON, pp. 564–565.

<sup>117</sup> I.e., *āmukhikarma*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 100.

<sup>118</sup> I.e., *nidhyapti*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 296.

<sup>119</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 33, lns. 13–16:

*atītānāgataśubhotsargas tv āryākṣayamatisūtre ’bhihitāḥ |  
kuśalānām ca cittacaitasikānānām anusmṛtir anusmṛtya ca  
bodhipariṇāmanā ’ idam atītakaūśalyaṃ | yo ’nāgatānām  
kuśalamūlānām nidhyaptibodher āmukhikarmasamanvāhārah  
| ye me utpatsyante kuśalās cittotpādās tān anuttarāyāṃ samyak-  
saṃbodhau pariṇāmiṣyāmīti (’)<sup>†</sup> idam anāgatakaūśalyaṃ ||*

This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 3:10, p. 81, lns. 5–10. For a recent ed. of part of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 165.

<sup>120</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 33, lns. 11–12:

*mā bhūt tan mama kuśalamūlaṃ dharmajñānakaūśalyaṃ vā yan na  
sarvasatvopajīvyāṃ syād iti ||*

mind of renunciation, all possessiveness is abandoned. He that is freed from the suffering of existence which arises from the source which is complete possessiveness, is said to be liberated. He attains, through infinite, immeasurable, innumerable *kalpas*, various ends, supra-mundane and mundane, showers of happiness and success. Thus, by himself—as by bait on a fish-hook which does not obtain enjoyment itself—after having attracted others, he also liberates them. For this very reason it is said in the *Ratnamegha*: 'For giving is the enlightenment of a bodhisattva'.<sup>121</sup>

So far this paper has made four main suggestions: *i.*) that the content, structure and theme of the Śs and ŚSKĀ is determined by Ś's conception of giving (*dāna* ≡ *utsarga* ≡ *tyāga*); *ii.*) that Ś's believes that giving involves the giving of one's person (*ātmabhāvotsarjana*), enjoyments (*bhogotsarjana*) and merit (*puṇyotsarjana*); *iii.*) that Ś believes that giving is facilitated by the preservation (*rakṣā*), purification (*śuddhi*) and increase (*vṛddhi*) of those things that are to be given; and *iv.*) that Ś believes: *a.*) that the preservation of gifts is effected by the non production of non existing bad dharmas; *b.*) that the purification of gifts is effected by the destruction of existing bad dharmas; and *c.*) that the increase of gifts is effected by the production of non existing good dharmas and the development of existing good dharmas.

§ 3.3<sup>122</sup> discusses the first and second of these suggestions. It considers Ś's threefold conception of giving and the rôle of giving as a structural and thematic principle in the Śs and ŚSKĀ.

§ 4<sup>123</sup>, § 5<sup>124</sup>, and § 6<sup>125</sup> discuss the third and fourth of these suggestions. They consider the preservation, purification and increase of gifts through the destruction of negative dharmas and production of positive dharmas.

The argument of § 3.3 can be summarised under four headings: *i.*) giving (*utsarga*); *ii.*) giving one's person (*ātmabhāvotsarga*); *iii.*) giving enjoyments (*bhogotsarga*); and *iv.*) giving merit (*puṇyotsarga*).

<sup>121</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 33, ln. 13–p. 34, ln. 5:

*tad evaṃ caitasikenābhyāsenā sarvatyāgādhimukṭiṃ paripūrye tyāgacittavegāpannena kāyaprayogeṇotsṛṣṭasarvaparigrahaḥ | sarvaparigrahamūlād bhavaduṣṭhād vimukto mukta ity ucyate | anuttarāṇṣ cāprameyāsaṃkhyeyān kalpān nānākārānantān laukikalokotarān sukhasaṃpatpravaraṣān anubhavati | tena cātmabhāvād anā vadiṣāmiṣeṇeva svayam anabhigatopabhogenāpy ākṣya parān api tārayate || ata evo[23a]kṭam ratnameghe' dānaṃ hi bodhisatvasya bodhir iti ||*

<sup>122</sup> Pp. 76ff..

<sup>123</sup> Pp. 93ff..

<sup>124</sup> Pp. 117ff..

<sup>125</sup> Pp. 159ff..

*Utsarga.* Ś introduces the concept of giving near the start of the ŚS and ŚSKĀ. In agreement with the doctrine of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna, he places an especially high value on the practice of giving. In the ŚS and ŚSKĀ a bodhisattva—from the moment he mounts the Mahāyāna—must practice giving. Giving, Ś holds, is the most effective opponent of attachment (*parigraha*). The mind of attachment (*parigrahacitta*) is countered by the mind of renunciation (*tyāgacitta*). Victory of non attachment over attachment is the *sine qua non* of progress along the Mahāyāna. A bodhisattva is expected to give the utmost priority to the practice of the perfection of giving (*dānapāramitā*).

The prologues to the ŚS and ŚSKĀ are *paean*s to giving. Their main themes are: *a.*) all sentient beings experience fear (*bhaya*) and suffering (*duṣkha*); *b.*) suffering is defeated by the establishment of faith (*śraddhā*) and the aspiring mind of enlightenment (*bodhiprañidhicitta*); *c.*) transgression (*āpatti*) does not arise if a bodhisattva practices the essential principles (*marmasthānas*) of the Mahāyāna; and *d.*) the essential principles consist of the giving of one's person, enjoyments and merit facilitated by the preservation, purification, and increase of the same.

Table 3.1<sup>126</sup> shows that Ś devotes almost seventeen pages to introducing the essential principles (*marmasthānas*). It is most important to him that all an incipient bodhisattvas correctly understand these principles. Such an understanding is of the correct way to give one's person, enjoyments and merit.

*Ātmabhāvotsarga.* A bodhisattva is to learn to give his person for the welfare of all other sentient beings. He is to completely give his person, without reservation. He is to think only of the benefit he gives to others. He is to be ready to give even parts of his body. He is to see such sacrifices not as loss, but as taking the essence of human life.

*Bhogotsarga.* A bodhisattva must also to be ready to give his enjoyments. Without hesitation, he is to give all his worldly possessions and pleasures to the Buddhas, to bodhisattvas, to those who support the teachings of the Buddhas (*buddhaśāsana*) and to *śrāvakas* and *pratyekabuddhas* in this order. He is to give his enjoyments to non Buddhists only when first he has satisfied the the needs of Buddhists.

*Puṇyotsarga.* A bodhisattva is to become practised at giving all of his merit accumulated in the past, present and future. He is expected to give his merit to non Buddhists, as well as to Buddhists. He is to apply his merit to all beings without exception.

---

<sup>126</sup> P. 77.

The gift of merit includes: *a.*) the meditation on the gift; and *b.*) the actual gift itself. The meditation involves visualisation of the benefits imagined to be obtained through the application of merit. All of the benefits which Ś advises a bodhisattva to imagine have a decidedly Mahāyānist cast.

A bodhisattva imagines the recipients of his merit becoming like himself. The actual gift of merit is effected with the same intention. Merit is given so that all recipients become successful on the Mahāyāna. In particular, it is hoped that the recipients of merit will obtain the results of the successful practice of the right strivings—the possession of good dharmas and the non possession of bad dharmas.

Discussion will now turn to Ś's conception of the preservation of that which is to be given and especially to preservation through the practice of the first of the right strivings, the non production of non existing bad dharmas.



## 4. PRESERVING (RAKṢANA).

In the past European Orientalists have applied themselves especially to the history of Buddhism, . . . Educated in the historical tradition of the nineteenth century, scholars believed they could learn all about Buddhism by studying its history. . . . This method is doomed to failure because in the spiritual life of India the historical dimension is of much less importance than it is in Western civilisation. The most important task for the student of Buddhism is the study of the Buddhist mentality. That is why contact with present-day Buddhism is so important, for this will guard us against seeing the texts purely as philological material and forgetting that for the Buddhist they are sacred texts which proclaim the message of salvation.<sup>1</sup>

### 4.1 Remarks.

Thus although these—one's person and so on—are given, preservation is to be practised.<sup>2</sup>

The first sentence in the second chapter of the Śs introduces a theme which dominates the next six chapters. While a bodhisattva is to give his person and so on, he is also to practice preservation (*rakṣā*). The practice of giving and that of preservation, it seems, are not contradictory but complementary.

Ś's conception of preservation is mentioned in § 1.2<sup>3</sup> and § 2.3.<sup>4</sup> It is noted that he defines preservation in the final chapter of the Śs:

In that case, he<sup>5</sup> produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well<sup>6</sup> for the non arising of bad, evil dharmas when they have not arisen: by this arises preservation.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> DE JONG, 'Study', p. 26. For a similar position, cf. RUEGG, *Study*, p. 5; & HUNTINGTON & WANGCHEN, pp. 13ff.

<sup>2</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 34, ln. 11:

*evam eṣāṃ ātmabhāvādīnāṃ utsṛṣṭānām api rakṣā kāryā |*

<sup>3</sup> Pp. 9ff.

<sup>4</sup> Pp. 32ff.

<sup>5</sup> *Viz.* a bodhisattva.

<sup>6</sup> I.e., *samyakpraṇidadhāti*: cf. DAYAL, p. 103, n. 89.

<sup>7</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, lns. 10-11:

Table 4.1: Chapters on preservation.

2.)	<i>Śīlapāramitāyām saddharmaparigraha</i> <sup>a</sup>	Taking Hold of the True Dharma by the Perfection of Morality
3.)	<i>Dharmabhāṇakādirakṣā</i> <sup>b</sup>	Preservation of the Dharma Teacher and so on
5.)	<i>Śīlapāramitāyām anarthavarjana</i> <sup>c</sup>	Forsaking The Unprofitable by the Perfection of Morality
6.)	<i>Ātmabhāvarakṣā</i> <sup>d</sup>	Preservation of One's Person
7.)	<i>Bhogapuṇyarakṣā</i> <sup>e</sup>	Preservation of Enjoyments and Merit

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p.44, ln. 5.<sup>b</sup> Ibid., p. 59, ln. 7.<sup>c</sup> Ibid., p. 117, ln. 17.<sup>d</sup> Ibid., p. 143, ln. 16.<sup>e</sup> Ibid., p. 158, ln. 10.

For Ś preservation is the practice of the first of the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*)—the non production of non existing bad dharmas—with great effort (*vyāyāma*), energy (*vīrya*), mental control (*cittapragraha*) and complete application (*samyakpraṇidhāna*).

Table 1.2<sup>8</sup>, Table 4.2<sup>9</sup> Table 4.3<sup>10</sup>, Table 4.4<sup>11</sup> and Table 4.5<sup>12</sup> also indicate a close association between preservation, the non production of bad dharmas, and morality in the titles of the second, third, fifth, sixth and seventh chapters of the Śs. These titles—for convenience listed in Table 4.1<sup>13</sup>—suggest that Ś considers the following interrelated :

- i.) the giving of one's person and so on ;
- ii.) the preservation of the same ;
- iii.) the abandonment of that which is unprofitable ( $\equiv$  the non production of bad dharmas) ; and
- iv.) the practice of the perfection of morality (*śīlapāramitā*).

---

*tatra anutpannānāṃ pāpakānāṃ akuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ anutpādāyaiva chandaṃ janayati vyāyacchati vīryam ārabhate cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti samyakpraṇidadhāti ity anena rakṣā ||*

<sup>8</sup> P. 18.<sup>9</sup> P. 104.<sup>10</sup> P. 105.<sup>11</sup> P. 106.<sup>12</sup> P. 107.<sup>13</sup> P. 94.

This interrelationship is confirmed by the content of the fifth to sixteenth verses of the ŚSKĀ and of the second to seventh chapters of the Śs. The content of the fifth chapter of the BCA—‘Preserving Awareness’ (*Samprajanyarakṣaṇa*)—is similar.<sup>14</sup> In all of these passages, the dominant theme is that a bodhisattva—in order to ensure that his gift of his person and so on is truly beneficial to others—is expected to preserve his person and so on by the non production of non existing bad dharmas by the practice of the perfection of morality.

#### 4.2 Preserving in the Śikṣāsamuccayakārikā.

§ 3.2<sup>15</sup> suggests that the first four verses of the ŚSKĀ introduce the main theme of the ŚSKĀ—that the essence of the restraint of a bodhisattva is the practice of giving his person and so on and that this practice is effected through preserving, purifying and increasing his person and so on. Table 1.1<sup>16</sup> shows that the rest of the ŚSKĀ elaborates the meaning of preservation, purification and increase. The fifth to sixteenth verses focus on the nature of preservation.

*paribhogāya satvānām ātmabhāvādi dīyate |*  
*araksite kuto bhogaḥ kiṃ dattaṃ yan na bhujyate || 5 ||*<sup>17</sup>

Preserving one's  
person.

For the enjoyment of sentient beings one's person and so on<sup>18</sup> are given.

If not preserved<sup>19</sup>, where is the enjoyment? If not enjoyed, what is a gift? (5)

The fourth verse of the ŚSKĀ advises a bodhisattva to give his person and so on to all sentient beings. The fifth verse makes the qualification that his person and so on should be given for the sustenance and enjoyment (*paribhoga*) of sentient beings. It is not enough that a bodhisattva sacrifice his person. He is expected to give that others be sustained and experience enjoyment.

A bodhisattva, then, is expected to give something of genuine benefit. When he gives, his gifts must be fit for the enjoyment of others. Accordingly, he is held responsible for protecting the condition of whatever he gives.

*tasmāt satvopabhogārtham ātmabhāvādi pālayet |*  
*kalyāṇamitrānutsargāt sūtrāṇām ca sadekṣaṇāt || 6 ||*<sup>20</sup>

<sup>14</sup> On *śīlapāramitā* as the dominant theme of the fifth chapter of the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 5, pp. 35–41.

<sup>15</sup> Pp. 72ff..

<sup>16</sup> P. 16.

<sup>17</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Śikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. xl. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 34, lns. 11–12.

<sup>18</sup> I.e., *ātmabhāvādi*. This ref. to one's person, enjoyments and merit.

<sup>19</sup> I.e., one's person, enjoyments and merit.

<sup>20</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xl. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 34, lns. 13–14 & 18; p. 41, lns. 9, 10 & 13; & p. 42, ln. 9.

Therefore for the enjoyment of sentient beings one's person and so on should be preserved ;  
by not forsaking spiritual friend(s) and by constant study<sup>21</sup> of the sūtras. (6)

A bodhisattva is to preserve his person and so on for the enjoyment of others by following correct practices. Ś considers spiritual friends (*kalyāṇamitras*) and Mahāyāna sūtras authoritative sources for instruction in correct practices.

In the third verse of the ŚSKĀ Ś claims that Mahāyāna sūtras are the primary source of the restraint of a bodhisattva.<sup>22</sup> In the prologue to the ŚS he mentions the significance of the sūtras and of the ability to accurately identify authoritative teachings in the sūtras.<sup>23</sup> Here, in the sixth verse of the ŚSKĀ, he mentions the importance of the legitimate exponents of the meaning of these sūtras, the spiritual friends of a bodhisattva. A bodhisattva is advised to preserve his person and so on by constantly contemplating the sūtras and by never forsaking those who explain the sūtras.<sup>24</sup>

*tatrātmabhāve kā rakṣā yadanarthavivarjanam |*  
*kenaitallabhyate sarvaṃ niṣphalasyandavarjanāt || 7 ||*<sup>25</sup>

Then regarding one's person, what is preservation? Eschewing that which is evil.  
How is all this found? By eschewing fruitless outcomes<sup>26</sup>. (7)

Salutary as such practices may be, Ś does not believe that preservation proper subsists in submission to a qualified spiritual friend and contemplation of authoritative sūtras.<sup>27</sup> Preservation is actually the abandonment (*vivarjana*) of that which is useless, worthless and evil (*anartha*), and is to be effected by a bodhisattva who totally abandons issues or results (*syandas*) which are barren, useless and vain (*niṣphala*).

Ś considers the abandonment of unprofitable and bad actions the practice of morality (*śīlā*). He also considers it the way to prevent the production of bad dharmas (*akuśaladharmas*), that is, to practice of the first of the four right strivings.

<sup>21</sup> I.e., *ikṣāṇa*, here ≡ *darśana*: cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 41, ln. 13. For Ś studying seems to involve not only looking at but also looking after, experiencing and contemplating.

<sup>22</sup> Cf. § 3.2, pp. 72ff..

<sup>23</sup> Cf. § 1.2, pp. 9ff..

<sup>24</sup> For the immense importance of scriptural study, cf. CABEZÓN, *Language*, p. 72; & quote fr. the *Vyākhyāyukti* of VASUBANDHU, p. 232, n. 4.

<sup>25</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. xli. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 44, lns. 19–20; & p. 116, ln. 12.

<sup>26</sup> I.e., *niṣphalasyandas*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 614. In this paper *phala* is tr. as fruit. An alternative tr. would be effect: cf. KAJIYAMA, '*Tarkabhāṣā*', pp. 223 & 248; & NAGAO, '*Logic*', p. 127.

<sup>27</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 44, ln. 19.

The practice of the first right striving is fundamental to Ś's conception of the preservation of one's person, enjoyments and merit. The importance which he attributes to this practice can be seen from Table 4.2<sup>28</sup>, Table 4.3<sup>29</sup>, Table 4.4<sup>30</sup> and Table 4.5<sup>31</sup>. The auto commentary devoted to the seventh verse of the ŚSKĀ spans more than seventy pages of prose. This exceeds the combined total of Ś's auto commentary on all other verses from the fifth to sixteenth. He clearly considers it of singular importance that an incipient bodhisattva learns how to ensure the non production of non existing bad dharmas by forsaking that which is unprofitable (*anarthavivarjana*) by practising morality.

*etat sidhyet sadā smṛtyā (sadāsmṛtyā)† smṛtis tīvrādarād bhavet |  
ādarah śamamāhātmyam jñātvātāpena jāyate || 8 ||*<sup>32</sup>

This should be attained by constant mindfulness. Mindfulness should arise from intense devotion.  
Devotion—having been known as the greatness of tranquility<sup>33</sup>—arises from zeal. (8)

*samāhito yathābhūtam prajānātīty avadan muniḥ |  
śamāc ca na calec cittam bāhyaceṣṭānivartanāt || 9 ||*<sup>34</sup>

'He that is concentrated (on an object)<sup>35</sup> understands in accordance with the truth', said the Muni.  
And the mind should not depart from tranquility by abstaining from outward activity. (9)

<sup>28</sup> P. 104.

<sup>29</sup> P. 105.

<sup>30</sup> P. 106.

<sup>31</sup> P. 107.

<sup>32</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xli. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 118, ln. 3; & p. 119, lns. 1 & 2-3.

<sup>33</sup> I.e., *śamamāhātmya*, here ≡ *śamathamāhātmya* & *śamasya māhātmyam*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 119, lns. 2 & 9.

The noun *māhātmya* is fr. the adj. *mahātman*. It means high-mindedness, majesty & dignity: cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 796 & 815.

For the use of *mahātman* by Ś, cf. § 3.3.2, pp. 82ff., & BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 23, ln. 15.

For the use of *māhātmya*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 119, lns. 1ff.; & p. 145, lns. 11-15. In the latter passage, the association between *māhātmya* & impartiality or benevolence (*samatā*) is marked.

<sup>34</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xli. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 119, lns. 9-10; & p. 123, lns. 13-14.

<sup>35</sup> I.e., *samāhita*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 570; & SAITO, '*Buddhapālitamūlamadhyamakavṛtti*', I, p. 149, ln. 19. Here *samāhita* ≡ *samāhitamanas*: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 119, ln. 11. This has influenced previous translations of this passage: 'whoso hath fixed mind' in: *ibid.*, p. xli; & 'he that hath concentrated thought' in: BARNETT, p. 104.

For ref. to the occurrence of this passage in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, '*Prajñākaramati*', cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 10, ln. 3 & n. 1; & BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 119, n. 5. For add. ref., cf. *ibid.*, p. 403.

A bodhisattva is expected to preserve his person by the total abandonment of fruitless issues. This is to be effected by constant mindfulness (*sadāsmṛti*).

The significance of mindfulness in the ŚSKĀ, Śs and BCA and in the literature of the Hīnayāna and Mahāyāna in general, is mentioned in § 2.2<sup>36</sup>, § 2.5<sup>37</sup>, § 2.6<sup>38</sup>, and § 2.7<sup>39</sup>. In the eighth and ninth verses of the ŚSKĀ mindfulness arises from strong devotion (*tīvrādhara*) and devotion—known as the greatness of tranquility (*śamamāhātmya*)<sup>40</sup>—arises from zeal (*[ā]tāpa*). Mindfulness and tranquility (*śama* ≡ *śamatha*) are considered requisite for a bodhisattva to understand the way things are (*yathābhūta*).

In the Śs, in his auto commentary on the first half of the eighth verse of the ŚSKĀ, Ś lists twelve different forms of mindfulness (*smṛti*).<sup>41</sup> In the final verse of the ŚSKĀ he associates mindfulness with the successful attainment of the right strivings.<sup>42</sup>

For Ś, then, mindfulness is the *sine qua non* of spiritual progress. In the Śs and ŚSKĀ a bodhisattva without mindfulness has no chance of success. The cardinal importance of mindfulness is well expressed in the following passage :

... Therefore intense devotion is applied to religious discipline, therefore also mindfulness is present; ever present mindfulness<sup>43</sup> eschews that which is fruitless. And he that eschews that which is fruitless, in him that which is unprofitable does not arise. Therefore by he who wishes to preserve his person, desiring the basis that is mindfulness, he must constantly be attended by ever present mindfulness.<sup>44</sup>

<sup>36</sup> Pp. 28ff.

<sup>37</sup> Pp. 44ff.

<sup>38</sup> Pp. 49ff.

<sup>39</sup> Pp. 61ff.

<sup>40</sup> The meaning of *śamamāhātmya* is explained by Ś in his auto commentary on ŚSKĀ 8cd.

In: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 119, lns. 3–8, the meaning of *śama* is explicated with a quotation fr. the *Akṣayamatīśūtra*. For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 170. For a tr. of the complete passage, cf. *ibid.*, II, pp. 549ff.

In: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 119, lns. 9–10, the meaning of *śamasya māhātmyam* is given :

*kiṃ punar asya śamasya māhātmyaṃ yathābhūtajñānajananaśaktiḥ* ! ...

<sup>41</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 118, lns. 5–14.

<sup>42</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlvii; & p. 356, lns. 8–9.

<sup>43</sup> I.e., *upasthitasmṛti*: lit. mindfulness which is present or near at hand.

<sup>44</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 119 ln. 17–p. 120, ln. 2:

... ' *tena tīvra ādaro bhavati śikṣāsu* ' *tenāpi smṛtir upatiṣṭhati* | *upasthitasmṛtir niṣphalaṃ varjayati* | *yaś ca niṣphalaṃ varjayati*

*sarvatrācapalo mandam atisnigdhabhābhāṣaṇāt |  
āvarjayej janaṃ bhavyam ādeyaś cāpi jāyate || 10 ||*<sup>45</sup>

Always steady, by speaking very affectionately, gradually,  
he should attract suitable people. And thus he becomes accept-  
able<sup>46</sup>. (10)

*anādeyaṃ tu taṃ lokaḥ paribhūya jināṅkuram |  
bhasmacchanno yathā vahniḥ pacyeta narakādiṣu || 11 ||*<sup>47</sup>

But the inhabitants of the world, having rebuked<sup>48</sup> the shoot of  
the Jina as one that is unacceptable,  
as fire covered with ashes, they could burn<sup>49</sup> in the hells and so  
on. (11)

*ratnameghe jinenoktas tena saṃkṣepasaṃvaraḥ |  
yenāprasādaḥ satvānāṃ tad yatnena vivarjayet || 12 ||*<sup>50</sup>

Therefore a concise rule<sup>51</sup> was related by the Jina in the *Rat-*  
*namegḥa*:  
He should carefully eschew that which causes the disfavour of sen-  
tient beings. (12)

Mindfulness and tranquility are meant to give a bodhisattva self con-  
trol (*acapala*) in his relations with others. It is considered imperative that  
he has sufficient presence of mind to secure favour with beings who are  
appropriate.<sup>52</sup>

Table 4.3<sup>53</sup> shows that in the fourth chapter of the Śs it is held a  
serious fault to hinder a bodhisattva or reject a teacher of the Dharma  
(*dharmabhāṇaka*).<sup>54</sup> Whoever impugns or refuses to accept a bodhisattva

*tasyānarthā na sambhava[62a]nti | tasmād ātmabhāvaṃ rakṣitukā-  
mena smṛtimūlam anviṣya nityam upasthitasmṛtinā bhavitavyaṃ ||*

<sup>45</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 124, lns. 3–4.

<sup>46</sup> I.e., *ādeya*. This adj. means welcome, acceptable, pleasing & agreeable: cf. EDGERTON, p. 94.

<sup>47</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 124, lns. 10–11.

<sup>48</sup> I.e., *paribhūya*, in the sense given to *paribhāṣati* & *paribhāṣaka* in: EDGERTON, p. 328.

<sup>49</sup> I.e., *pacyeta*. For *pacyate*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 314.

<sup>50</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 124, lns. 13–14.

<sup>51</sup> I.e., *saṃvara*, which here, seems to be synonymous with *saṃgraha*. For the use of *saṃgraha*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 127, lns. 6–7.

<sup>52</sup> Because—as mentioned in § 3.3.3, pp. 83ff.—giving to those of high status (*mahādakṣiṇīya*) is thought more valuable than giving to the lowly. On this, cf. also *ibid.*, p. 146, lns. 14–15.

<sup>53</sup> P. 105.

<sup>54</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 84ff. & 96ff..

or teacher consigns himself to the hells.<sup>55</sup> Accordingly, anything that a bodhisattva might do to cause others to hold him in contempt (*paribhava*) entails issues which are unprofitable and evil (*anartha*).<sup>56</sup>

In the twelfth verse of the ŚSKĀ, then, an incipient bodhisattva is advised to forsake anything that could cause the disfavour of sentient beings and therefore, the production of bad dharmas. In speech, he is neither to be harsh nor haughty. His words and bearing are to be affectionate and appropriate.<sup>57</sup> In this way he is to ensure reception by those who are fit.

*eṣā rakṣātmabhāvasya bhaiṣajyavasānādibhiḥ |  
ātmatrṣṇopabhogāt tu kliṣṭāpattiḥ prajāyate || 13 ||*<sup>58</sup>

This is the preservation of one's person with medicines, clothes and so on.

But grievous misfortune is produced by the enjoyment of one's own desires. (13)

The fifth to twelfth verses of the ŚSKĀ describe the preservation of one's person (*ātmabhāvarakṣaṇa*) as a gradually evolving process of religious discipline: *a.*) the fifth verse advises a bodhisattva to preserve his person that he might effect the suitable gift of his person; *b.*) the sixth verse advises him to prepare to preserve his person by attending to spiritual friends and Mahāyāna sūtras; *c.*) the seventh verse advises him to actually preserve his person by practising morality, especially the first of the four right strivings; *d.*) the eighth and ninth verses advise him that such practices must be attended by mindfulness and tranquility; and *e.*) the tenth, eleventh and twelfth verses advise him to preserve his person by avoiding the disfavour of others (*parāprasādarakṣā*) by making his demeanour (*īryāpatha*) appropriate<sup>59</sup>.

A subsequent stage of religious discipline is introduced in the thirteenth verse. Here it is held that one's person is also to be protected through the use of clothes, medicines and so on. A bodhisattva who cares for others is first of all expected to care for himself. The implication is that a bodhisattva who ruins his health and frame—out of devotion to extreme asceticism for example—has little of real benefit to give to others. A bodhisattva, then, is advised to sustain his person by the usual means.

Even so, Ś warns that his advice is not to be used as an excuse for self indulgence. A bodhisattva is to preserve his person with clothes and medicines and so on, but such things are to be used in moderation, not

<sup>55</sup> For a clear description of this position, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:43ab, p. 432, lns. 8ff..

<sup>56</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 124, ln. 13.

<sup>57</sup> Cf. *priyavacana* in: ZANGMO & CHIME, § 19, ¶ 2, p. 11.

<sup>58</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xliii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 127, lns. 8 & 14; & p. 143, lns. 1 & 3.

<sup>59</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 124, ln. 18.

for the sake of the satisfaction of one's craving (*ātmatṛṣṇopabhoga*). By indulging his desires, a bodhisattva cannot but produce dharmas that are evil.

*sukṛtārambhiṇā bhāvyaṃ mātrajñena ca sarvata(h)† |  
iti śikṣāpadād asya bhogarakṣā na duṣkarā || 14 ||*<sup>60</sup>

Preserving  
enjoyments.

He must be one who undertakes good actions and one who is moderate<sup>61</sup> completely:  
by this moral precept, the preservation of enjoyments is not difficult for him. (14)

§ 3.3.3<sup>62</sup> mentions that in the prologue to the Śs Ś counsels a bodhisattva to give his enjoyments with careful circumspection (*susamīkṣitakurvāṇa*). The fourteenth verse of the ŚSKĀ reiterates this advice.

A bodhisattva is expected to carefully preserve his enjoyments by considering the suitability of his actions. While he is obliged to give his enjoyments, he is obliged to do so with caution:

For the moral precept was related in the *Ugraparipṛcchā*: 'The quality of being a producer of well considered actions and the quality of being a producer of well executed actions: thus is attained the prevention of poor calculation<sup>63</sup>, non thorough consideration<sup>64</sup> (regret) and disregard concerning enjoyments'.<sup>65</sup>

A bodhisattva who gives with circumspection is thought to protect himself from the arising of bad dharmas which attends poor judgement in the giving of enjoyments. Ś also holds in the Śs—again quoting the *Ugraparipṛcchā*—that when a bodhisattva gives his enjoyments, he is never to create obstacles to the development of others:

<sup>60</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. xliii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 143, lns. 19–20.

<sup>61</sup> I.e., *mātrajñā*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 429.

<sup>62</sup> Pp. 83ff..

<sup>63</sup> I.e., *durnyāsa*. For *nyāsa* ( $\equiv$  *nyasana*  $\equiv$  *nikṣepa*) as 'solving mathematical problems', cf. *ibid.*, pp. 314 & 294. For *nyāsa* as 'applying', 'abandoning' & 'depositing', cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 572.

<sup>64</sup> I.e., *apratyavekṣā*  $\equiv$  *apratyavekṣaṇā*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 376; & MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 676.

<sup>65</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 144, lns. 1–2:

*ugraparipṛcchāyāṃ hi śikṣāpadam uktaṃ (|)† susamīkṣitakar-  
makāritā sukṛtakarmakāritā ca (|)† (|)† tena bhogānāṃ durnyāsā  
pretyavekṣā (|)† avajñāpratiṣedhaḥ siddho bhavati |*

It is noted in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 142, n. 2, that the *pretyavekṣā* of the Cambridge Ms., 71a, should be read as *pratya*<sup>o</sup>. The present writer agrees. In addition, in agreement with the Ms., he reads *durnyāsāpretyavekṣā avajñāpratiṣedhaḥ*.

The writer is unable to find this passage in: NATTIER. Even so, its meaning is clear from a passage quoted from the *Akṣayamatisūtra* in: BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 271, lns. 4–8. For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 163. For a tr. of the complete passage, cf. *ibid.*, II, pp. 121ff..

Thus, giving and not giving are not to be made causes of hindrance to the conditions favourable to enlightenment<sup>66</sup> and to the sacred knowledge and so on of oneself and others.<sup>67</sup>

It is thought imperative that when a bodhisattva gives or does not give his enjoyments, he acts out of a considered and informed concern for the interest of others (*parakṛtyakārita*).<sup>68</sup> Under no circumstances is he to allow his giving to hinder the development of that which is good (*kuśāla*).<sup>69</sup>

Preserving merit.

*svārthavipākavairṣṇyāc chubhaṃ samrakṣitaṃ bhavet |  
paścāttāpaṃ na kurvīta na ca kṛtvā prakāśayet || 15 ||*<sup>70</sup>

Merit should be preserved by freedom from desire for the ripening of self interest.  
Having given<sup>71</sup> he should not feel regret. And having acted he should not proclaim his actions. (15)

*lābhasatkārabhītaḥ syād unnatiṃ varjayet sadā |  
bodhisatvaḥ prasannaḥ syād dharme vimatiṃ utsṛjet || 16 ||*<sup>72</sup>

He should fear profit and honour. He should eschew pride constantly.  
A bodhisattva should be faithful<sup>73</sup>. He should eschew doubt in the Dharma. (16)

In the prologue to the Śs Ś stressed that a bodhisattva should become inured in giving not only his person and enjoyments, but also his merit.<sup>74</sup> In the fifteenth verse of the Śs he holds that a bodhisattva should also engage in the practice of preserving his merit (*śubharaḥṣaṇa*). Merit is to be preserved so that it can be applied for the benefit of others.<sup>75</sup>

It is especially important to Ś that a bodhisattva learns how to preserve his merit. He is to try to cultivate a lack of concern for the fulfilment

<sup>66</sup> I.e., *bodhipakṣas*.

<sup>67</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 144, ln. 6:

*tathā svaparabodhipakṣaśrutādyantarāyakarau tyāgātyāgau na  
kāryau |*

The present writer is unable to find this passage in: NATTIER.

<sup>68</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 145, ln. 10.

<sup>69</sup> Ibid., p. 144, ln. 7.

<sup>70</sup> Ibid., p. xliii. Cf. also ibid., p. 146, lns. 21–22; p. 147, lns. 18–19 & 20; & p. 148, lns. 1–2.

<sup>71</sup> I.e., *datvā*: cf. Ś's commentary in: ibid., p. 147, ln. 20.

<sup>72</sup> Ibid., p. xliv. Cf. also ibid., p. 148, lns. 6–7.

<sup>73</sup> I.e., *prasanna*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 388.

<sup>74</sup> Cf. § 3.3.4, pp. 85ff..

<sup>75</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 147, lns. 17–18.

of his personal interest. Likewise, he is never to feel regret (*paścāttāpa*) or repentance (*vipratīśāracitta*) after giving his merit. Nor is he to exult over his good actions. Above all, a bodhisattva is never to think, say, or do anything which could cause the stock of merit he has accrued through good actions in the past to decrease. Therefore, he is to eschew all profitless actions that cause the generation of bad dharmas, especially the desire for profit and honour, pride, and doubt in the Dharma.

### 4.3 Preserving in the Śikṣāsamuccaya.

Table 1.1<sup>76</sup> and Table 1.2<sup>77</sup> show that the subject of the second to seventh chapters of the ŚS is preservation, in particular the preservation of one's person, enjoyments and merit. These chapters contain Ś's auto commentary on the fifth to sixteenth verses of the ŚSKĀ. The content of the ŚSKĀ determines the content of the ŚS and vice versa. Details on the second to seventh chapters is available from Table 4.2<sup>78</sup>, Table 4.3<sup>79</sup>, Table 4.4<sup>80</sup> and Table 4.5<sup>81</sup>.

The main themes of this part of the ŚS are that a bodhisattva is:

- a.) to preserve his person and so on to facilitate the gift of his person and so on;
- b.) to contemplate Mahāyāna sūtras and value spiritual friends;
- c.) to preserve his person: *i.*) by forsaking that which is unprofitable; *ii.*) with mindfulness, devotion, zeal and tranquility, while eschewing outward activity; *iii.*) by propitiating suitable people; *iv.*) with medicines and clothes;
- d.) to preserve his enjoyments by giving them with care; and
- e.) to preserve his merit by forsaking self interest, regretful giving, the desire for profit and honour, pride, doubt in the Dharma and by cultivating the ten ways (*prakāras*).

§ 4.2<sup>82</sup> mentioned that Ś gives most attention to the preservation of one's person by eschewing that which is unprofitable (*anartha*) and has fruitless outcomes (*niṣphalasyanda*).

---

<sup>76</sup> P. 16.

<sup>77</sup> P. 18.

<sup>78</sup> P. 104.

<sup>79</sup> P. 105.

<sup>80</sup> P. 106.

<sup>81</sup> P. 107.

<sup>82</sup> Pp. 95ff..

Table 4.2: Preservation in the Śs-A.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<i>The Perfection of Morality.</i>	34–158	37–156
<b>Preserving one's person.</b>	34–143	37–141
ŚĪLAPĀRAMITĀYĀM SADDHARMAPARIGRAHO NĀMA DVITĪYAḤ P <sup>o</sup>	34–44	37–45
5.) <sup>c</sup>	34	37
6ab.)	34	37
Preserve ( <i>√ rakṣ</i> ) your person to give ( <i>ut + √ sṛj</i> ) your person!	34	37
6b.)	34	37
6c.)	34	37
Forsake not your spiritual friend ( <i>kalyāṇamitra</i> )!	34–41	37–43
6c.)	41	43
6d.)	41	43
Study ( <i>√ dṛś</i> ) the sūtras!	41	43
6c.)	41	43
6d.)	41	43
Accept ( <i>pari + √ grah</i> ) the Dharma!	41–44	43–45
6c.)	42	44
DHARMABHĀṆAKĀDIRAKṢĀ TRṬĪYĀH P <sup>o</sup>	44–59	46–60
7ab.)	44	46
Forsake the unprofitable ( <i>anartha + √ vrj</i> )!	44	46
Hold fast ( <i>√ dhṛ</i> ) to the Dharma!	45–49	46–48
Reject ( <i>pari + √ vrj</i> ):		
the hooks of Māra ( <i>mārāṅkas</i> )!;	49–51	48–52
the evil friend ( <i>akalyāṇamitra</i> )!;	51	52
lassitude ( <i>avasāda</i> )!;	52–54	53–55
lack of aspiration ( <i>anadhimukti</i> )!	54–55	55–56
Engage in the work of service ( <i>vaiyāvṛtya</i> <sup>d</sup> )!	55–56	56–58
Fear the hells!	56–59	58–60

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 34–59.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 37–60.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.<sup>d</sup> For the significance of this term, cf. EDGERTON, p. 511.

Table 4.3: Preservation in the Śs-B.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Preserving one's person (cont.).</b>	34-143	37-141
CATURTHAḤ P°	59-97	61-99
5 fundamental faults ( <i>mūlāpattis</i> ) of <i>kṣatriyas</i> .	59-60	61-62
8 fundamental faults of incipient ( <i>ādikarmika</i> ) bodhisattvas.	60-64	62-68
Confess ( <i>√ diś</i> ) your fundamental faults!	64-66	68-69
12 verses ( <i>kārikās</i> ) on fundamental faults.	66-67	70-71
Confess your faults!	67-69	72-73
Avoid:		
the ten unvirtuous actions ( <i>akuśalas</i> )!;	69-75	74-79
desire ( <i>kāma</i> )!	75-77	79-82
Reflect that womens' bodies are impure ( <i>aśuci</i> )!	77-83	82-87
Hinder ( <i>antar + √ i</i> ) not a bodhisattva!	84-87	87-89
Help bodhisattvas!	87-89	89-92
Reject self promotion ( <i>ātmānam ut + √ kr</i> ) & the contempt ( <i>avamānya</i> ) of others!	90-92	92-94
Recognise the value of simple devotion!	92-95	94-96
Reject ( <i>prati + √ kṣip</i> ):		
not the Dharma!;	95-96	96-98
not a preacher of the Dharma!	96-97	98-99
ŚĪLAPĀRAMITĀYĀM ANARTHAVARJANAḤ PAÑCAMAḤ P°	97-117	100-116
Bodhisattva vows ( <i>samādānas</i> ).	97-100	100-102
Respect ( <i>sat + √ kr</i> ) others!	100-101	102-103
The noble eightfold way ( <i>āryaṣṭāṅgamārga</i> ):	101-116	103-114
right view ( <i>samyagdṛṣṭi</i> );	101	103
right intention ( <i>samyaksaṃkalpa</i> );	102-104	103-106
right action ( <i>samyakkarmānta</i> );	104-106	106-108
right speech ( <i>samyagvāc</i> );	106-111	108
right endeavour ( <i>samyagvyāyāma</i> );	111-112	110-111
right livelihood ( <i>samyagājīva</i> );	112-113	111-112
right mindfulness ( <i>samyaksmṛti</i> );	113-114	112-113
right concentration ( <i>samyaksamādhi</i> ).	114-116	113-114

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 59-116.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 61-114.

Table 4.4: Preservation in the Śs-C.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Preserving one's person (cont.).</b>	34-143	37-141
7b.) <sup>c</sup>	116	114
7cd.)	116	114
Work solely for the benefit of others ( <i>parārtha</i> )!	116-117	114-116
ĀTMABHĀVARAKṢĀ ṢAṢṬAḤ P°	118-143	117-141
7d.)	118	117
8a.)	118	117
12 forms of mindfulness ( <i>smṛti</i> ).	118	117-118
8b.)	119	118
Devotion ( <i>ādhara</i> ) the opposite of disregard ( <i>avaññā</i> ).	119	118
8cd.)	119	118
Tranquility ( <i>śama</i> & <i>śamatha</i> ).	119	118
9ab.)	119	
The greatness of tranquility ( <i>śamasya māhātmyam</i> ).	119-120	118-119
Concentration ( <i>samādhi</i> ) & morality ( <i>śilā</i> ).	120-121	119-121
Concentration & the mind ( <i>citta</i> ).	121-122	121-122
The city of the mind ( <i>cittanagara</i> ).	122-123	122-123
9cd.)	123 & 124	123
Avoid outward activity ( <i>bāhyaceṣṭa</i> )!	123-124	123
10.)	124	123
Propitiate ( <i>ā + √ vrj</i> ) sentient beings!	124	123-124
11.)	124	
12.)	124	124
Correct demeanour ( <i>īryāpatha</i> ).	124-127	124-126
13a.)	127	126
13b.)	127	
Permanent medicines ( <i>satatabhaiṣajyas</i> ).	127-131	127-130
Avoid eating fish & flesh ( <i>matsyamāṃsa</i> )!	131-135	130-132
Medicines for the sick ( <i>glānapratyayabhaiṣajyas</i> ).	135	132-133
The use of clothes ( <i>vasana</i> ).	136	133-134

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 116-136.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 114-134.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 4.5: Preservation in the ŚS-D.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Preserving one's person (cont.).</b>	34–143	37–141
13cd.) <sup>c</sup>	137	134
The way to accept & use gifts of the faithful ( <i>śraddhādeyas</i> ).	137–138	135–136
Incantations ( <i>mantras</i> ).	138–142	136–140
13ab.)	143	140
13cd.)	143	140
Preserve your person to give your person!	143	140–141
BHOGAPUṆYARAKṢĀ SAPTAMAḤ P°	143–158	142–156
<b>Preserving enjoyments.</b>	143–146	142–145
14.)	143	142
Possess the quality of acting with circumspection ( <i>susamīkṣītakarmakāritā</i> )!	143–145	142–143
Act for the benefit of others ( <i>parārtha</i> ) not oneself ( <i>svārtha</i> )!	145–146	143–145
<b>Preserving merit.</b>	146–158	145–156
15ab.)	146	145
Be altruistic not selfish!	147	146–147
15c.)	147	147
Regret ( <i>vi + prati + √ sr̥</i> <sup>d</sup> ) not your giving!	147–148	147
15d.)	148	147
Reveal ( <i>pra + √ kāś</i> ) not your good actions!	148	147
16.)	148	147
Avoid :		
pride ( <i>unnati</i> )!;	149–151	147–150
the ten deeds of Māra ( <i>māra-karmas</i> )!	151–152	150–152
Cultivate the ten ways ( <i>prakāras</i> )!	153–157	152–155
Avoid superficial thinking ( <i>ayoniśomanaskāra</i> )!	157–158	155–156
Apply merit to enlightenment ( <i>bodhipariṇāmana</i> )!	158	156

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 137–158.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 134–156.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.<sup>d</sup> For the significance of this term, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 492–493.

## 4.3.1 Preserving one's person.

The means of preservation and so on of all<sup>83</sup> the three kinds<sup>84</sup> has been related in general.  
Now the preservatives<sup>85</sup> and so on are to be related.<sup>86</sup>

*Chapter two.* Chapter two is an auto commentary on the fifth and sixth verses of the ŚSKĀ. Table 4.2<sup>87</sup> indicates that the second chapter is supposed to impress a bodhisattva new to the way with the need to preserve his person and so on. His person and so on are to be considered valuable only insofar as they given to others. Failure to maintain their condition is to be understood as making them unworthy of being given. An incipient bodhisattva is advised to prepare to preserve his person and so on by the study of Mahāyāna sūtras, by devotion to spiritual friends and by acceptance of the Dharma.

Table 4.2<sup>88</sup> and Table 4.3<sup>89</sup> show that in the third to fifth chapters introduce the preservatives (*rakṣās*) themselves. These chapters are devoted entirely to an auto commentary on the seventh verse of the ŚSKĀ. Here, Ś is most concerned to describe preservation proper, that is, how a bodhisattva is to actually preserve his person by abandoning that which is unprofitable and effects fruitless outcomes. Ś claims that the third and fourth chapters describe things that are unprofitable<sup>90</sup> and the fifth the avoidance of things that are unprofitable and result in fruitless outcomes.<sup>91</sup> Together they constitute a sustained discourse on the practice of the non production of non existing bad dharmas—the first of the four right strivings—through the perfection of morality (*śīlapāramitā*).<sup>92</sup>

<sup>83</sup> I.e., *api*: cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 55, def. 4.

<sup>84</sup> *Viz.* of one's person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>85</sup> I.e., *rakṣās*. For *rakṣā* def. as a thing which preserves, cf. *ibid.*, p. 860; & BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 46.

In the ŚS a preservative is a practice by which a bodhisattva preserves his person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>86</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 44, lns. 19–20:

*uktas trayāṇām api sāmānyena rakṣādyupāyaḥ |  
rakṣādayas tu vācyāḥ |*

<sup>87</sup> P. 104.

<sup>88</sup> P. 104.

<sup>89</sup> P. 105.

<sup>90</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 97, ln. 19.

<sup>91</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 97, ln. 19; & p. 118, ln. 1.

<sup>92</sup> Cf. the summary of the main features of the right strivings in § 1.2, pp. 9ff.; & in § 2.3, pp. 32ff..

*Chapters three & four.* The tone of the third and fourth chapters is unremittingly negative. Table 4.2<sup>93</sup> and Table 4.3<sup>94</sup> indicate an extended catalogue of faults. Typical is Ś's enumeration of actions which are highly unprofitable (*mahanto 'narthāḥ*)<sup>95</sup>: a.) the five fundamental faults (*mūlāpattis*) of a *kṣatriya*; b.) the eight fundamental faults of an incipient bodhisattva entering the Mahāyāna (*mahāyānasamprasthita*); c.) the ten unvirtuous ways (*akuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ*); and d.) the twelve *kārikās* which summarize the fundamental faults (*mūlāpattīnāṃ samgrahakā*).<sup>96</sup>

In character, these chapters are uniformly authoritarian and prescriptive. An incipient bodhisattva is to be in no doubt about the dire consequences of unprofitable actions. Invariably, they generate bad and evil dharmas which result in unfortunate rebirth. Ś's seems to enjoy describing the unpleasantnesses which await transgressors in various hells. This suggests an imagination worthy of the most perverse of warders.<sup>97</sup> Whatever pleasure Ś may or may not experience in relating the hells, his intent is clear. Above all else, he wishes to impress on the mind of an incipient bodhisattva the absolute folly of committing actions which are unprofitable and producing dharmas which are evil.

*Chapter five.* The fifth chapter describes the avoidance or abandonment (*vivarjana*) of actions which are unprofitable and result in fruitless outcomes. Ś expects a bodhisattva who fears the kinds of evil (*vidhānartha*) he describes to undertake to take a vow (*samādāna*).<sup>98</sup>

With reference to the *Adhyaśayasamcodanasūtra*, *Sarvadharmāpravṛttinirdeśa* and *Kṣitigarbhasūtra* he gives examples of various vows.<sup>99</sup> Bodhisattva vows are supposed to help an incipient bodhisattva to commit himself to forsaking unprofitable actions and to avoiding the generation of negative dharmas. He is to see the taking of a vow as a way to reduce the obstruction which results from (bad) actions (*karmāvaraṇas*) and to prevent himself from becoming bad through such obstruction (*karmāvaraṇanānthika*).<sup>100</sup>

By this stage, then, an untrained bodhisattva is expected to have experienced a profound sense of fear through the contemplation of unprofitable actions, fruitless issues and the arising of evil and bad dharmas. In reaction, he is to have established a firm determination to avoid being

<sup>93</sup> P. 104.

<sup>94</sup> P. 105.

<sup>95</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 59, ln. 10.

<sup>96</sup> Apparently composed by Ś. For ref., cf. Table 4.3 on p. 105.

<sup>97</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 56, ln. 14–p. 59, ln. 6. DAYAL may be correct when he suggests that Buddhist ethics sometimes 'degenerates into spiritual terrorism of the worst sort' (DAYAL, p. 205).

<sup>98</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 97, lns. 19ff.

<sup>99</sup> For ref., cf. Table 4.3 on p. 105.

<sup>100</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 98, ln. 23–p. 99, ln. 2; & p. 99, ln. 16.

cast into the hells as a result of the accumulation of evil dharmas. These sentiments—laudable as they may be—are essentially negative. To counteract his fears in a more positive way he is expected to have undertaken a vow.

Yet how is a bodhisattva who has undertaken a vow to conduct himself in his daily life? In the fifth chapter Ś suggests that a bodhisattva beginning on the path follow the noble eightfold way (*āryāṣṭāṅgamārga*).<sup>101</sup> As the character of Ś's description of the eightfold way is discussed in § 2.7<sup>102</sup> little will be said here. It is enough to mention that the noble eightfold way is the seventh and final set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment (*bodhipakṣa dharmas*) and that Ś's presentation of each of the eight members reflects a deep concern for the resolution of the mundane issues which his readers face in their daily lives. At the least, Ś clearly believes that lives lived in accord with the eightfold way are lives devoted to the non production of non existing bad dharmas.

*Chapter six.* Chapter six is an auto commentary on verses eight to thirteen of the ŚSKĀ. The fifth chapter describes the way a bodhisattva is to abandon fruitless outcomes, the sixth describes the way to successfully apply this method.<sup>103</sup>

As discussed in § 4.2<sup>104</sup>, a bodhisattva is expected to practice with unremitting mindfulness and awareness. He is to be devout and zealous, his mind is to be tranquil, and he is to avoid outward activity.

It is thought that if a bodhisattva practices the noble eightfold way with these qualities, then he will see things as they are, behave appropriately and win favour with beings who are suitable. In all that he thinks, says and does, such a bodhisattva will be concerned not with his own welfare, but with that of others.

And so, the preservation of one's person has been described as really for the sake of sentient beings. For the sake of a clear knowledge of this, this rule is to be applied, indeed, not with an eye to one's own interest.<sup>105</sup>

<sup>101</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp.101–116. For ref. for each of the eight members, cf. Table 4.3 on p. 105.

<sup>102</sup> Pp. 56ff..

<sup>103</sup> Ibid., p. 118, lns. 3–4.

<sup>104</sup> P. 95.

<sup>105</sup> Ibid., p. 143, lns. 14–15:

*tathā cātmabhāvarakṣā satvārtham evoktā | tasya spaṣṭāvabod-  
hārtham ayaṃ nyāyo 'bhiyukto na tu svārthāpekṣayeti ||*

## 4.3.2 Preserving enjoyments.

So, in this way, is the preservation of one's person to be understood.  
Now the preservation of enjoyments is to be related.<sup>106</sup>

Table 4.5<sup>107</sup> indicates that chapter seven considers both the preservation of enjoyments and merit. This chapter is an auto commentary on verses fourteen to sixteen of the ŚSKĀ.

Although the space devoted to the giving of enjoyments is minor compared to that devoted to the giving of one's person, it is clear that the giving of enjoyments demands considerable discipline. A bodhisattva who gives his enjoyments is to be guided by the qualities of acting well (*sukṛtakarmakāritā*) and circumspection (*susamīkṣitakarmakāritā*).<sup>108</sup> These qualities are to be employed to prevent him from giving badly.

Never is a bodhisattva to give in such a way that he hinders his own or others knowledge of the conditions favourable to enlightenment (*svapara-bodhipakṣaśruta*).<sup>109</sup> Ś considers it critical that a bodhisattva who applies himself to the members of enlightenment (*bodhyaṅgas*) understands how a gift is to be given, what sort of a gift is to be given and how much is to be given.<sup>110</sup> There is a constant risk that a bodhisattva—as a result of hindrance to the purification of his motives—by giving to one will sacrifice the welfare of all.<sup>111</sup>

When he gives his enjoyments, a bodhisattva is to reflect that the interests of others are furthered by the sacrifice of self interest<sup>112</sup>, and that self interest is destroyed by giving<sup>113</sup>. Further, it is to be noted that a mark of a fraudulent (*pratirūpika*) bodhisattva is that he desires his own pleasure rather than the destruction of the suffering of sentient beings.<sup>114</sup> Accordingly, a bodhisattva is never to forsake great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*) and friendliness (*maitrī*).<sup>115</sup>

<sup>106</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 143, ln. 19:

*evaṃ tāvad ātmabhāvarakṣā veditavyā | bhogarakṣā tu vaktavyā |*

<sup>107</sup> P. 107.

<sup>108</sup> Ibid., p. 144, ln. 1.

<sup>109</sup> Ibid., p. 144, ln. 6.

<sup>110</sup> Ibid., p. 144, lns. 10–11:

*... kathaṃ dānaṃ dātavyaṃ | kataraṃ dānaṃ dātavyaṃ | kiyad  
rūpaṃ dānaṃ dātavyaṃ ||*

<sup>111</sup> Ibid., p. 145, lns. 5–6.

<sup>112</sup> Cf. ibid., p. 145, ln. 10.

<sup>113</sup> Cf. ibid., p. 145, ln. 18:

*utsargād eva cāsyā svārthābhāvaḥ siddhaḥ |*

<sup>114</sup> Ibid., p. 146, lns. 4–5.

<sup>115</sup> Ibid., p. 146, ln. 8.

The principle<sup>al</sup> training for a bodhisattva, then, is the practice of self denial (*ātmā garhanīya*).<sup>116</sup> He is to inure himself to returning to sentient beings not only his enjoyments, but all his sources of good and the very life of his body.<sup>117</sup> Yet such self abnegation is not entirely without personal benefit:

... Because out of a gift of great value of a giver, to a very venerable person, an expansive ocean of great merit appears.<sup>118</sup>

### 4.3.3 Preserving merit.

The preservation of enjoyments has been succinctly related. The preservation of merit is to be related.<sup>119</sup>

A bodhisattva is expected to preserve morality (*śīlā*) not for his own sake (*ātmahetu*) but for the prosperity, welfare and happiness of all sentient beings (*sarvasattvahitasukhayogakṣemārthika*).<sup>120</sup> The merit that accrues from moral conduct is to be treated likewise. He is expected to preserve merit only for the sake of others. Never is a bodhisattva—through the power of the mental defilements (*kleśavaśā*)—to become attached to the merit that ripens through his good actions.

Ś holds that if a bodhisattva fails to preserve his merit it will become tenuous, decayed and exhausted:

This is also said in the *Ratnakūṭa*: “Four things there are, Kāśyapa, which possessed by the Bodhisattva make the good not yet produced not to grow and the good already produced to disappear. And what are these four? To be proud by searching after casuistical controversies; to be concerned with gain and honour by paying attention to families; by calumny and hatred of a Bodhisattva; by rejecting all scriptures except those which one has heard and been taught”.<sup>121</sup>

<sup>116</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 146, ln. 6.

<sup>117</sup> Ibid., p. 146, ln. 9.

<sup>118</sup> Ibid., p. 146, ln. 14:

...<sup>1</sup> yena dātur mahādakṣiṇīye mahārthadānān mahāpuṇyasāgaravistaro dṛśyate |

<sup>119</sup> Ibid., p. 146, ln. 21:

ukto samāsatā<sup>1</sup> bōg<sup>1</sup>karakṣā | puṇyarakṣā vācyā |

<sup>120</sup> Ibid., p. 147, lns. 1–4.

<sup>121</sup> Tr. in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 147. This passage is problematic. It is given in: BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 148, lns. 8–10, as:

idaṃ ca ratnakūṭe ’bhihitam (<|)† caturbhiḥ kāśyapa dharmaiḥ samanvāgatasya bodhisatvasyotpannotpannāḥ [73b] kuśalā dharmāḥ

To counteract the generation of bad dharmas and the attendant degeneration of merit, a bodhisattva is advised to generate in his mind, in the presence of all sentient beings, the ten ways or modes (*prakāras*).<sup>122</sup> Regarding all beings, his mind (*citta*) is to be well disposed, happy, generous, amicable, kindly, helpful, protecting, honest, a mind of a spiritual guide and teacher. The ten modes are meant to be the antithesis of dharmas that destroy merit. They counter the false opinions (*vipratipatti*) and superficial thoughts (*ayoniśomanaskāra*) which cause a bodhisattva to become proud (*unnati*) and to forsake friendliness (*maitrī*) and great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*).<sup>123</sup> The constant cultivation of the ten modes is believed to help a bodhisattva preserve his merit that he may apply it for the deliverance of all sentient beings (*sarvasattvapramokṣa*).<sup>124</sup>

The application of merit to enlightenment, now that is the essence of the preservation of merit.<sup>125</sup>

#### 4.4 Conclusion.

It is devilish to ask for oneself, 'If I give, what shall I enjoy?'

*parihīyante (')<sup>†</sup> yaiḥ (caturbhir muktāḥ)<sup>†</sup> na vardhante kuśalair dharmaiḥ | katamais caturbhiḥ | yadutābhimānikasya lokāyatamantraparyeṣṭyā ' lābhasatkārādhyavasitasya kulapratyavalokanena ' bodhisatvavidveṣābhyākhyānena ' aśrutānām anirdeṣṭānām ca sūtrāntānām pratikṣepeneti ||*

In: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 148, ln. 9 & n. 1; & in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 147, n. 6, it is noted that both the Skt. & Tib. texts of this passage are obscure. *Caturbhir muktāḥ* is inserted from the margin of the Cambridge Ms., 73b. As the copy of the present writer is unclear at this point, he is not able to confirm the accuracy of this emendation.

Even so, this quotation seems to be based on a passage from the *Kāśyapa-parivarta* that is given in: VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN, § 5, p. 10, lns. 1ff.:

*caturbhiḥ kāṣyapa dharmaiḥ [5b2] samanvāgatasya bodhisatvasyotpannotpannāma kuṣalā dharmāḥ paryādīyante yair na vivardanti XXX [5b3] r dharmaiḥ katamaiḥ caturbhiḥ yad uta abhimānikasya lokāyatamantraparyeṣṭyā | lābhasatkārādhy. XXX [5b4] svakulapratyavalokanena | bodhisatvavidveṣābhyākhyānena | aśrutānām anuddiṣṭānām ca sū XXXXXXXX [5b5] ṇa ebhiḥ kāṣyapa caturbhir dharmaiḥ samanvāgatasya bodhisatvasyotpannotpannā kuṣalān dha XXXXXXXX [6a1] vivardhate kuṣalair dharmaiḥ tatraidam ucyate 5 ||*

<sup>122</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 153, lns. 11–15.

<sup>123</sup> Ibid., p. 146, lns. 7–8; & p. 157, ln. 14–p. 158, ln. 1.

<sup>124</sup> Ibid., p. 145, ln. 15.

<sup>125</sup> Ibid., p. 158, ln. 6:

*eṣa tu puṇyarakṣāyāḥ saṃkṣepo yad bodhipariṇāmanā ||*

It is heavenly to ask for others, 'If I enjoy, what shall I give?' (125)

Having harmed another for oneself, one burns<sup>126</sup> in the hells and so on.

But having harmed oneself for others, complete success arises. (126)

An unfortunate birth, baseness and stupidity arise merely from the desire for self advancement.

Having merely transferred that<sup>127</sup> to others, a fortunate birth, virtue and devotion (intelligence) arise. (127)

Having commanded another for oneself, one experiences servitude and so on.

Having commanded oneself for others, one experiences lordship and so on. (128)

Whoever has suffering in the world, they all have it from the desire for their own happiness.

Whoever has happiness in the world, they all have it from the desire for the happiness of others. (129)

Why say more? See this space between<sup>128</sup> the fool, active for himself, and the *muni*, active for others. (130)<sup>129</sup>

This paper has suggested that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ—as in the BCA—Ś makes one thing especially clear. A bodhisattva is obliged to give. A bodhisattva is to hold on to nothing. All that he possesses—his enjoyments, merit and very person, everything—is to be given for the benefit of others. This paper has suggested that according to Ś the sole justification for the existence of a bodhisattva is the chance it affords him to benefit others through the practice of the perfection of giving.

It is asserted that in the first four verses of the ŚSKĀ and first chapter of the Śs, Ś describes how a bodhisattva is to give his person, enjoyments and merit. It is asserted that in the fifth to sixteenth verses of the ŚSKĀ and second to seventh chapters of the Śs, Ś describes how a bodhisattva

<sup>126</sup> I.e., *pacate*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 314. Cf. also ŚSKĀ 11d.

<sup>127</sup> Viz. the desire for advancement.

<sup>128</sup> I.e., *antara*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 38, def. 2.

<sup>129</sup> MINAYEFF, BCA 8: 125–130, p. 203:

*yadi dāsyāmi kiṃ bhokṣya ity ātmārthe piśacatā |*  
*yadi bhokṣye kiṃ dadāmi parārthe devarājatā || 125 ||*  
*ātmārthaṃ piḍayitvānyam narakādiṣu pacate |*  
*ātmānaṃ piḍayitvā tu parārthaṃ sarvasampadaḥ || 126 ||*  
*durgatir nīcatā maurkhyaṃ yayaivātmonnatīchayā |*  
*tām evānyatra samkrāmya sugatīḥ satkṛtir matīḥ || 127 ||*  
*ātmārthaṃ param ājñāpya dāsatvādy anubhūyate |*  
*parārthaṃ tvenam ājñāpya svāmitvādy anubhūyate || 128 ||*  
*ye kecid duḥkhitā lāke (loke)† sarve te svasukhecchayā |*  
*ye kecit sukhitā lōke sarve te 'nyasukhecchayā || 129 ||*  
*bahunā vā kim uktena dṛśyatām idam antaram |*  
*svārthārthinaś ca bālasya muneś cānyārthakāriṇaḥ || 130 ||*

is to safeguard the quality and value of the same through the practice of preservation.

The argument of § 4<sup>130</sup> can be summarised under four headings: *i.*) preservation (*rakṣā*); *ii.*) preservation of one's self (*ātmabhāvarakṣā*); *iii.*) preservation of enjoyments (*bhogarakṣā*); and *iv.*) preservation of merit (*puṇyarakṣā*).

*Rakṣā.* In the Śs and ŚSKĀ a gift of little value is a gift of little benefit. That they can be beneficial, the gifts of a bodhisattva are expected to be valuable. A bodhisattva is expected to learn how to preserve or protect the condition of his gifts, so that when they are given, they are of benefit.

In preparation for the actual practice of preservation, a bodhisattva is to attend to spiritual guides and Mahāyāna sūtras. From guides and sūtras he is to learn what causes gifts to deteriorate and become unworthy of giving. He is to see that the greatest danger arises from that which is evil and results in fruitless outcomes.

*Ātmabhāvarakṣā.* Preservation proper involves the use of preservatives (*rakṣās*). A bodhisattva is expected to abandon bad actions—those that result in bad outcomes and the accumulation of bad dharmas—by applying suitable antidotes. The practice of morality, especially the perfection of morality, is considered an especially powerful antidote. When a bodhisattva practices morality, he practices the first of the four right strivings—the non production of non existing bad dharmas.

In the Śs and ŚSKĀ the non production of non existing bad dharmas is the first major practice for an incipient bodhisattva. Ś believes it critical that a bodhisattva initially learn to preserve his person by forsaking that which is unprofitable and generates negative dharmas. A bodhisattva is expected to always live in accord with the seventh set of conditions favourable to enlightenment—the noble eightfold way. And in all his practices he is to generate desire, apply energy, master his mind and engage in right striving (*samyakpraṇidadhāti*). The fulfilment of these preconditions is thought essential if a bodhisattva is to attain a condition suitable for giving.

*Bhogarakṣā.* In all his actions a bodhisattva is expected to behave with moderation and circumspection. As he is to preserve his person through the fastidious practice of morality, so he is to preserve his enjoyments by giving them carefully. A bodhisattva is never to give hastily, wastefully, or without thought. When giving his enjoyments, he is advised to renounce self interest and fix his mind solely on the welfare of others. If he satisfies

---

<sup>130</sup> Pp. 93ff..

these conditions, Ś believes that he will preserve the quality of his enjoyments and ensure that when they are given, they result in the greatest possible advantage.

*Puṇyarakṣā.* The Śs and ŚSKĀ suggest that a bodhisattva preserve his person by avoiding the production of bad dharmas. They also suggest that he preserve his enjoyments by giving them wisely. In addition, they suggest that a bodhisattva carefully preserve the merit he accumulates through the practice of morality in the past, present and future.

A bodhisattva is constantly to guard against the generation of negative dharmas which diminish or destroy his merit. Attachment, conceit, anger and hatred are to be vigorously eschewed. Rather than feeling self satisfied with his condition, a bodhisattva is constantly to reflect that his merit is not for his own sake but for that of others. He is not to enjoy possession of his merit, merely to preserve or guard it. And, according to Ś, the proper attitude for a guardian are those qualities reflected by the ten ways or modes. Ś believes that these qualities are especially suited to one devoted to giving all that he has solely for the prosperity, well being and enjoyment of others.

Discussion will now turn to Ś's conception of the purification of that which is to be given and especially to purification through the practice of the second of the right strivings, that is, the destruction of existing bad dharmas.

## 5. PURIFYING (ŚODHANA).

The problem of the absolute in the Madhyamaka school has given rise to numerous interpretations, not only divergent, but sometimes diametrically opposed... Thus, too often, in order to define the nature of the absolute of the Mādhyamikas, scholars are satisfied with searching for passages which could be quoted in support of a proposed interpretation. Isolated passages cannot be used to decide such questions.<sup>1</sup>

### 5.1 Remarks.

The preservation of all<sup>2</sup> three—one's person and so on<sup>3</sup>—has been related. Now purification is to be related.<sup>4</sup>

Having considered preservation, Ś turns his attention to purification (*śuddhi*). Table 1.1<sup>5</sup>, Table 5.2<sup>6</sup>, Table 5.3<sup>7</sup> and Table 5.4<sup>8</sup> show that the seventeenth to twenty-first verses of the ŚSKĀ and eighth to fifteenth chapters of the Śs concern purification, in particular the purification of one's person, enjoyments and merit. As a bodhisattva is obliged to preserve that which he is to give, so he is obliged to ensure that his gifts are pure.

Ś's conception of purification is mentioned in § 1.2<sup>9</sup> and § 2.3<sup>10</sup>. Attention is given to his definition of purification as the second of the four right strivings—the destruction of existing bad dharmas :

And he produces desire for the destruction of them<sup>11</sup> when they have arisen : by this arises purification.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> DE JONG, 'Problem', p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> I.e., *api* : cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 55, def. 4.

<sup>3</sup> *Viz.* of one's person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>4</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 158, ln. 13 :

*uktā trayāṇām apy ātmabhāvādīnāṃ rakṣā | śuddhir adhunā vaktavyā |*

<sup>5</sup> P. 16.

<sup>6</sup> P. 124.

<sup>7</sup> P. 125.

<sup>8</sup> P. 126.

<sup>9</sup> Pp. 9ff..

<sup>10</sup> Pp. 32ff..

<sup>11</sup> *Viz.*, bad, evil dharmas.

<sup>12</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 356, ln. 12 :

Table 5.1: Chapters on purification.

8.)	<i>Pāpaśodhana</i> <sup>a</sup>	Purifying Evil
9.)	<i>Kṣāntipāramitā</i> <sup>b</sup>	Perfection of Patience
10.)	<i>Vīryapāramitā</i> <sup>c</sup>	Perfection of Energy
11.)	<i>Aranyasaṃvarṇana</i> <sup>d</sup>	Praise of the Wilderness
12.)	<i>Cittaparikarma</i> <sup>e</sup>	Preparation (Purification) of the Mind
13.)	<i>Smṛtyupasthāna</i> <sup>f</sup>	Application of Mindfulness
14.)	<i>Ātmabhāvaparīśuddhi</i> <sup>g</sup>	Purification of One's Person
15.)	<i>Bhogapuṇyaśuddhi</i> <sup>h</sup>	Purification of Enjoyments and Merit

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 178, ln. 17.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid., p. 188, ln. 19.

<sup>c</sup> Ibid., p. 192, ln. 14.

<sup>d</sup> Ibid., p. 201, ln. 20.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid., p. 228, ln. 7.

<sup>f</sup> Ibid., p. 241, ln. 19.

<sup>g</sup> Ibid., p. 267, ln. 7.

<sup>h</sup> Ibid., p. 273, ln. 8.

Table 5.1<sup>13</sup> shows that the chapter titles of that part of the Śs which considers purification reflect a concern with the destruction of bad and evil dharmas. In the titles of the eighth, fourteenth and fifteen chapters this concern is explicit: the title of eighth suggests a general interest in the removal of bad dharmas; that of the fourteenth and fifteenth an interest in the removal of bad dharmas from one's person, enjoyments and merit. In the titles of the ninth to thirteenth chapters this concern is implicit.

The titles of the ninth and tenth chapters mention the perfections (*pāramitās*) of patience (*kṣānti*) and energy (*vīrya*). Both patience and energy counteract dharmas which are evil. Patience is the antidote (*prati-pakṣa*) for that most unpleasant of faults: anger (*krodha*).<sup>14</sup> Energy is the antidote for that most attractive of hindrances: sloth (*ālasya*).<sup>15</sup> The perfections of patience and energy are essentially purification from the evil dharmas that result from anger and sloth.

The title of the eleventh chapter suggests a *paean* on the advantages of forest dwelling. The principal benefit of life in a forest is that it counteracts the faults of life in a household (*gṛhadoṣas*). Life in the wilderness is held

*utpannānām ca prahāṇāya chandaṃ janayati ity anena śuddhiḥ |*

<sup>13</sup> P. 118.

<sup>14</sup> In addition to the 9th chapter of the Śs, cf. MINAYEFF, BCA 6, pp. 178–188. For comments on this theme in the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 6, pp. 42–47.

<sup>15</sup> In addition to the 10th chapter of the Śs, cf. MINAYEFF, BCA 7, pp. 188–193. For comments on this theme in the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 7, pp. 48–55.

to purify a bodhisattva from the hindrance caused by worldly desires, including the desire for gain and honour.<sup>16</sup>

The title of the twelfth chapter suggests that a bodhisattva should prepare or purify his mind. In this chapter, Ś advocates the need to meditate on impermanence (*anitya*), impurity (*aśubha*), friendliness (*maitrī*) and dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpāda*).<sup>17</sup> These practices are thought to lead to the attainment of tranquility (*praśama*) and also to the purification of the mind from evil dharmas arising from the experience of passion (*rāga*), hatred (*dveṣa*) and delusion (*moha*) respectively.<sup>18</sup>

The practices suggested by the titles of the eighth through to the twelfth chapters are in preparation for the practice of that which is the subject of the fifteenth—the applications of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthānas*). As mentioned in § 2.2<sup>19</sup>, success at mindfulness of the body (*kāya*), perception (*vedanās*), mind (*citta*) and dharmas involves purifying one's person from evil dharmas produced by the erroneous views (*viparyāsas*) associated with purity (*śuciviparyāsa*), pleasure (*sukhaviparyāsa*), permanence (*nityaviparyāsa*) and a belief in the self (*ātnaviparyāsa*).<sup>20</sup>

The titles of the eighth to fifteenth chapters of the ŚS, then, make it clear that for Ś there is a close association between the purification of one's person and so on and the second of the four right strivings—the destruction of existing bad dharmas. The content of the seventeenth to twenty-first verses of the ŚSKā confirms this relationship.

## 5.2 Purifying in the Śikṣāsamuccayakārikā.

Table 1.1<sup>21</sup> and § 4.2<sup>22</sup> suggest that the fifth to sixteenth verses of the ŚSKā consist of three parts: *i.*) the preservation of one's person; *ii.*) the preservation of enjoyments; and *iii.*) the preservation of merit.

<sup>16</sup> In addition to the 11th chapter of the ŚS, cf. MINAYEFF, BCA 8:25–38, pp. 195–196. For comments on this theme in the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 8, pp. 57–60.

<sup>17</sup> For ref. to the ŚS, cf. Table 5.3 on p. 125. In addition to the 12th chapter of the ŚS, for the meditation on impermanence, impurity, benevolence & dependent arising, cf. MINAYEFF, BCA 8:4–21, pp. 194–195; 8:38–71, pp. 196–199; 8:92–110, pp. 200–202; & 6:22–34, pp. 179–180.

<sup>18</sup> Explicit in the title of the 12th chapter in the Ms.: cf. BENDALL, *Catalogue*, p. 109; and Table 1.3 on p. 19.

<sup>19</sup> Pp. 28ff.

<sup>20</sup> In addition to the 13th chapter of the ŚS, for mindfulness of the mind and body, cf. MINAYEFF, BCA 5:34–70, pp. 172–174; for the meditation on the emptiness of persons, cf. *ibid.*, BCA 9:58–78, pp. 212–214; & for the meditation on the emptiness of dharmas, cf. *ibid.*, BCA 9:79–151, pp. 214–219. For comments on these themes in the BCA, cf. MAHONEY, pt. II, ch. 5, pp. 35–41; & pt. II, ch. 9, pp. 66–76.

<sup>21</sup> P. 16.

<sup>22</sup> Pp. 95ff.

Table 1.1<sup>23</sup> also suggests that the seventeenth to twenty-first verses of the ŚSKĀ are tripartite. They consist of: *i.*) the purification of one's person; *ii.*) the purification of enjoyments; and *iii.*) the purification of merit. This threefold structure is clear from even a cursory discussion of their content and meaning.

Purifying one's person.

*śodhitasyātmabhāvasya bhogaḥ pathyo bhaviṣyati |  
samyaksiddhasya bhaktasya niṣkaṇasyeva dehinām || 17 ||*<sup>24</sup>

When one's person is purified, it will become a wholesome object of enjoyment<sup>25</sup> for sentient beings, as when boiled rice—free from the kernel and so on<sup>26</sup>—is correctly prepared. (17)

*tṛṇacchannaṃ yathā śasyaṃ rogaiḥ sīdati naidhate |  
buddhāṅkuras tathā vṛddhiṃ kleśacchanno na gacchati || 18 ||*<sup>27</sup>

As grain covered by weeds wastes away with disease, not growing strong; so a shoot of the Buddha covered by mental defilements, does not undergo growth. (18)

The seventeenth and eighteenth verses describe why a bodhisattva is expected to purify his person. He is to purify his person for two reasons :

- i.*) the purification of his person transforms it into food suitable for consumption by sentient beings; and
- ii.*) the non purification of his person makes it unfit for consumption.

Ś expresses these ideas with imagery from the kitchen and field. A bodhisattva is to refine his person as good rice is refined. And he is to prepare his person as good food is prepared. Ś stresses the importance of these practices by describing their opposite.

If a bodhisattva fails to purify his person, it is believed that its condition will deteriorate to the level of poorly tended grain : as untended grain becomes overgrown by weeds, so too the good qualities (*guṇas*) of a bodhisattva by mental defilements (*kleśas*) ; as crops which are overgrown fail to develop, so too the good qualities of a bodhisattva obscured by mental defilements; and as grain which is diseased and undeveloped is unworthy of being served at table, so too a bodhisattva, defiled and retarded by mental defilements, is unworthy of being served.

<sup>23</sup> P. 16.

<sup>24</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xliv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 158, lns. 14–15.

<sup>25</sup> I.e., *bhogaḥ pathyaḥ*, which signifies both a wholesome object of enjoyment & wholesome enjoyment.

<sup>26</sup> I.e., *niṣkaṇa*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 308 & 165. *Niṣkaṇa* is thought to mean free of the red coating between the kernel and the husk.

<sup>27</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xliv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 159, lns. 20–21.

ātmaabhāvasya kā śuddhiḥ pāpakleśaviśodhanaṃ |  
saṃbuddhoktyarthasāreṇa yatnābhāve tv apāyagaḥ || 19 || <sup>28</sup>

What is the purification of one's person? Purification from evil and mental defilements, in agreement with the essential meaning of the words of the Perfect Buddhas. But in the absence of endeavour, he enters into the (three) evil paths <sup>29</sup>. (19)

The seventeenth and eighteenth verses emphasise the reason why a bodhisattva is expected to purify his person. The nineteenth and twentieth verses describe the nature of purification and the means by which it is effected.

Purification of one's person is the removal of mental defilements and evil dharmas in accordance with the meaning (*artha* ≡ *marmasthānas*) of the words of the perfect Buddhas. Failure to strive to engage in these practices is thought to result in the demise of a bodhisattva.

In the Śs, Ś describes how a bodhisattva is to purify his person from dharmas which are bad (*pāpaśodhana*). <sup>30</sup> Bad dharmas, obtained and accumulated through bad actions in the past, are to be countered by the generation of good dharmas.

Table 5.2 <sup>31</sup> shows that four good dharmas are considered especially useful in countering bad dharmas <sup>32</sup>:

- i.) the practice of self censure (*vidūṣaṇāsamudācāra*): having committed bad actions (*akuśalāni karmāni*), a bodhisattva is to be filled with repentance (*vipratīṣārabahula*);
- ii.) the practice of the antidote (*pratīpakṣasamudācāra*): having committed bad actions, a bodhisattva is to apply himself to doing good actions (*kuśalāni karmāni*);
- iii.) the power of turning back from evil (*pratyāpattibala*): having undertaken a vow (*saṃvarasamādāna*) never to commit the ten unvirtuous actions (*akuśalas*), a bodhisattva is to act accordingly; and

<sup>28</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 160, lns. 2-3.

<sup>29</sup> I.e., *apāyas* ≡ the three *durgatis*, i.e., the paths of animals (*tiryagyoni*), hungry spirits (*pretas*), & hell (*naraka*): cf. EDGERTON, p. 46; TAKASAKI, pp. 131-133; & KAJIYAMA, 'Transfer', pp. 4-7. For the six states of existence (*gatis*): cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 256, lns. 13-18. This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñāakaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:155, p. 593, ln. 13-p. 594, ln. 3.

<sup>30</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 160, ln. 4-p. 178, ln. 17.

<sup>31</sup> P. 124.

<sup>32</sup> In: BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 158-159, *catvāro dharmāḥ* is tr. as 'four practices'. The present writer prefers 'four dharmas'. For a concise summary of these dharmas, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 160, lns. 4-11.

- iv.) the power of protection (*āśrayabala*): a bodhisattva is to go to the three jewels (*triratna*) for protection and never to forsake the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*).

A bodhisattva, then, is expected to purify his person from bad dharmas resulting from bad actions in the past by the practice of self censure and the antidote, and by the powers of turning away from evil and protection by the *triratna*.

*kṣameta śrutam eṣeta saṃśrayeta vanam tataḥ |*  
*samādhānāya yujyeta bhāvayed aśubhādikam || 20 ||*<sup>33</sup>

He should be patient. He should seek sacred knowledge. Then he should resort to the forest.

He should concentrate on *samādhi*. He should cultivate (the meditation on) the impurities and so on. (20)

In addition to those practices suggested by the nineteenth verse of the ŚSKĀ, the twentieth verse advises a bodhisattva to purify his person by developing: *a.*) patience; *b.*) sacred knowledge; *c.*) solitude; *d.*) concentration; and *e.*) meditation.

Table 5.2<sup>34</sup>, Table 5.3<sup>35</sup> and Table 5.4<sup>36</sup> show that in this verse Ś is in effectively advising the practice the perfection of patience, energy, meditation and wisdom. As the fourth verse advises the perfection of giving and the fifth to sixteenth the perfection of morality, the twentieth verse completes the list of the six Mahāyāna perfections.

Verses seventeen to twenty, then, indicate that Ś expects a bodhisattva to purify his person principally through the application of the four good dharmas and the practice of the six perfections.

Purifying  
enjoyments &  
merit.

*bhogaśuddhiṃ ca jānīyāt samyagājīvaśodhanāt |*  
*sūnyatākaruṇāgarbhaceṣṭitāt puṇyaśodhanam || 21 ||*<sup>37</sup>

And he should experience the purification of enjoyments by the purification of right livelihood,  
the purification of merit by actions full of emptiness and compassion. (21)

Having described the purification of one's person Ś introduces the purification of enjoyments and merit: *a.*) 21ab concerns the purification of enjoyments (*bhogaśuddhi*); and *b.*) 21cd the purification of merit (*puṇyaśodhana*).

<sup>33</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 179, lns. 5, 6, 7, 8 & 9.

<sup>34</sup> P. 124.

<sup>35</sup> P. 125.

<sup>36</sup> P. 126.

<sup>37</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 267, ln. 11; & p. 270, ln. 8.

A bodhisattva is to purify his enjoyments by practising the fifth member of the noble eightfold way—right livelihood (*samyagājīva*).<sup>38</sup> Merit is to be purified through acting with compassion (*karuṇā*) and a mind filled with an understanding of emptiness (*śūnyatā*).

### 5.3 Purifying in the Śikṣāsamuccaya.

Table 1.1<sup>39</sup> and Table 1.3<sup>40</sup> show that the eighth to fifteenth chapters of the ŚS concern the purification of one's person, enjoyments and merit. A brief summary of the content of these chapters is available from Table 5.2<sup>41</sup>, Table 5.3<sup>42</sup> and Table 5.4<sup>43</sup>. This part of the ŚS contains Ś's auto commentary on the seventeenth to twenty-first verses of the ŚSKĀ.

The main themes of this part of the ŚS are that a bodhisattva is :

- a.) to purify his person and so on to facilitate the gift of his person and so on ;
- b.) to purify his person : *i.*) by acquiring the four good dharmas (*catvāro dharmāḥ*) ; and *ii.*) by practising the perfections of patience, energy, meditation and wisdom ;
- c.) to purify his enjoyments by practising right livelihood (*samyagājīva*) ; and
- d.) to purify his merit by attaining great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*) and an experience of non duality (*dvayavīgamatā*) and emptiness (*śūnyatā*).

Table 5.2<sup>44</sup>, Table 5.3<sup>45</sup> and Table 5.4<sup>46</sup> indicate that Ś is most concerned to explicate the nineteenth and twentieth verses of the ŚSKĀ. It is critical, he believes, that an incipient bodhisattva gain a clear understanding of the way to purify his person from dharmas that are bad and evil.

<sup>38</sup> It is to be recalled that the *āryāṣṭāṅgamārga* is the seventh and last set of the conditions favourable to enlightenment. Cf. § 2.7, pp. 56ff..

<sup>39</sup> P. 16.

<sup>40</sup> P. 19.

<sup>41</sup> P. 124.

<sup>42</sup> P. 125.

<sup>43</sup> P. 126.

<sup>44</sup> P. 124.

<sup>45</sup> P. 125.

<sup>46</sup> P. 126.

Table 5.2: Purification in the Śs-A.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Purifying one's person.</b>	158–267	157–244
<i>The Perfection of Patience.</i>	158–188	157–183
PĀPAŚODHANAM AṢṬAMAḤ P <sup>o</sup>	158–178	157–174
17.) <sup>c</sup>	158	157
Attain the Dharma body ( <i>dharmakāya</i> )!	158–159	157–158
18.)	159	158
Remove obstacles ( <i>pratipakṣas</i> )!	160	158
19.)	160	158
4 dharmas for purification from faults :	160–178	158–174
practice of self censure		
( <i>vidūṣaṇāsamudācāra</i> );	159–171	159–167
practice of the antidote		
( <i>pratipakṣasamudācāra</i> );	171–176	167–171
power of expiation ( <i>pratyāpattibala</i> );	176–177	171–172
power of protection ( <i>āśrayabala</i> ).	177–178	172–174
KṢĀNTIPĀRAMITĀ NAVAMAḤ P <sup>o</sup>	179–188	175–183
20a.)	179	175
20b.)	179	175
20c.)	179	175
20d.)	179	175
Patience :		
accepting suffering		
( <i>duṣkhādhivāsanakṣānti</i> );	179–183	175–178
reflecting on the Dharma		
( <i>dharmānidhyānakṣānti</i> );	183–184	179–180
bearing the injuries of others		
( <i>parāpakāramarṣaṇakṣānti</i> ).	184–188	180–183

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 158–188.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 157–183.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 5.3: Purification in the Śs-B.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Purifying one's person (cont.).</b>	158–267	157–244
<i>The Perfection of Energy.</i>	189–192	184–187
VĪRYAPĀRAMITĀ DAŚAMAḤ P°	189–192	184–187
Apply energy to sacred knowledge ( <i>śruta</i> )!	189–190	184–185
80 forms ( <i>ākāras</i> ) of sacred knowledge.	190–191	185–186
<i>Dharmasaṃbhāra</i> & <i>jñānasaṃbhāra</i> .	191–192	186–187
The forest is to be resorted to ( <i>araṇyam āśrayaṇīyam</i> )!	192	187
<i>The Perfection of Meditation.</i>	193–228	188–215
ARAṆYASAMVARṆANAḤ NĀMAIKĀDAŚAḤ P°	193–201	188–195
Note the faults of house holding ( <i>gṛhadoṣas</i> ) & advantages of forest dwelling ( <i>araṇyavāsa</i> )!	193–201	188–195
20c.) <sup>c</sup>	202	196
CITTAPARIKARMA DVĀDAŚAḤ P°	202–228	196–215
Apply your mind to concentration ( <i>samādhi</i> )!	202–203	196–197
Meditate on impermanence ( <i>anitya</i> ) to attain tranquility ( <i>praśama</i> )!	203–209	197–202
Meditate on impurity ( <i>aśubha</i> ) to counter passion ( <i>rāga</i> )!	209–212	202–204
Act with benevolence ( <i>maitrī</i> ) to counter hatred ( <i>dveṣa</i> )!	212–219	204–209
Consider dependent arising ( <i>pratītyasamutpāda</i> ) to counter delusion ( <i>moha</i> )!	220–228	209–215

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 189–228.

<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 184–215.

<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 5.4: Purification in the Śs-C.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Purifying one's person (cont.).</b>	158–267	157–244
<i>The Perfection of Wisdom.</i>	228–273	216–250
SMṚTYUPASTHĀNAP° TRAYODAŚAḤ	228–241	216–224
The four applications of mindfulness ( <i>smṛtyupasthānas</i> ):	228–241	216–224
of the body ( <i>kāya</i> );	228–232	216–218
of perception ( <i>vedanās</i> );	232–233	218–220
of the mind ( <i>citta</i> );	233–236	220–221
of dharmas.	236–241	221–224
ĀTMABHĀVAPARIŚUDDHIŚ CATURDAŚAḤ P°	242–267	225–244
In praise of the meditation on emptiness ( <i>sūnyatābhāvanā</i> ).	242–244	225–226
The emptiness of the 6 elements ( <i>dhātus</i> ), the 6 contacts ( <i>sparsās</i> ) & the 18 spheres of mentation ( <i>manopavicāra</i> ) <sup>c</sup> .	244–252	226–233
All dharmas are like dreams ( <i>svapnavat</i> ).	252–256	233–236
<i>Samvṛti</i> & <i>paramārtha</i> .	256–257	236–238
All dharmas are empty of own being ( <i>svabhāva</i> ).	257–264	238–242
Pure thought requires the perfection of wisdom.	264–267	242–244
BHOGAPUṆYAŚUDDHIḤ PAÑCADAŚAḤ P°	267–273	245–250
<b>Purifying enjoyments.</b>	267–270	245–247
21ab.) <sup>d</sup>	267	245
Purity in enjoyments ( <i>bhogaśuddhi</i> ).	267–270	245–247
<b>Purifying merit.</b>	270–273	247–250
21cd.)	270	247
Purity in giving ( <i>dānaviśuddhi</i> ).	270–271	247–248
Purity in morality ( <i>śilaviśuddhi</i> ).	271–273	248–250

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 228–273.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 216–250.<sup>c</sup> Cf. also OLDMEADOW, p. 180, ln. 7 & n. 3.<sup>d</sup> ŚSKĀ.

## 5.3.1 Purifying one's person.

Therefore guarding against the arising of the wickedness<sup>47</sup> that comes forth constantly, that is very unpleasant<sup>48</sup>, and thus casting aside the hindrances<sup>49</sup> and obstructions<sup>50</sup> to (good) action, he should strive for purification from the mental defilements.<sup>51</sup>

Ś believes that once a bodhisattva has begun to practice the first right striving—the non production of non existing bad dharmas—by the practice of the perfections of giving (*dānapāramitā*) and morality (*śīlapāramitā*), then he is to begin to practice the second—the destruction of existing bad dharmas. He considers the destruction of bad dharmas the practice of purification (*śuddhi*).<sup>52</sup>

## Chapter eight.

Table 5.2<sup>53</sup> shows that chapter eight introduces the concept of purification from dharmas that are evil (*pāpaśodhana*). This chapter contains an auto commentary on the seventeenth to nineteenth verses of the ŚSKĀ.

The section that refers to the seventeenth and eighteenth verses espouses the benefits of the purification of one's person and disadvantages of impurity. It is held that if a bodhisattva purifies his person, then the consumption of his corpse benefits those who scavenge the charnel ground.<sup>54</sup> It is held that if he attains the Dharma body (*dharmakāya*), then contact with his body assuages the desires, faults and delusions of sentient beings.<sup>55</sup> The contrary is believed of a bodhisattva who fails to purify his person: not only does he destroy his person, he brings no advantage to others.

Having described the benefits of purity and disadvantages of impurity, Ś (commenting on the nineteenth verse of the ŚSKĀ) introduces the initial practices for purification from evil—the four good dharmas (*catvāro dhar-*

<sup>47</sup> I.e., *dauṣṣīlya*: cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 499.

<sup>48</sup> I.e., *bahuduḥkha*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 1220–1221. The Tib. indicates that *bahusukhām* could be read as *bahuduḥkhām*: cf. BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 179, n. 1; & *Ibid.*, p. 175 n. 1.

<sup>49</sup> I.e., *vibandha*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 494.

<sup>50</sup> I.e., *āvaraṇa*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 107.

<sup>51</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 179, lns. 3–4:

*tad evam aviratapravṛttām bahusukhām dauṣṣīlyotpattiṃ rakṣann  
evam ca karmāvaraṇavibandham apanayan kleśaviśodhane pray-  
ateta ||*

<sup>52</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, lns. 11.

<sup>53</sup> P. 124.

<sup>54</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 158–159.

<sup>55</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 159, lns. 7–18.

māḥ).<sup>56</sup> The significance of these four dharmas is indicated in § 5.2<sup>57</sup> so no more will be said here.

Chapter nine.

§ 5<sup>58</sup> indicated that the titles of the ninth to fourteenth chapters of the Śs associate the purification of one's person with the practice of the perfections of patience, energy, meditation and wisdom. § 5.2<sup>59</sup> suggested that in the twentieth verse of the ŚSKĀ an incipient bodhisattva is advised to purify his person through these four perfections. Ś's auto commentary on the twentieth verse begins in the ninth chapter with a description of the benefits of the perfections :

Then, at the start, *He should be patient*<sup>60</sup>. For without patience at the start of sacred knowledge, energy is deprived of the ability to endure without tiredness. And he that has no sacred knowledge, perceives neither the means to *samādhi*, nor even the means to purification from the mental defilements. Therefore, unwearied, *He should seek sacred knowledge*<sup>61</sup>. Even if he is knowledgeable, wandering about confusedly, the attainment of *samādhi* is difficult ; *Then he should resort to the forest*<sup>62</sup>. Even there, when he is not applied to the calming of distraction and his mind is not attaining *samādhi* ; *He should concentrate on samādhi*<sup>63</sup>. And from *samādhi*, there is no sort of result apart from purification from the mental defilements ; *He should cultivate (the meditation on) the impurities and so on*<sup>64</sup>. Such are these *pādas* in exposition<sup>65</sup> of purification from the mental defilements.<sup>66</sup>

*Kṣāntipāramitā*. The twentieth verse of the ŚSKĀ advises a bodhisattva to be patient. The title of the ninth chapter of the Śs advises him to

<sup>56</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 160–178. For ref., cf. Table 5.2 on p. 124.

<sup>57</sup> Pp. 119ff..

<sup>58</sup> Pp. 117ff..

<sup>59</sup> Pp. 119ff..

<sup>60</sup> Ibid., ŚSKĀ 20a, p. xlv.

<sup>61</sup> Ibid.

<sup>62</sup> Ibid., ŚSKĀ 20b, p. xlv.

<sup>63</sup> Ibid., ŚSKĀ 20c, p. xlv.

<sup>64</sup> Ibid., ŚSKĀ 20d, p. xlv.

<sup>65</sup> I.e., *uddeśa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 130.

<sup>66</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 179, lns. 5–10 :

*tatrādau tāvat kṣameta | akṣamasya hi śrutādau vīryaṃ pratihanyate 'kheadasahatvāt | aśrutavāṃś ca na samādhyupayaṃ jānāti | nāpi kleśaśodhanopāyāṃ | tasmād akhinnaḥ śrutam eṣeta | jñānato 'pi saṃkīrṇacāriṇaḥ samādhānaṃ duṣkaram iti ' saṃśrayeta vanaṃ tataḥ | tatrāpi vikṣepapraśamanānabhīyuktasya cittaṃ na samādhiyata iti ' samādhānāya yujyeta | samāhitasya ca na kiñcit phalam anyatra kleśaśodhanād iti | bhāvayed aśubhādīkam || ity etāni tāvat kleśaśuddher uddeśapadāni ||*

practice the perfection of patience. The summary of the meaning of the twentieth verse at the start of the ninth chapter suggests that without patience a bodhisattva cannot destroy mental defilements. The body of the ninth chapter holds that he should be patient in: *a.*) accepting of suffering (*duṣkhādhivāsanakṣānti*); *b.*) reflecting on the Dharma (dharmas) (*dharmānidhyānakṣānti*); and *c.*) bearing the injuries of others (*parāpakāramarṣanakṣānti*).<sup>67</sup> Patience (*kṣānti*)<sup>68</sup>, it seems, is considered effective in counteracting bad, evil dharmas.

*Duṣkhādhivāsanakṣānti*. A bodhisattva is expected to patiently accept suffering. This practice is thought to destroy dharmas that are bad and promote dharmas that are good. It is considered the most effective antidote (*pratīkāra*)<sup>69</sup> for enmity (*dveṣa*)<sup>70</sup>, faint heartedness (*līnatā*)<sup>71</sup>, despair (*daurmanasyatyāga*)<sup>72</sup>, mental weakness (*laghusukumārācitta*)<sup>73</sup> and the evil influence of the eight worldly dharmas (*lokadharmas*)<sup>74</sup>. It is also considered the most effective way to cultivate a mind that is imperturbable (*akṣobhyacitta*), unconquerable (*duryodhanacitta*) and fit for the destruction of all the mental defilements (*sarvakleśanirghātacitta*).<sup>75</sup> Such a mind, even under the most extreme circumstances, is thought to remain well disposed towards all beings and all dharmas.<sup>76</sup> According to Ś, success at patiently accepting suffering has sundry benefits:

Indeed, this practice, is the fulfilling of complete abandonment, is the accomplishing of the hard path of all paths, is the strengthening of all patience, is the non waning of all energies, is the collection of all the members of wisdom and meditation. Therefore, may [this practice] constantly increase.<sup>77</sup>

<sup>67</sup> For the same schema, cf. ZANGMO & CHIME, § 107, p. 76.

<sup>68</sup> MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 326; & EDGERTON, p. 199.

<sup>69</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 180, ln. 8.

<sup>70</sup> Ibid., p. 179, ln. 14.

<sup>71</sup> Ibid., p. 179, ln. 14; & p. 180, ln. 10.

<sup>72</sup> Ibid., p. 180, ln. 13.

<sup>73</sup> Ibid.

<sup>74</sup> Ibid., p. 180, ln. 2. The eight *lokadharmas* are: profit (*lābha*); loss (*alābha*); happiness (*sukha*); suffering (*duḥkha*); honour (*yaśa*); dishonour (*ayaśa*); blame (*nindā*); & praise (*praśaṃsā*). For this classification, cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 2342–2348, pp. 123–124; & ZANGMO & CHIME, § 61, pp. 35–36.

<sup>75</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 180, lns. 15–17.

<sup>76</sup> Ibid., p. 182, lns. 13–15.

<sup>77</sup> Ibid., p. 182, lns. 17–18:

*ayaṃ hi prayogaḥ sarvaparitāgāpūraṇaḥ | sarvacāryā-  
duṣkaracāryāsādhanāḥ sarvakṣāntidīḍhikaraṇaḥ sarvavīryāsaṃsā-  
danaḥ | sarvadyānaprajñāṅgasambhāraḥ | tasmān nityam uditāḥ  
syāt ||*

Here *asaṃsādāna* ≡ *asaṃsadāna*—non depression.

*Dharmanidhyānakṣānti.* Patience at reflecting on the Dharma (dharma) is also thought to counter dharmas that are bad and promote dharmas that are good. By constant mindfulness of the Dharma (dharma) (*dharmānusmaraṇa*) a bodhisattva is said to remove fondness for all desires (*sarvakāmarati*) and establish fondness for all righteousness (*sarvadharmarati*).<sup>78</sup> This is said to be attended by the development of kindness (*prīti*), tranquility (*prasāda*), delight (*prāmodya*) and a mind not faint hearted (*anavalīna*), crushed (*anavamṛdya*), or filled with desire (*aparitarṣaṇa*).<sup>79</sup> Such progress is also said to be attended by a strong desire to give :

The quality of the desire to give to one that asks. Giving and having given, joy in giving which is perfectly purified with respect to the three spheres<sup>80, 81</sup>

Constant mindfulness of the Dharma (dharma), then, is thought to make a bodhisattva more well disposed towards others and more inclined to satisfy their needs. Yet it is also thought to result in purity regarding the three spheres of giving (*trimaṇḍalas*). A bodhisattva who has attained patience in reflecting on the Dharma (dharma) is expected to be able to give devoid of self interest.

*Parāpakāramarṣaṇakṣānti.* Patience in bearing the injuries of others is also held to result in the purification of giving. When experiencing mental, physical, or oral abuse from others, a bodhisattva is advised not to feel oppressed (*khinna*), faint hearted (*līna*), depressed (*saṃlīna*), or incapable (*viṣaṇṇa*).<sup>82</sup> He is to face abuse as he is to practice the right strivings :

He manifests power. He generates strength. He produces energy.  
He manifests courage. He produces perseverance. He holds back the infatuated mind.<sup>83</sup>

<sup>78</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 183, lns. 5-6.

<sup>79</sup> Ibid., p. 183, lns. 4-5.

<sup>80</sup> I.e., *trimaṇḍalas*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 258 & 330; CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 193-194; & OLDMEADOW, p. 6, ln. 2 & n. 1; p. 36, ln. 10 & n. 3; & p. 307, lns. 13-15 & n. 6. Purity regarding the three spheres signifies the non perception of the giver, the gift (or act of giving) & the recipient.

<sup>81</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 183, ln. 11 :

*yācitasya dātukāmatā | dadato datvā ca trimaṇḍalapariśodhitam  
dānaprāmodyam |*

For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 166.

<sup>82</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 185, ln. 3.

<sup>83</sup> Ibid., p. 185, lns. 3-5 :

*balam upadarśayati | sthāma saṃjanayati | vīryam ārabhate |  
parākramaṃ parākramate | utsāham janayati | unmūḍhacittam  
nigṛhṇāti |*

With a quotation from the *Sāgaramatisūtra*, Ś suggests that the suffering to which a bodhisattva can be subjected by others is reason for satisfaction, not concern. Rather than feeling anger towards those who torture his body, a bodhisattva is advised to see in their behaviour a lesson in self abandonment, an opportunity to practice, not merely the perfection of patience, but all the perfections:

[That dharma], which is the cause of the constant arising of destruction, that dharma, we abandon. And which dharma is this? Indeed, it is affection for the body, living for the body, exertion for the body. And a body which is abandoned is destruction which is abandoned. Thus, Sāgaramati, a bodhisattva who accepts [this] view of the dharmas, tolerates the affliction [caused by] all beings... This abandoning of the body, renouncing of the body, regardlessness of the body, this for him is the perfection of giving. When this body is being hewn, he extends friendship to all beings, and is not crushed by sensations, this for him is the perfection of morality. When this body is being hewn, indeed, he is patient for the sake of their liberation, even [for the sake of the liberation of] he who rends his body, and in thought he is not hurt, and he manifests the power of patience, this for him is the perfection of patience. By which energy he does not abandon his desire for complete knowledge, and he grasps it, subject to the power of the mind, and he even endures transmigratory existence, and he even undertakes the undertaking of the source of good, this for him is the perfection of energy. When his body is being destroyed, he does not become bewildered (fail) in generating (to generate) that jewel which is the arising of the mind of complete knowledge, he has regard for enlightenment, he even has regard for composure and tranquility, this for him is the perfection of meditation. When his body is being hewn, with respect to his body, he sees a semblance like a wall, wood, or grass, and with regard to his body, he comprehends the essential nature of dharma as illusion<sup>84</sup>, and with regard to his body, he reflects upon true impermanence and true unsatisfactoriness and true selflessness and true tranquility, this is for him the perfection of wisdom. ...<sup>85</sup>

<sup>84</sup> I.e., *māyādharmatā*.

<sup>85</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 187, lns. 2-15:

yan nidānaṃ punar vyāpāda utpadyate ' taṃ vayan dharmaṃ  
prahāsyāmaḥ | katamaś ca sa dharmo ' yad uta kāyaprema  
kāyaniketah kāyādhyavasānaṃ ' utsrīṣṭaś ca kāya utsrīṣṭo vyāpā-  
daḥ ' evaṃ dharmagaṇanāviṣṭaḥ sāgaramate bodhisatvaḥ sarvasat-  
vapīḍāṃ sahate || pe || yaḥ kāyasyotsargaḥ kāyaparityāgaḥ kāyā-  
navekṣā ' iyam asya dānapāramitā || yat kāye chidyamāne sar-  
vasatvān maitryā spharati ' vedanābhiś ca na saṃhriyate ' iyam  
asya śīlapāramitā || yat kāye chidyamāne ya evāsya kāyaṃ chin-  
dati teṣāṃ eva pramokṣārthaṃ kṣamate ' na ca cittena kṣaṇyate  
kṣantibalaṃ copadarśyatīyam asya kṣāntipāramitā || yena vīryeṇa  
taṃ sarvajñatāchandaṃ notsṛjati cittabalādhiṇaṃ ca pratigrhṇāti |  
saṃsāram eva cānubadhṇāti | kuśalamūlārambham eva cārabhate  
iyam asya vīryapāramitā || yat kāye vikīryamāne tat sarvajñatācit-

Ś believes it inevitable that a bodhisattva who is fond of his person, lives for his person and makes great efforts to maintain his person, will produce dharmas that are bad. The practice of the three forms of patience purify a bodhisattva from dharmas that enervate and develop dharmas that invigorate.

After the practice of the perfection of patience, a bodhisattva is supposed to be filled not only with kindness, friendliness and delight, but also with power, strength, energy, perseverance and courage. His mind—once the battlefield of conflicting desires—is thought to become calm (*praśama*).<sup>86</sup> Ś continues to develop this theme in the tenth chapter where he considers the perfection of energy.

Therefore, being established in patience, may he generate energy with respect to sacred knowledge.<sup>87</sup>

#### Chapter ten.

*Vīryapāramitā*. The twentieth verse of the ŚSKĀ advises a bodhisattva to purify his person by seeking sacred knowledge (*śruta*). The auto commentary on the twentieth verse in the tenth chapter concerns the application of energy to sacred knowledge (*śrutavīryārambhāṇa*).<sup>88</sup> Sacred knowledge and energy are considered inseparable.<sup>89</sup> A bodhisattva who acquires sacred knowledge without practising the perfection of energy is thought to court destruction (*vināśa*).<sup>90</sup> Regardless of potential dangers, it is thought essential for a bodhisattva to seek sacred knowledge :

*totpādaratnaṃ kartuṃ<sup>†</sup> na sammuhyati bodhim evāpekṣate śāntaprasāntam eva pratyavekṣate 'iyam asya dhyānapāramitā || yat kāye chidyamāne kāyasya tṛṇakāṣṭhakudyaavatpratibhāsoṣopamatāṃ pratyavekṣate māyādharmatāṃ ca kāyasyāvatarati | bhūtānityatāṃ ca bhūtaduṣkhatāṃ ca bhūtānātmatāṃ ca bhūtaśāntatāṃ ca kāyasyopanidhyāyati 'iyam asya prajñāpāramiteti vistaraḥ || pe ||*

For another passage that involves the simultaneous practice of each of the six perfections, cf. NATTIER, ¶ 11G(1)–(6), pp. 188–189.

<sup>86</sup> On the need for a balance between a mind which is despondent (*līna*) and a mind which is elevated (*uddhata*), cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 203, lns. 6–10.

<sup>87</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 189, ln. 3 :

*evam kṣāntipratisthitāḥ śrute vīryam ārabhate |*

<sup>88</sup> Cf. Table 5.3 on p. 125.

<sup>89</sup> The reason for this is clear in: STEINKELLNER, 'Logic', p. 311 :

One of the signs of an extraordinarily creative person is continuous work and, what is more important, continuity in this work. Philosophy is—among other things—work.

<sup>90</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 189, ln. 1. It is likewise for a bodhisattva who attains sacred knowledge without practising the perfection of morality (cf. *ibid.*, p. 189, lns. 5–6). Ś's warnings about the dangers attendant upon an incor-

For example, youths of good family, when he has sacred knowledge, wisdom arises, when he has wisdom, the cessation of the mental defilements arises, when he has no mental defilements, Māra does not find a way of entrance (opportunity for hostile approach)<sup>91, 92</sup>

Accordingly, a bodhisattva is enjoined to desire the Dharma (*dharma-kāma*), have reverence for the Dharma (*dharma-gaurava*) and strive towards skillfulness in the equipment of sacred knowledge (*śrutasaṃbhāra-kausaalyābhijyoga*).<sup>93</sup>

*Śrūtasamḥāra*. With reference to the *Akṣayamatisūtra* Ś lists eighty different praiseworthy forms (*ākāras*) of sacred knowledge<sup>94</sup>: he begins with the form of desire (*chandākāra*), intent (*āśayākāra*), strong intent (*adyāśayākāra*) and practice (*prayogākāra*); goes on to the form of learning associated with skillfulness regarding origination (*utpādakauśalyaśravaṇākāra*) and non origination (*anutpādakauśalyaśravaṇākāra*); and ends with the form of forsaking faults associated with the (five) aggregates (*skandhadoṣavivarjanākāra*), that of weighing faults associated with the conditionally produced (*saṃskṛtas*) and that which has reference to meaning (*arthapratiśaraṇākāra*) and to the Dharma (dharma) (*dharma-pratiśaraṇākāra*).

The principal aspects of the practice of learning, then, are knowledge of the way:

- i.) to generate a desire to learn to practice the Dharma;
- ii.) to produce profitable dharmas and destroy unprofitable dharmas;  
and
- iii.) to abandon faults and promote that which is beneficial.

Such practices are thought to lead to the attainment of the equipment of sacred knowledge (*śrutasaṃbhāra*)<sup>95</sup>, followed by the equipment of Dharma (*dharma-samḥāra*) and *jñāna* (*jñāna-samḥāra*)<sup>96, 97</sup>

rect understanding of doctrine are reminiscent of those of NĀGĀRJUNA in the *Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* (MMK): cf. esp. KALUPAHANA, MMK 24:11, p. 335.

<sup>91</sup> I.e., *avatāra*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 71, def. 4.

<sup>92</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣayamatisūtra*', p. 189, lns. 7-8:

*tathā hi kulaputrāḥ śrutavataḥ prajñāgamo bhavati | prajñāvataḥ  
kleśaprasāmo bhavati | niḥkleśasya māro 'vatāraṃ na labhate ||*

<sup>93</sup> Ibid., p. 189, ln. 9-p. 190, ln. 3.

<sup>94</sup> Ibid., p. 190, ln. 4-p. 191, ln. 3. For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, pp. 164-165.

<sup>95</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣayamatisūtra*', p. 191, ln. 3.

<sup>96</sup> Ibid., p. 191, ln. 4.

<sup>97</sup> For a recent ed. of *ibid.*, p. 191, ln. 4-p. 192, ln. 5, cf. BRAARVIG, I, pp. 167-168.

*Dharmasaṃbhāra*. The attainment of the equipment of Dharma is thought to give a bodhisattva those qualities necessary for *jñāna*: clarity of mind (*cittānāvilatā*), suppression of hindrances (*nīvaraṇaviṣkambhanatā*), knowledge of the defencelessness of faults (*āpattiniḥsaraṇajāna*), non wickedness (*akaukrīyatā*), non possession (by mental defilements) (*aparyutthānatā*)<sup>98</sup>, strong confidence in good conduct (*pratipattisāratā*), devotion to the Dharma and the attainment of energy (*parākramasaṃpannatā*).<sup>99</sup>

The equipment of Dharma is also thought to purify the eye of wisdom (*prajñācakṣus*) from bad dharmas that obscure vision: ignorance (*avidyā*), delusion (*moha*) and mental darkness (*tamas*).<sup>100</sup> The equipment of Dharma also helps a bodhisattva secure an intellect (*buddhi*) that is well purified (*suvisuddha*), expansive (*vistīrṇa*), uncontracted (*asaṃkucita*), undivided (*aprabhinna*) and clear or manifest (*pratyakṣa*).<sup>101</sup>

Yet Ś believes that for a bodhisattva to completely purify his mind of the influence of bad dharmas he needs to retreat to the wilderness and begin to practice the perfection of meditation.<sup>102</sup>

#### Chapters eleven & twelve.

This is so by the way (rule) of the *Ugradattapariṣcchā*; when the faults of household life have been produced by he that is learned—that his mind be purified—the forest must be resorted to.<sup>103</sup>

*Dhyānāpāramitā*. The twentieth verse of the ŚSKĀ advises an incipient bodhisattva to purify his person by resorting to the forest and applying himself to meditation. This advice refers to a twofold practice of the perfection of meditation<sup>104</sup>: *i.*) preparation for meditation; and *ii.*) implementation. The eleventh and twelfth chapters consider these two aspects in turn: *i.*) the eleventh describes preparation for purification from faults associated with life as a householder (*gṛhadoṣas*)<sup>105</sup>; and *ii.*) the twelfth describes the attainment of tranquility (*praśama*) and purification from

<sup>98</sup> EDGERTON, pp. 335–336. Cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 256, for *paryutthāna* as obsession.

<sup>99</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 191, lns. 4ff..

<sup>100</sup> Ibid., p. 192, lns. 1–2.

<sup>101</sup> Ibid., p. 192, lns. 2–3. *Prabhinna* is given in: *ibid.*, p. 192, ln. 3, but *aprabhinna* would seem preferable.

<sup>102</sup> Ibid., p. 192, lns. 11ff..

<sup>103</sup> Ibid., p. 193, lns. 3–4:

*tad evam ugradattapariṣcchāvidhinā gṛhadoṣān bhāvayitvā śrutavatā cittam śodhayitum aranyam āsrayaṇyaṃ iti sthitam ||*

For similar usage of *śrutavatā*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 189, ln. 7; & p. 192, ln. 11.

<sup>104</sup> For *dhyānāpāramitāyāṃ caran*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 202, lns. 4 & 8–9.

<sup>105</sup> Ibid., p. 193, ln. 1. For textual refs., cf. Table 5.3 on p. 125.

bad dharmas arising from the experience of passion (*rāga*), hatred (*dveṣa*) and delusion (*moha*)<sup>106</sup>.

*Pravrajya*. Ś holds that life as a householder causes the vast accumulation of bad, evil dharmas. No matter how mentally accomplished (*āśayasampanna*) or effortful (*yatnavat*) a bodhisattva householder, household life is considered blameworthy by convention (*prajñāptisāvadyatva*)<sup>107</sup>:

There was never any Buddha in the past, there shall not be [in the future], there is not [in the present], who, merely by remaining in the midst of a household, attains this supreme and highest enlightenment.<sup>108</sup>

An incipient bodhisattva is expected to recognise the disastrous influence of household life and renounce it for life as an ascetic:

With food, drink, clothes, flowers, perfumes and unguents, the highest *jinās* are not attended on (made offerings to) by men as—after becoming renunciants—with the dharmas of coursing<sup>109</sup>.<sup>110</sup>

A bodhisattva is expected to renounce the world because he desires enlightenment for the sake of all beings and because he is revolted with the evil things continually produced (*kusamṣkṛtas*) by life as a householder.<sup>111</sup> The forest is thought conducive to spiritual progress:

He is always possessed of few duties. He has forsaken all the faults associated with ordinary qualities. He never argues. He is possessed of that which is right. These are the qualities of he [who engages] in forest dwelling.<sup>112</sup>

<sup>106</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 209, ln. 3–p. 228, ln. 6. For textual refs., cf. Table 5.3 on p. 125.

<sup>107</sup> Ibid., p. 192, lns. 11–13.

<sup>108</sup> Ibid., p. 193, lns. 9–10:

*na kaści buddhaḥ purimeṇa āsīd anāgato bhesyati yo 'vatiṣṭhate |  
yehi sthitair eva agāramadhye prāptā iyaṃ uttamāgrabodhiḥ ||*

Cf. also NATTIER, ¶ 25G, p. 229; & ¶ 18B, p. 204.

<sup>109</sup> I.e., *caramāṇa*: cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 172.

<sup>110</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 193, lns. 13–14:

*annehi pānehi ca cīvarehi puṣpehi gandhehi vilepanehi |  
nopasthitā bhonti narottamā jinā yatha pravrajitvā caramāṇadhar-  
mān ||*

<sup>111</sup> Ibid., p. 193, ln. 15.

<sup>112</sup> Ibid., p. 195, lns. 6–7:

*bhavati satatam alpakṛtyayogī pṛthu guṇa doṣata sarvi varjayitvā |  
na vivadati [91b] kadāci yuktayogī imi guṇa tasya bhavanty  
araṇyavāse ||*

Once a bodhisattva has taken a place in the forest, Ś advises him never to look back towards the life he has left.

Moreover, Lord of the Household<sup>113</sup>, after it is understood by a renunciant bodhisattva that 'forest dwelling is directed (permitted) by the Buddha', he should live in the forest. For there is the fulfilment (attainment) of the pure dharmas.<sup>114</sup>

Even so, a bodhisattva is never to forget his reasons for renouncing worldly affairs. It is expected that he will constantly recall the faults associated with life in the world :

By him, in this manner, it is to be investigated: Fearing I came to the forest. Fearing what? Fearing the world. Fearing society. Fearing passion, hatred and delusion. Fearing arrogance, pride, jealous disparagement (hypocrisy) and ardent desire (mental anguish). Fearing avarice, malice and envy. Fearing form, sound, smell, taste and touch. Fearing egotism and possessiveness.<sup>115</sup> Fearing haughtiness and uncertainty. Fearing Skandhamāra. Fearing Kleśamāra. Fearing Mṛtyumāra. Fearing Devaputramāra.<sup>116</sup> Fearing the misapprehension<sup>117</sup> that in that which is impermanent there is that which is permanent. Fearing the misapprehension that in the non self there is a self. Fearing the misapprehension that in that which is impure there is that which is pure. Fearing the misapprehension that in that which is painful there is that which is pleasurable. Fearing thought, mind and perception. Fearing the production (arising) of hindrances and obstacles. Fearing the erroneous belief in a real personality.<sup>118</sup> Fearing the evil friend. Fearing profit and honour. Fearing untimely speech. Fearing that in that which is not seen, is that which is seen. Fearing that in

<sup>113</sup> For the associations of the epithet *gṛhapati*, cf. NATTIER, pp. 16–18.

<sup>114</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 199, lns. 12–14:

*punaraparaṃ gṛhapate pravrajitena bodhisatvena buddhānujñāto  
'raṇyavāsa iti jñātvā 'raṇye vastavyaṃ | atra hi śukladharma-  
paripūrī bhavati |*

Cf. also NATTIER, ¶ 25M(4), p. 235.

<sup>115</sup> I.e., *ahaṃkāra* & *mamakāra*: 'egotism' & 'possessiveness' in: GÓMEZ, 'Emptiness', pp. 370–371; 'I- and mine-consciousness' in: SAITO, 'Buddhapālita-mūlamadhyamakavṛtti', I, p. 218, lns. 8ff.; & 'the ideas of individuality and possession' in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 192.

For *ahaṃkāra*, cf. 'activity of a self' in: BRAARVIG, II, p. 484; something which 'imposes a self' in: LINDTNER, p. 258; 'self consciousness' in: KAJIYAMA, 'Tarkabhāṣā', p. 141; 'egoism' in: OLDMEADOW, pp. 169ff.; & 'egotism' in: CROSBY & SKILTON, p. 123.

For an explanation of the meaning of *ahaṃkāra*, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9: 78ab, pp. 169ff.

<sup>116</sup> I.e., the aggregates, mental defilements, death & the 'Evil One', respectively. On the four Māras, cf. EDGERTON, p. 430; & TAKASAKI, p. 34.

<sup>117</sup> I.e., *viparyāsa*.

<sup>118</sup> I.e., *satkāyadṛṣṭi*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 553; OLDMEADOW, p. 172, ln. 7 & n. 5; & MAY, p. 213, n. 720.

that which is not heard, is that which is heard. Fearing [the misapprehension] that in that which is not thought, is that which is thought. Fearing that in that which is not understood, is that which is understood. Fearing that in he that is not a religious ascetic<sup>119</sup>, is one that is like a religious ascetic. Fearing mutual hatred. Fearing the realm of desire, the realm of form and the realm of non form.<sup>120</sup> Fearing the occurrence of all the states of existence. Fearing the realm of the forefathers [and] being sprung from an animal in hell. In short, fearing all bad thoughts, frightened by these terrible forms, I entered into forest dwelling.<sup>121</sup>

*Śrāmaṇya*. Purification of one's person from evil dharmas produced by household life is to be accomplished through the practice of the perfection of meditation. But before a bodhisattva engages in meditation proper, Ś insists that he overcome mental agitation (*vikṣiptacitta*).

So long as the mind is agitated, even the attainment of worldly meditation is difficult, let alone the highest complete enlightenment of the Buddha.<sup>122</sup>

For meditation to succeed, it is thought that mental agitation must be replaced by mental calm (*avikṣiptacittendriya*).<sup>123</sup> Above all, a bod-

<sup>119</sup> I.e., *śramaṇa*: lit. one who makes an effort or exertion.

<sup>120</sup> I.e., the *kāmadhātu*, *rūpadhātu* & *arūpadhātu* respectively. For a diagram of the place of these realms in the world system, cf. TAKASAKI, p. 134.

<sup>121</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 198, lns. 7-19:

tenaivaṃ mīmāṃsayitavyaṃ ' bhayabhīto 'smy aham arāṇyam  
āgataḥ | kuto bhayabhītaḥ ' saṃgaṇikā bhayabhītaḥ ' saṃsargab-  
hayabhīto rāgadveṣamohabhayabhīto mānamadamrakṣaparidāhab-  
hayabhīto lobheṣyāmātsaryabhayabhītaḥ rūpaśabdagandha-  
rasasprṣṭavyabhayabhītaḥ | so 'haṃkāramamakārabhayamītaḥ  
' auddhatyavicikitsābhayabhītaḥ ' skandhamārabhayabhītaḥ '  
kleṣamārabhayabhīto mṛtyunārabhayabhītaḥ ' devaputramārab-  
hayabhītaḥ ' anitye nitya iti viparyāsabhayabhīto 'nātmāny ātmeti  
viparyāsabhayabhīto 'sucāu śucir iti viparyāsabhayabhīto ' duṣkhe  
sukham iti viparyāsabhayabhītaḥ ' cittamanovijñānabhayabhīto '  
nivaraṇāvaraṇaparyutthānabhayabhītaḥ ' satkāyadṛṣṭibhayabhītaḥ  
pāpamitrabhayabhīto ' lābhasatkārabhayabhīto 'kālamantrabhayab-  
hīto 'dṛṣṭe dṛṣṭam iti bhayabhīto 'śrute śrutam iti bhayabhīto  
'mate matam iti bhayabhīto 'avijñāte vijñātam iti bhayabhīto  
'śramaṇe śramaṇamadabhayabhīto 'nyonyavidveṣaṇabhayabhītaḥ  
kāmadhātūrūpadhātvarūpyadhātubhayabhītaḥ sarvabhavagatyupa-  
pattibhayabhīto nirayatiryagyonipitrviṣayabhayabhītaḥ saṃkṣepeṇa  
sarvebhyo 'kuśalebhyo manasikārebhyo bhayabhīta ebhyo hy aham  
evaṃ rūpebhyo bhayabhairavebhyobhīto 'raṇyāvāsam upagataḥ ||

Cf. also NATTIER, ¶ 25F, pp. 227-229.

<sup>122</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 202, lns. 5-6:

laukikī dhyānopapattir api tāvad vikṣipracittasya durlabhā ' kaḥ  
punar vādo 'nuttarā samyaksambodhiḥ |

<sup>123</sup> Ibid., p. 202, lns. 17-18.

hisattva is to protect his sense faculties (*indriyas*) from the influx of bad and evil dharmas (*pāpakākuśalādharmas*).<sup>124</sup> Success is said to result in tranquility of body, speech and mind.<sup>125</sup> In addition, Ś reiterates the need for a bodhisattva to attain the first member of the noble eightfold way—right view (*samyagdr̥ṣṭi*).<sup>126</sup>

A bodhisattva is to attain right view by contemplating impermanence (*anitya*):

The three worlds are aflame with suffering, disease and old age,  
aflame with the fires of death, without protection.  
When escaping from existence<sup>127</sup>, constantly confused, the world  
wanders about, like a bumble bee which has entered a pitcher.<sup>128</sup>

He is also expected to constantly cultivate thoughts on impermanency (*anityatāmanasikāra*).<sup>129</sup> He is to gradually realize that all conditioned things (*saṃskāras*) are essentially impermanent (*anitya* ≡ *adhruva*).<sup>130</sup> This practice is meant to counter any tendency towards arrogance (*ud-dhatatva*), but is not meant to make a bodhisattva depressed.<sup>131</sup> He is merely supposed to see that all his usual supports are illusory and actually give him no protection. Even so, he is also to realize that—in the time of his greatest need—he is not without protection:

For the Dharma, O Mahārāja, under these circumstances, is a  
defence, a place of rest, a refuge, a last resort.<sup>132</sup>

<sup>124</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 202, lns. 8–19. This passage, which Ś quotes fr. the *Bhagavatī*, is almost identical to the passage fr. the *Āṅuttara-Nikāya* & *Dīgha-Nikāya* referred to as Formula B2 in Appendix B pp. 207ff..

<sup>125</sup> I.e., *śāntakāya*, *śāntavāc* & *śāntacitta*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 202, lns. 18–19.

<sup>126</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 203, ln. 11–p. 209, ln. 2. *Samyagdr̥ṣṭi* was previously mentioned, in brief, in: *ibid.*, p. 101, lns. 15–18. On the significance of the noble eightfold way, cf. § 2.7, p. 56; & § 4.3.1, pp. 108ff..

<sup>127</sup> I.e., *bhavaniḥśaraṇa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 310.

<sup>128</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 203, lns. 15–16:

*jvalitaṃ tribhuvaṃ jaravyādhidukhair maraṇāgnipradīptam*  
*anātham idam |*  
*bhavaniḥśaraṇe sada mūḍha jagad bhramati bhramaro yathā*  
*kumbhagataḥ ||*

<sup>129</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 203, ln. 6.

<sup>130</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 209, ln. 2. On the significance of *saṃskāras*, cf. TAKASAKI, pp. 96–100.

<sup>131</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 203, lns. 6–7.

<sup>132</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 207, lns. 13–14:

*dharmo hi mahārāja tasmin samaye trāṇaṃ layanaṃ śaraṇaṃ*  
*parāyaṇaṃ bhavati |*

Ś holds that a typical householder possesses, not the three sources of good (*kuśalamūlas*), but the three sources of evil (*akuśalamūlas*).<sup>133</sup> He considers the experience of passion, hatred and delusion inherent to household life. Likewise, he suggests that fear of the consequences of these mental defilements is one of the main reasons for a bodhisattva householder to retreat to the forest.<sup>134</sup> Once a bodhisattva attains sufficient mental calm, he is expected to counter the deleterious influence of these defilements:

Thus mental defilement is mainly passion, hatred and delusion; when one of these arises, so much, at first, should he produce an antidote and should he eschew their underlying cause<sup>135, 136</sup>

Table 5.3<sup>137</sup> shows that the second two thirds of the twelfth chapter considers the purification of one's person from passion, hatred and delusion. A bodhisattva is expected to purify his person by: *a.*) the application of an antidote (*pratipakṣa*); and *b.*) the renunciation of the underlying cause (*nidāna* ≡ *pratyaya*). The three main mental defilements and their antidotes are given in Table 5.5.<sup>138</sup>

As an example of something which often causes the arising of passion, Ś gives the sight of attractive women (*kalyāṇī*).<sup>139</sup> As an antidote to passion, he suggests meditation on the impure (*aśubhābhāvanā*).<sup>140</sup> As an example of something which often causes hatred to arise, he gives the sight of sentient beings who are displeasing (*apriya*).<sup>141</sup> As an antidote to hatred, he suggests the generation of friendliness (*maitrī*).<sup>142</sup> Likewise, as

<sup>133</sup> For the three *akuśalamūlas*—attachment (*lobha*), hatred (*dveṣa*) & delusion (*moha*)—cf. ZANGMO & CHIME, § 139, p. 92. For the three *kuśalamūlas*—non attachment (*alobha*), non hatred (*advēṣa*) & non delusion (*amoha*)—cf. *ibid.*, § 138, p. 92. It seems that Ś considers *rāga* and *lobha* synonymous.

<sup>134</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 198, ln. 8.

<sup>135</sup> I.e., *nidāna*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 295–296, def. 1; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 223. The semantic range of *nidāna* is related to that of *hetu* (cause) & *pratyaya* (condition): cf. EDGERTON, pp. 621 & 375–376; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 443 & 280.

<sup>136</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 209, lns. 3–4:

*tatra kleśaḥ prādhānyena rāgadveṣamohā yasyaiśām ekatarasya tā-  
vat pratipakṣam ādau bhāvayet tannidānaṃ ca varjayet ||*

Ś seems to consider passion, hatred & delusion the most significant mental defilements. For a list of the six primary mental defilements, cf. ZANGMO & CHIME, § 67, p. 39. For a list of the 24 secondary mental defilements, cf. *ibid.*, § 69, pp. 39–40.

<sup>137</sup> P. 125.

<sup>138</sup> P. 140.

<sup>139</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 209, ln. 7.

<sup>140</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 209, ln. 6–p. 212, ln. 9.

<sup>141</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 212, lns. 9–10.

<sup>142</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 212, ln. 9–p. 219, ln. 8.

Table 5.5: Defilements and antidotes.

a.)	<i>rāga</i>	<i>aśubhābhāvanā</i>
b.)	<i>dveṣa</i>	<i>maitrī</i>
c.)	<i>moha</i>	<i>pratītyasamutpādadarśana</i>

an antidote for someone attached to delusion, he suggests the apprehension of dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpāda*).<sup>143</sup>

The application of antidotes for the treatment of defilements is predicated on the belief that a bodhisattva can purify his person from the negative dharmas produced by the experience of a defilement, by producing positive dharmas by the experience of the opposite of that defilement.

As efficacious as Ś believes it is for a bodhisattva to meditate on the impure and dependent arising and to practice friendliness towards sentient beings, he does not believe that these practices alone are enough to purify his person from all the evil dharmas associated with his previous experience of the defilements. He therefore suggests that a bodhisattva continue to purify his person through engaging in the initial practices associated with the perfection of wisdom.

#### Chapters thirteen & fourteen.

*Prajñāpāramitā*. Table 5.4<sup>144</sup> shows that after introducing the applications of mindfulness in the thirteenth chapter, Ś explains the meaning of emptiness (*sūnyatā*) in the fourteenth.

Ś's discourse on the applications of mindfulness and emptiness is complex and subtle. Even so, his intention is practical. He wishes to give an incipient bodhisattva basic instruction in the practice of the perfection of wisdom. He sees this as the most effective way to remove the obstacle (*āvaraṇa*) that results from the accumulation of dharmas that are bad and evil.<sup>145</sup>

Thus he whose thought is skillful (suitable) should undertake the applications of mindfulness.<sup>146</sup>

<sup>143</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 219, ln. 9–p. 228, ln. 6. For a list of the twelve members of dependent arising, cf. ZANGMO & CHIME, § 42, pp. 24–25.

<sup>144</sup> P. 126.

<sup>145</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 244, lns. 4–5.

<sup>146</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 228, ln. 10 :

*evaṃ karmaṇyacittaḥ smṛtyupasthānāny avataret ||*

*Smṛtyupasthānas & Viparyāsas.* The thirteenth chapter discusses the purification of one's person by the practice of the applications of mindfulness. The applications—the first set of conditions favourable to enlightenment—are considered in § 2.2.<sup>147</sup>

Table 2.1<sup>148</sup> shows that the four applications consist of mindfulness of the body (*kāya*), perception (*vedanā*), thought (*citta*) and dharmas.

Table 5.6<sup>149</sup> shows that respectively the applications involve meditation on: *a.*) the impurity of the body (*kāyāśuci*); *b.*) the unsatisfactoriness of sensation (*vedanāduḥkha*); *c.*) the impermanence of thought (*cittānityatā*); and *d.*) the selflessness of dharmas (*dharmanairātmya*).

Table 5.6 also shows that respectively the applications are antidotes to the erroneous view: *a.*) associated with purity (*śuciviparyāsa*); *b.*) that associated with pleasure (*sukhaviparyāsa*); *c.*) that related to permanence (*nityaviparyāsa*); and *d.*) that related to a belief in a self (*ātmaviparyāsa*).

Table 5.6: Erroneous views and antidotes.

<i>i.</i> )	<i>śuciviparyāsa</i>	<i>kāyāśucau smṛtim upasthāpayan</i>
<i>ii.</i> )	<i>sukhaviparyāsa</i>	<i>vedanāduḥkhe smṛtim upasthāpayan</i>
<i>iii.</i> )	<i>nityaviparyāsa</i>	<i>cittānityatāyām smṛtim upasthāpayan</i>
<i>iv.</i> )	<i>ātmaviparyāsa</i>	<i>dharmanairātmye smṛtim upasthāpayan</i>

It is thought that perhaps the most pressing fear which leads a bodhisattva to forsake life as a householder for life as a mendicant ascetic is fear of the erroneous views (*viparyāsas*).<sup>150</sup> A bodhisattva dreads erroneous views as he believes they prevent him from seeing things as they really are. Not only does he fear the mistake of thinking that the impermanent is permanent, that the non self is a self, that the impure is pure and that the painful is pleasurable, he doubts the accuracy of his very senses. As a result of his mistaken world view and the inaccuracy of his perception, he believes he is bound to commit actions that are inappropriate and generate bad dharmas. The practice of the applications of mindfulness is thought to counter these destructive tendencies.

*Kāyasmṛtyupasthāna & Śuciviparyāsa.* A bodhisattva is expected to counteract the erroneous view associated with purity by mindfulness of his

<sup>147</sup> Pp. 28ff..

<sup>148</sup> P. 29.

<sup>149</sup> P. 141.

<sup>150</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 198, lns. 7–19.

body.<sup>151</sup> The meditation on the impure (*aśubhābhāvanā*) counters the passion (*rāga*) a bodhisattva experiences when attracted by the bodies of others. Mindfulness of the body counters the fondness he has for his own body.<sup>152</sup> A bodhisattva is to contemplate his own body as Ś believes it really is—as impure (*aśuci*).

He is to slowly realize that the foul nature of his body is a direct result of his past actions (*karmabhavakāraḥ*).<sup>153</sup> As his actions in the past have been impure, so is his body in the present :

This body is unsubstantial<sup>154</sup>. It is arisen from the sperm and blood of mother and father. Its own being is impure, foetid and foul smelling. It is disturbed by the thieves fear and despair because of passion, hatred and delusion. Its dharmas are constantly subject to ruin<sup>155</sup>, decay, cleaving, scattering and crumbling. It is home<sup>156</sup> to a hundred thousand different diseases.<sup>157</sup>

He is to realize that unskillful actions not only defile his body in the present, but plant seeds which will defile his bodies in the future. Ś holds that an experience of the true nature of his body causes the life of a bodhisattva to become focused (*aviśama*). This fills him with energy (*sāra*).<sup>158</sup> It also prevents him from over valuing his body and harming others to maintain it. It is thought that a bodhisattva who knows the real nature of his body would not be so foolish as to produce bad and evil dharmas on account of it.<sup>159</sup>

*Vedanāsmṛtyupasthāna & Sukhaviparyāsa*. The erroneous view associated with pleasure is to be treated through mindfulness of perception.<sup>160</sup> Ś insists that a bodhisattva gain as clear an understanding of the real nature of his perception as of his body.<sup>161</sup> Ś does not expect him to

<sup>151</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 228, ln. 11—p. 232, ln. 5.

<sup>152</sup> Ibid., p. 231, ln. 11.

<sup>153</sup> Ibid., p. 228, ln. 14.

<sup>154</sup> I.e., *asāraka*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 84; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 96. 'Without core' in: OLDMEADOW, p. 188, ln. 8.

<sup>155</sup> I.e., *śatana* & so on: cf. EDGERTON, p. 522.

<sup>156</sup> I.e., *nīḍa* rather than *nīta*. For this reading, cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 188, n. 13; & VAIDYA, '*Bodhicaryāvatāra*', p. 237, ln. 2. For *nīḍa*, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, p. 505, ln. 15.

<sup>157</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 229, lns. 10–11:

*asārako 'yaṃ kāyo mātāpitṛṣoṇitaśūkrasambhūto 'śucipūtidurgandhasvabhāvo rāga dveṣamohabhaya viśādataskarākulo nityaṃ śatana-patanabhedanavikiraṇavidhvansanadharmā ' nānāvādhiśatasahasranīta iti ||*

<sup>158</sup> Ibid., p. 229, ln. 14—p. 230, ln. 1.

<sup>159</sup> Ibid., p. 230, lns. 2–4.

<sup>160</sup> Ibid., p. 232, ln. 6—p. 233, ln. 14.

<sup>161</sup> Ibid., p. 232, lns. 6–7.

suppress or destroy (*ni + √rudh*) his perception. He wishes him to watch his sensations arise and thereby prevent them from developing into mental defilements :

And he does not cause the cessation of sensation to be obtained by himself. Whatever sensation he is conscious of, he is conscious that this sensation is completely enveloped by great compassion. When he is conscious of a sensation which is pleasant, then, with respect to beings who are inclined to passion, he partakes of great compassion. And he does not heed his propensity<sup>162</sup> towards passion. When he is conscious of a sensation which is unpleasant, then, with respect to beings who are inclined to hatred, he partakes of great compassion. And he abandons his propensity towards hatred. When a sensation is not unpleasant and not pleasant, with respect to beings who are inclined to delusion, he partakes of great compassion. And he abandons his propensity towards delusion. By pleasant sensations, he is not seduced. And he wins the destruction of attachment<sup>163</sup>. By unpleasant sensations, he is not crushed. And he wins the destruction of aversion<sup>164</sup>. By sensations which are not pleasant and not unpleasant, he is not inclined to ignorance. And he wins the destruction of ignorance<sup>165, 166</sup>

Mindfulness of perception, then, is supposed to help a bodhisattva renounce passion, hatred and delusion and prevent the arising of the bad dharmas associated with them. Rather than actually experiencing the defilements, he is to envelop his perception in an all encompassing experience of great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*). Ś believes that the constant experience of great compassion will not only prevent the arising of bad dharmas, but purify his person from bad dharmas which have accumulated through inattention to perception in the past.

<sup>162</sup> I.e., *anuśaya*: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 232, n. 6; EDGERTON, p. 35; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 41-42.

<sup>163</sup> I.e., *anunaya* ≡ *rāga*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 28; CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 33; & OLDMEADOW, p. 189, n. 7.

<sup>164</sup> I.e., *pratigha* ≡ *dveṣa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 362; CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 272; & OLDMEADOW, p. 189, n. 7.

<sup>165</sup> I.e., *avidyā* ≡ *moha*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 77 & 441; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 83 & 236.

<sup>166</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 232, ln. 10-p. 233, ln. 2:

*ātmanā ca vedi[105a]tanirodhaṃ nārpayati' sa yāṃ kāṃcid vedanāṃ vedayate tāṃ sarvāṃ mahākaruṇāparigṛhītāṃ vedayate ' sa yadā sukhāṃ vedanāṃ vedayate tadā rāgacariteṣu satveṣu mahākaruṇāṃ pratilabhate ātmanaś ca rāgānuśayaṃ pratijahāti | yadā duṣkhāṃ vedanāṃ vedayate tadā dveṣacariteṣu satveṣu mahākaruṇāṃ pratilabhate ātmanaś ca doṣānuśayaṃ prajahāti | yadā 'duṣkhāsukhāṃ vedanāṃ mohacariteṣu satyeṣu mahākaruṇāṃ pratilabhate' ātmanaś ca mohānuśayaṃ prajahāti | sa sukhāyāṃ vedanāyāṃ nānunīyate' anunayasamudghātaṃ cārjayati | duṣkhāyāṃ vedanāyāṃ na pratihanyate pratighasamudghātaṃ cārjayati | aduṣkhāsukhāyāṃ vedanāyāṃ nāvidyāgato bhavati' avidyāsamudghātaṃ cārjayati |*

*Cittasmṛtyupasthāna & Nityaviparyāsa.* The erroneous view related to impermanence is to be cured by mindfulness of thought.<sup>167</sup> Ś stresses that all bodies, perception and conditioned things (*saṃskāras*) are impermanent.<sup>168</sup> He considers impermanence best appreciated by a bodhisattva who attempts to watch his thought :

For thought (mind)<sup>169</sup>, Kāśyapa, is perceived neither in oneself, nor outside, nor in the space between both. For thought, Kāśyapa, is formless, unseen, non resistance<sup>170</sup>, unknowable, unstable, without a state of existence (home)<sup>171</sup>. For thought, Kāśyapa, was not seen by any of the Buddhas, nor do they see it, nor will they see it. What was not seen by any of the Buddhas—what they do not see, what they will not see—what sort of existence (arising)<sup>172</sup> can this be seen as, other than dharmas which exist (arise) through ideation which happens to be false? For thought, Kāśyapa, resembles illusion<sup>173</sup>. By the quality of imagining that which does not exist (arise)<sup>174</sup>, it perceives various states of existence<sup>175</sup> (arising)...<sup>176</sup>

Thought, then, is held to be not only elusive, but delusory. It creates the erroneous impression that dharmas exist in and of themselves and

<sup>167</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 233, ln. 15–p. 236, ln. 4.

<sup>168</sup> Ibid., p. 229, ln. 13; p. 233, ln. 2; & p. 237, ln. 6.

<sup>169</sup> I.e., *citta*. The precise def. of *citta* is problematic. In general, it signifies the range of ideas associated with 'thought' & 'mind': cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 173–175; & EDGERTON, pp. 229–230. KAJIYAMA sometimes tr. *citta* as 'consciousness': cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation', p. 124; & Idem, 'Realism', p. 126.

<sup>170</sup> I.e., *apratigha*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 362. Here, *apratigha* seems to mean that thought is not substantial or corporeal.

<sup>171</sup> I.e., *aniketa*: cf. ibid., p. 294; & MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 545.

<sup>172</sup> I.e., *pracāra* fr. *pra* + *car*: cf. ibid., p. 657; EDGERTON, p. 357; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 268.

<sup>173</sup> I.e., *māyā*.

<sup>174</sup> I.e., *abhūtaparikalpā*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 60 & 320–321; CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 65; & OLDMEADOW, p. 80, lns. 12–13 & n. 7. For *abhūtavikalpa* as 'unreal imagination', cf. SAITO, 'Buddhapālitamūlamadhyamakavṛtti', I, p. 219, ln. 14. On the relationship between *abhūtaparikalpa* and *śūnyatā*, cf. NAGAO, 'Śūnyatā', pp. 58–60.

<sup>175</sup> I.e., *upapatti*: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 234, n. 3; & EDGERTON, p. 138.

<sup>176</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 234, lns. 1–6:

*cittaṃ hi kāśyapa nādhyātmaṃ na bahirdhā nobhayam antareṇopal-  
abhyate | cittaṃ hi kāśyapārūpam anidarśanam apratigham avi-  
jñaptikam apratiṣṭham [105b] aniketaṃ | cittaṃ hi kāśyapa sarva-  
abuddhair na dṛṣṭaṃ<sup>1</sup> na paśyanti na draṅsyanti yat sarvabuddhair  
na dṛṣṭaṃ | na paśyanti na draṅsyanti<sup>1</sup> kīdṛśas tasya pracāro  
draṣṭavyaḥ | anyatra vitathapatitayā saṃjñayā dharmāḥ pravara-  
tante | cittaṃ hi kāśyapa māyāsadrśam abhūtaparikalpanayā vivid-  
hām upapattiṃ pariḡṛhṇāti || pe ||*

It is noted in: ibid., p. 234, n. 2, that °*kalpanayā* can be read as °*kalpanatayā*. This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:106ab, p. 526, lns. 7–13.

that they are the ultimate, unchanging objects of sensory experience. Ś believes the contrary. He sees thought itself as the source of experience and as characterised not by permanence, but complete impermanence. Mindfulness of thought is therefore considered the primary means for a bodhisattva to gain an understanding of the impermanence of all things.

*Dharmasmṛtyupasthāna & Ātmaviparyāsa.* A bodhisattva is to counter the erroneous view related to a belief in a self by mindfulness of dharmas. By mindfulness of thought he is to learn that all thought and—by extrapolation—all dharmas are impermanent. By mindfulness of dharmas he is to learn that all dharmas and—by interpolation—his person lack inherent existence (*svabhāva*):

A bodhisattva that is dwelling<sup>177</sup>, considering a dharma in relation to a dharma, does not correctly consider<sup>178</sup> any sort of dharma; whence<sup>179</sup> no dharmas of the Buddhas, whence no enlightenment<sup>180</sup>, whence no way, whence no escape (from the world)<sup>181</sup>. After seeing that all dharmas are escape, he attains the *samādhi* of great compassion called 'Free from Obstructions'.<sup>182</sup> In relation to all dharmas and mental defilements, he obtains the notion that they are artificial (factitious)<sup>183</sup>: these dharmas are free from mental defilements; these are not accompanied by mental defilements. Why? For so they attain to<sup>184</sup> the established (explicit) meaning (of the word).<sup>185</sup> There is no piling up of mental defilements. There is no state of pile. There is no state of passion, no state of hatred, no state of delusion. Indeed, enlightenment arises from the perception of these mental defilements. And that which is the own being of the mental defilements, that is the own being of enlightenment. In this way, he produces mindfulness.<sup>186</sup>

<sup>177</sup> I.e., *viharan*: cf. also BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 236, lns. 13–14. For *viharati* in this sense, cf. EDGERTON, p. 504.

<sup>178</sup> *anupaśyanā* ≡ *anudarśā*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 27 & 29–30. Cf. also DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, p. 527, ln. 17.

<sup>179</sup> I.e., *yatas*. The interpretation of this term and its relationship to the previous clause is difficult but doctrinally significant. It is '*... which is not the qualities of the Buddha, ...*' in: BRAARVIG, II, p. 505; '*Whence no buddha qualities, ...*' in: OLDMEADOW, p. 213; & '*... from which a Buddha's element cannot come, ...*' in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 222.

<sup>180</sup> For the identification of all dharmas with enlightenment (*bodhi*), cf. also BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 257, lns. 10–11:

*sarvadharmā bhagavan bodhiḥ |*

<sup>181</sup> I.e., *niḥsaraṇa* (*niḥś*<sup>o</sup>): cf. EDGERTON, p. 310.

<sup>182</sup> I.e., *anāvaraṇa*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 23, def. 3.

<sup>183</sup> I.e., *kr̥trimasamjñā*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 552, def. 4, & p. 191; & MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 303–304.

<sup>184</sup> I.e., *samavasāri*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 566.

<sup>185</sup> For this tr., cf. *ibid.*

<sup>186</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 236, lns. 6–12:

*dharme dharmānudarśī viharan bodhisatvo na kañcid dharmam*

*Svabhāva*. A bodhisattva who attains mindfulness of dharmas is expected to perceive that no dharmas exist separate from or independent of other dharmas.<sup>187</sup> He perceives that absolutely all dharmas lack inherent existence. He also perceives that as neither mental defilements nor enlightenment possess inherent existence, the defilements and enlightenment are, in this sense, identical.<sup>188</sup>

*Pratītyasamutpāda*. Mindfulness of dharmas is also thought to lead a bodhisattva to perceive dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpāda*):

Dharmas which arise, just arise. Dharmas which cease, just cease. Then again, in one's person<sup>189</sup>, there is not any sentient being, or living being, or creature, or individual, or human being, or person, or man, that is born, or grows old, or dies<sup>190</sup>, or arises. This is the rule for all dharmas<sup>191</sup>: if they are acquired (prepared)<sup>192</sup>, they arise; but not acquired (prepared), they do not arise. Whatever appearance is acquired (prepared), that appearance arises, whether good, or bad, or immovable<sup>193</sup>. There is no acquisition

*samunapaśyati* (*samanupaśyati*)<sup>†</sup> | *yato na buddhadharmā yato na bodhiḥ* 'yato na mārgo yato na niḥsaraṇaṃ | *sa sarvadharmā niḥsaraṇaṃ iti viditvā 'nāvarenaṃ nāma mahākaruṇāsamādhim samāpadyate* | *sa sarvadharmeṣu sarvakleśeṣu ca kṛtrimasaṃjñāṃ pratilabhate* | *niḥkleśā ete dharmā* | *naite sakleśāḥ* | *tatkasya hetoḥ* | *tathā hy ete nītārthe samavasānti* 'nāsti kleśānāṃ saṃcayo' *na rāśībhāvaḥ* 'na rāgabhāvo na dveṣabhāvo na mohabhāva' *eṣāṃ eva kleśānāṃ avabodhād bodhiḥ* | *yatsvabhāvās ca kleśās tatsvabhāvā bodhir ity evaṃ smṛtim upasthāpayatīti* ||

This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:106cd, p. 527, ln. 17–p. 528, ln. 8. For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 169.

<sup>187</sup> For a concise summary of this position, cf. *nirātmānaḥ sarvadharmāḥ & niḥsvabhāvatā sarvadharmāḥ* in: BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 244, lns. 10 & 11. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 257, lns. 10–11:

*sarvadharmāḥ... | svabhāvavirahitā boddhavyāḥ* |

In addition, cf. the refrain—repeated eight times—about the lack of own being of all dharmas in: *ibid.*, p. 258, ln. 5–p. 259, ln. 8.

<sup>188</sup> For the identification of the five evil actions bringing immediate retribution (*ānantaryas*) with enlightenment, cf. *ibid.*, p. 257, ln. 11:

*antaśā ānantaryāṇy api bodhiḥ* |

For this def. of the five *ānantaryas*, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 95–96. For a list of these transgressions, cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 2323–2328, pp. 122–123.

<sup>189</sup> I.e., *ātmabhāva*.

<sup>190</sup> I.e., *cyavati*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 234.

<sup>191</sup> I.e., *dharmānāṃ dharmatā*: lit. the dharma-nature (*dharmatā*) for all dharmas. For this tr., cf. TAKASAKI, pp. 102, 103 & 118. Cf. also EDGERTON, p. 278; & COX, *Dharmas*, p. 193, & p. 358 n. 26.

<sup>192</sup> I.e., *samudāniyante*. For the def. of various forms of this verb, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 572–573.

<sup>193</sup> I.e., (*dharmāḥ*) *kuśalā vā 'kuśalā vā aniñjyā vā*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 24; & TAKASAKI, pp. 139–140.

(preparation)<sup>194</sup> of dharmas. And there is not any arising of dharmas which are not caused...<sup>195</sup>

A bodhisattva is expected to learn that absolutely all dharmas are subject to dependent arising. He is to perceive that every dharma arises or does not arise, is good or bad, as the result of causes (*hetus*) and conditions (*pratyayas*). Conditioned things (*samskāras*) are also to be seen to depend on such causes.<sup>196</sup> While he is to appreciate that all dharmas lack the quality of a self (*nirātmatva*) and own being (*niḥsvabhāvatā*), he is also to appreciate that they remain causally connected to the result of his actions (*karmaphalasambandha*).<sup>197</sup>

*Śūnyatā*. When a bodhisattva realizes mindfulness of dharmas, he is expected to realize not only the lack of own being and dependent arising of all dharmas, but the emptiness (*śūnyatā*) of dharmas :

Dharmas are empty and nameless. What name do you ask about ?  
Emptiness. Neither devas, nor nagas, nor even rakṣas are anywhere.

Men or no men. Now all is perceived as this.  
For by name, nameness is empty. In name, name is not perceived.  
All dharmas are nameless. Now by name, they are made manifest.  
For that which is the own being of name, indeed that has neither been seen nor heard.  
And it has neither arisen nor ceased. Now the name of what do you ask about ?

Established by convention, name is a *désignation*<sup>198</sup>, a likeness<sup>199</sup>.  
For by name, this is Ratnacitra, that other, Ratnottama.<sup>200</sup>

<sup>194</sup> I.e., *samudānetā*. The meaning of this word is uncertain.

<sup>195</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 236, ln. 14–p. 237, ln. 2 :

*dharmā evotpadyamānā utpadyante | dharmā eva nirudhyamānā  
nirudhyante || na punar atra kaścīd ātmabhāve satvo vā jīvo vā  
jantur vā poṣo vā puruṣo vā pudgalo vā manujo vā yo jāyate vā  
jīryate vā cyavate votpadyate vā | eṣā dharmāṇāṃ dharmatā  
yadi samudānīyante<sup>1</sup> samudāgacchanti | atha na samudānīyante na  
samudāgacchanti | yādṛśāḥ samudānīyante tādṛśāḥ samudāgacchā-  
nti (°gacch°)<sup>†</sup> kuśalā vā 'kuśalā vā [106b] aniñjyā vā | nāsti dhar-  
māṇāṃ samudānetā | na cāhetukāṇāṃ dharmāṇāṃ kācid utpattir  
ity ādi ||*

<sup>196</sup> Ibid., p. 238, lns. 3–5 ; & p. 241, lns. 5–6. Cf. also ibid., p. 263, ln. 18–p. 264, ln. 2.

<sup>197</sup> Ibid., p. 244, ln. 10. Cf. also ibid., p. 253, lns. 14–15.

<sup>198</sup> I.e., *prajñapti* : cf. EDGERTON, p. 358, def. 4.

<sup>199</sup> I.e., *darśin + tā*. For *darśin*, cf. ibid., p. 262.

<sup>200</sup> BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 241, lns. 10–18 :

*śūnyā anāmakā dharmāḥ nāma kiṃ pariṣcchasi |  
śūnyatā na kvacid devā na nāgā nāpi rākṣasāḥ ||*

An incipient bodhisattva is not to assume that his intellectual categories are in some sense inherently existent. The various names that he associates with various dharmas are to be seen merely as conventional designations which—to a greater or lesser extent—reflect how dharmas are generally perceived.<sup>201</sup> Ś holds that a bodhisattva should not suppose that the names associated with particular dharmas are—in any real sense—definitive.<sup>202</sup> All names, like all dharmas, are empty.

Although a bodhisattva is expected to realize that all dharmas are empty, he is never to assume that dharmas cannot be perceived (*dr̥ṣṭa*)<sup>203</sup> :

Therefore, [he whose] mind is fit for meditation—[which is] the means to attain complete enlightenment<sup>204</sup> for the sake of removing the ocean of pain from the rest of the world in the ten regions—indeed he should attain the emptiness of all dharmas so as to deal with the power of all dharmas in the three times<sup>205</sup> to the edges of the sky. Indeed, in this way, the emptiness of persons is attained. And thereupon, from the source being cut off, mental defilements do not arise.<sup>206</sup>

---

*manuṣyā vā 'manuṣyā vā sarve tu eṣa vidyate |  
nāmnā hi nāmatā śūnyā nāmnī nāma na vidyate ||  
anāmakāḥ sarve dharmāḥ nāmnā tu paridīpitāḥ ||  
yo hi svabhāvo nāmno vai na sa dr̥ṣṭo na ca śrutāḥ |  
na cotpanno niruddho vā kasya nāmeha pṛcchasi ||  
vyavahāraḥ nāma prajñaptir nāma darśitā |  
ratnacro hy ayaṃ nāmnā ratnottamapara iti ||*

<sup>201</sup> For an esp. clear summary of the conventional nature of names, cf. BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 257, lns. 7–8 :

*yāvad eva vyavahāramātram etat ' nāmadheyamātram samketamā-  
tram samvṛtimātram prajñaptimātram ' nālam atra paṇḍitair ab-  
hiniveśa utpādayitavya iti ||*

So, indeed, this is nothing but terms, nothing but appellations, nothing but agreements, nothing but conventions, nothing but *désignation*. In this matter, false belief should not be produced by those who are learned.

<sup>202</sup> Ibid., p. 241, lns. 10–18. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 246, lns. 14–15 ; p. 248, lns. 1–2 ; & p. 250, lns. 12–13.

<sup>203</sup> Ibid., p. 244, lns. 10–11.

<sup>204</sup> I.e., *abhisambodhi*.

<sup>205</sup> Viz. the past, present & future.

<sup>206</sup> Ibid., p. 242, lns. 3–6 :

*evaṃ yogyacitto daśasu dikṣu śeṣa[107b]sya jagato duṣkhasāgar-  
oddharaṇābhisambodhyupāyo vyomaparyantatraikālyasarvadhar-  
mavaśavartitvāyaiva tu punaḥ sarvadharmasūnyatām avataret |  
evaṃ hi pudgalaśūnyatā siddhā bhavati | tataś ca chinnamulatvāt  
kleśā na samudācaranti ||*

For the use of *sam + ud + ā + √ car*, cf. *rāgasya samudācārapratipakṣaḥ* in : *ibid.*, p. 212, ln. 9 ; & *dveṣasamudācārapratipakṣa* in : *ibid.*, p. 219, ln. 9. Here *sam + ud + ā + √ car* ≡ *sam + ud + ā + √ gam*.

The perception of the emptiness of all dharmas and of one's person is clearly attended by significant difficulties. Even so, it is a mark of a hero (*śūra*) to be one 'that is perceiving in tranquility that own being of the dharmas'.<sup>207</sup> It is obligatory for a bodhisattva to try to understand convention (*saṃvṛti*) and that which is ultimate (*paramārtha*).<sup>208</sup>

Ś constantly maintains that there is a direct relationship between a correct understanding of emptiness, the attainment of the perfection of wisdom and the successful purification of one's person from dharmas that are bad and evil.<sup>209</sup>

As was said in the noble *Dharmasaṃgītisūtra*: 'A *śūnyatāvādin*<sup>210</sup> is not attracted by the (eight) worldly dharmas<sup>211</sup> as they are not supported. He is not delighted by gain. He does not become depressed through loss. He is not awe struck by honour. He is not embarrassed by dishonour. He is not made to cower by blame. He is not won over by praise. He is not delighted by pleasure. He is not not delighted by suffering. For he that is not attracted by the worldly dharmas, he perceives emptiness. Thus, for a *śūnyatāvādin* there is not any attachment nor non attachment....'... This, in short, is the purification of thought.<sup>212</sup>

### 5.3.2 Purifying enjoyments & merit.

In the *Śikṣāsamuccaya*, immediately after self purification, is the purification of enjoyments which arises from the non existence of

<sup>207</sup> Cf. the thrice repeated refrain in: BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 243, lns. 2, 6 & 10:

yo 'sau dharmasvabhāva jānatī suprasāntaṃ ||

The tr. of this passage is problematic. The case of the perceiver and the perceived appears to be the same. It is also unclear whether it is the perceiving or the perceived which is tranquil. It is possible that this ambiguity is intentional.

<sup>208</sup> Ibid., p. 256, lns. 4–8.

<sup>209</sup> For Ś's position, in short, cf. *ibid.*, p. 264, lns. 10–11. This position is also indicated in the title of that chapter of the ŚS which, more than any other chapter, concerns the nature of emptiness: 'The Fourteenth P° [called] The Purification of One's Person'.

<sup>210</sup> I.e., one not subject to conceptions of duality (*dvaya*). For *dvaya*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 257, lns. 16–17; & p. 270, ln. 19.

<sup>211</sup> I.e., the eight *lokadharmas*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 180, ln. 2; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 2342–2348, pp. 123–124; ZANGMO & CHIME, § 61, p. 35; & NATTIER, ¶ 5B, p. 175.

<sup>212</sup> BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 264, lns. 12–19:

yathoktam āryadharmasaṃgītisūtre | na śūnyatāvādī lokadharmaiḥ  
saṃhriyate 'nīśritatvāt | na sa lābhena saṃhr̥ṣyāti | alābhena na  
vimanā bhavati | yaśasā na vismayate 'yaśasā na saṃkucati | nin-  
dayā nāvaliyate | praśamsayā nānūiyate | sukhena na rajyate  
duṣkhena na virajyate | yo hy evaṃ lokadharmair na saṃhriyate  
sa śūnyatām jānīta iti || tathā śūnyatāvādinō na kvacid anurāgo na  
virāgaḥ | ... etat saṃkṣepāc cittasodhanam ||

a hoard. Here it shall be written separately.<sup>213</sup>

Chapter fifteen.

Table 1.3<sup>214</sup> indicates that after devoting seven chapters and almost one hundred pages to the purification of one's person, Ś considers the purification of enjoyments and merit. After purifying his person by practices associated with the perfections of patience, energy, meditation and wisdom, a bodhisattva is expected to begin to purify his enjoyments and merit. Ś devotes only one short chapter to the purification of enjoyments and merit. This section summarises and concludes that which he considers in previous sections.

The fifteenth chapter is an auto commentary on the twenty-first verse of the ŚSKĀ. Table 5.4<sup>215</sup> shows that the structure of the fifteenth chapter, like that of the twenty-first verse, is twofold: the first part concerns the purification of enjoyment; and the second, the purification of merit.

*Bhogaśodhana.* A bodhisattva is to purify his enjoyments principally through the practice of the fifth member of the noble eightfold way—right livelihood (*samyagājīva*)<sup>216</sup>:

Here, Lord of the Household, a bodhisattva householder strives after enjoyments justly, not unjustly, honestly, not dishonestly; right livelihood is practised, not wrong livelihood.<sup>217</sup>

The purification of enjoyments is thought to be attained by the cultivation of an appropriate attitude towards: *a.*) the act of receiving gifts; and *b.*) the act of giving gifts.

A monastic bodhisattva is never, in mind, word, or body, to use deceitfulness or hypocrisy (*kuhana*) to secure gifts from lay Buddhists.<sup>218</sup> The life of a bodhisattva, whether lay or monastic, is to involve no hoarding (*saṃcayābhāva*).<sup>219</sup> Enjoyments are to be purified by remaining detached

<sup>213</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 267, ln. 10:

*śikṣāsamuccayasyātmaśuddhyanantaram bhogaśuddhiḥ saṃcayābhāvāt' pṛthag' ihi lekhitā |*

<sup>214</sup> P. 19.

<sup>215</sup> P. 126.

<sup>216</sup> For the context of *samyagājīva*, cf. § 2.7, pp. 56ff..

<sup>217</sup> Ibid., p. 267, lns. 12–13:

*iha gṛhapate gṛhī bodhisattva dharmeṇa bhogān paryeṣate nādharmeṇa | samena na viṣameṇa | samyagājīvo bhavati na viṣamājīva iti ||*

Cf. NATTIER, ¶ 5A, p. 174.

<sup>218</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 267, ln. 13–p. 269, ln. 9.

<sup>219</sup> Ibid., p. 267, ln. 10. For the centrality of the practice of giving (*dāna*) in the life of a lay bodhisattva, cf. SCHUSTER, pp. 32ff..

(*anadhyavasita*) from donors and donations.<sup>220</sup> And—as with the purification of one’s person—the purification of enjoyments is to be practised not for self interest, but for the benefit of others (*parahita*).<sup>221</sup>

When a bodhisattva gives, Ś insists that his motives be pure. § 3.3.3<sup>222</sup> suggests that the first chapter of the ŚS is mostly concerned with what a bodhisattva gives and to whom. The first chapter addresses a bodhisattva new to the way, the fifteenth a bodhisattva that is more advanced. Accordingly, between the first and fifteen chapter discourse turns from gifts towards motives for giving:

For it was said in the noble *Gaganagañjasūtra*: ‘And that which is purified of egotism, that gift he gives. That which is purified of possessiveness, that gift he gives. That which is purified of motive<sup>223</sup>, that gift he gives. That which is purified of (false) views, that gift he gives. That which is purified of the suggestion of something wanted<sup>224</sup>, that gift he gives. That which is purified of difference, that gift he gives. That which is purified of the desire for the coming to fruition (of action), that gift he gives. As the sky is completely purified, that gift he gives... As the sky is unlimited, thus with a mind made unlimited, that gift he gives. As the sky is expansive and free from obstructions, so, applied to enlightenment, that gift he gives. As the sky is without form, so, completely unattached to form, that gift he gives. As the sky does not feel, so, all sensation quelled<sup>225</sup>, that gift he gives. So, not conscious, not conditioned, not making known, so, without assertion, that gift he gives. As the sky completely suffuses the fields of the Buddhas, suffusing friendliness amongst all beings, that gift he gives... As the sky is always clear, purified of the natural form of thought, that gift he gives. As the sky is an opportunity for all sentient beings, so, affording a livelihood to all sentient beings, that gift he gives. As much as a magic creation gives to a magic creation—not uncertain, without effort, thought, mind and perception not dispersed, not desiring all dharmas—so, from the cessation of duality, purified of own being, the mark of illusion, that gift the bodhisattva gives. When a bodhisattva is endowed with the renunciation of giving, and by the knowledge of wisdom, with the renunciation of the mental defilements of all sentient beings, and by the knowledge of means, with the non renunciation of sentient beings, so, focused on forsaking, youth of good family, his giving becomes like the sky’.<sup>226</sup>

<sup>220</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 269, ln. 8 & n. 3. For the meaning of *anadhyavasita* & related terms, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 16–17.

<sup>221</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 269, ln. 10.

<sup>222</sup> Pp. 83ff.

<sup>223</sup> I.e., *hetu*: cf. def. of *nidāna* in: EDGERTON, p. 296, def. 2.

<sup>224</sup> I.e., *nimitta*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 297–298.

<sup>225</sup> For this syntax, cf. *ibid.*, p. 365.

<sup>226</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 270, ln. 9–p. 271, ln. 3:

*uktaṃ hy āryagaganagañjasūtre | yad utāhaṃkāraṃ viśuddhaṃ tad  
dānaṃ dadāti | mama kāraṃ viśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | hetu-  
viśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | drṣṭi viśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti*

The purification of enjoyments, then, is thought to depend on the practice of right livelihood, the development of non attachment and an overriding concern for the interests of others. These qualities are to inform not only the gifts which a bodhisattva gives and receives, but his fundamental motives for giving and receiving. When he gives a bodhisattva is expected to manifest the quality of non duality (*dvayavigamatā*).<sup>227</sup> By giving without any sense of the gift, the giver, or the recipient of the gift, he is thought to effect the purification of enjoyments and giving (*dānaviśuddhi*).<sup>228</sup> This is considered the true form of giving. It is the goal towards which a bodhisattva is expected to aspire.<sup>229</sup>

*Puṇyaśodhana*. The purification of enjoyments precedes the purification of merit, a practice also referred to as the purification of morality (*śīlav-īśuddhi*)<sup>230</sup>, that of practice (*caryāpariśuddhi*)<sup>231</sup>, that of wisdom (*prajñāpariśuddhi*)<sup>232</sup> and that which is authoritative (*prāmāṇikaviśuddhi*)<sup>233</sup>. For a bodhisattva to purify his merit, his behaviour must manifest not only the realization of great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*), but the realization of emptiness (*sūnyatā*) itself.

Having related this at length in the noble *Ratnacūḍasūtra*, he said :

| *nimittaviśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | nānāvaviśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | vipākapatikāṅkṣaṇāviśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | yathā gaganam*† *samaviśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti || pe | yathā gaganam aparyantam evam aparyantīkṛtena cittena tad dānaṃ dadāti | yathā gaganam vistīrṇam anāvāraṇam evam bodhipariṇāmitam tad dānaṃ dadāti | yathā gaganam arūpi evam sarvarūpānīśritam tad dānaṃ dadāti | yathā gaganam avedayitṛ evam sarvaveditapratiprasrabdhaṃ dānaṃ dadāti | evam asaṃjñī asaṃskṛtam avijñāptilakṣaṇam evam apratijñānaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | yathā gaganam sarvabuddhakṣetraspharaṇam evam sarvasatvamaitrīspharaṇam tad dānaṃ dadāti | pe | yathā gaganam sadāprakāśam evam cittaprakṛtīviśuddhaṃ tad dānaṃ dadāti | yathā gaganam sarvasatvāvakāśam evam sarvasatvopajīvyam tad dānaṃ dadāti | yāvad yathā nirmīto nirmītāya dadāti nirvikalpo 'nābhogaḥ | cittamanovijñānavigataḥ sarvadharmāṇīpratīkāṅkṣī | evam dvayavigamatayā māyālakṣaṇasvabhāvaviśuddhaṃ bodhisatvas tad dānaṃ dadāti | yasyedṛśo dānaparityāgaḥ prajñājñānena ca sarvasartva[118b]kleśaparityāgaḥ (°satva°)† upāyājñānena ca satvāparityāgaḥ | evam tyāgacittaḥ kulaputra bodhisatvo gaganasamadāno bhavati ||*

<sup>227</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 270, ln. 19–p. 271, ln. 1.

<sup>228</sup> Ibid., p. 271, ln. 15.

<sup>229</sup> For a clear description of this practice, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:4cd, p. 372, ln. 9–p. 373, ln. 8.

<sup>230</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 271, ln. 16 ; p. 272, ln. 1.

<sup>231</sup> Ibid., p. 273, ln. 4.

<sup>232</sup> Ibid., p. 273, ln 5.

<sup>233</sup> Ibid., p. 271, ln. 17. For this interpretation of *prāmāṇika*, cf. EDGERTON, p. 393 ; & MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 685–686 & 702.

'This is regarded as energy. The knowledge of the body as a reflected (mirror) image<sup>234</sup> of an illusion<sup>235</sup>, the knowledge<sup>236</sup> of the voice as something inexpressible<sup>237</sup>, the knowledge of the mind as absolute<sup>238</sup> tranquility, the complete purification of the body arises from this.<sup>239</sup> Thus, well armed with the armour of friendliness<sup>240</sup> he advances towards the resolve<sup>241</sup> of great compassion. He cultivates the meditation [called] 'Endowed with All Excellent Forms'<sup>242</sup> that produces<sup>243</sup> the forms of emptiness. Then what is emptiness that is endowed with all excellent forms<sup>244</sup>? That which is not deficient in giving; . . . not deficient in means; not deficient in the kindness and equanimity of great friendliness; not deficient in the attainment<sup>245</sup> of knowledge of the truth; not deficient in the mind of enlightenment and equanimity regarding sentient beings; not deficient in the application that results from intention and strong intention; not deficient in giving, pleasant speech, behaviour beneficial to others<sup>246</sup> and the adoption of the same (religious) aims for himself that he preaches to others<sup>247</sup>; not deficient in mindfulness and awareness<sup>248</sup>; not deficient in the applications of mindfulness, the right strivings, the bases of supernatural power, the faculties and the powers, the members of enlightenment and the noble eightfold way<sup>249</sup>; not deficient in tranquility and correct insight<sup>250</sup> . . . ,<sup>251</sup>

<sup>234</sup> I.e., *pratibimba*: cf. SAITO, 'Buddhapālitamūlamadhyamakavṛtti', I, p. 118, ln. 16; & KALUPAHANA, MMK 23:9, pp. 316–317.

<sup>235</sup> I.e., *pratibhāsa*, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 366–367.

<sup>236</sup> I.e., *jñāna*.

<sup>237</sup> I.e., *anabhilāpya*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 56.

<sup>238</sup> I.e., *atyanta*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 10.

<sup>239</sup> *Viz.*, these three kinds of *jñāna*. The reading of this clause is uncertain: cf. BENDALL, '*Āṅgīkṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, n. 2; & BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 249, ln. 9.

<sup>240</sup> I.e., *maitrisaṃnāhasaṃnaddha*: cf. *mahāsaṃnāhasaṃnaddha*—well armed with great armour—in: VAIDYA, '*Aṣṭasāhasrikā*', I, 10,29–11,4; & CONZE, *Eight Thousand*, p. 90, quoted in: KAJIYAMA, 'Meanings', p. 259, n. 14.

<sup>241</sup> I.e., *adhiṣṭhāna*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 15–16, def. 2.

<sup>242</sup> I.e., *sarvākāravāropeta*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 586, def. 2; & ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶ 602, p. 32.

<sup>243</sup> I.e., *abhinirhṛta*. For *abhinirharati* & so on, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 52–53.

<sup>244</sup> Cf. *ibid.*, p. 586, def. 1; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 419. For the eighteen kinds of *sūnyatā*, cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 934–951, p. 50.

<sup>245</sup> I.e., *avatāra*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 71, def. 2.

<sup>246</sup> I.e., *arthakriyā*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 66.

<sup>247</sup> I.e., *samānārthatā*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 569, def. 2. These are the four articles of attraction (*saṃgrahavastu*): cf. *ibid.*, p. 548.

<sup>248</sup> I.e., *smṛti* & *saṃprajanya*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 577.

<sup>249</sup> I.e., the seven sets of *bodhipakṣa dharmas*.

<sup>250</sup> I.e., *śamatha* & *vipaśyanā*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 523 & 491.

<sup>251</sup> BENDALL, '*Āṅgīkṣāsamuccaya*', p. 272, lns. 9–16:

āryaratnacūdasūtre vistaram uktvā āha | idam ucyate vīryam |  
tasya kāyapariśuddhiḥ | yat kāyasya pratibhāsapratibimbajñānaṃ  
vāco 'nabhilāpyajñānaṃ | cittasyātyantopasāmajñānaṃ | tathā  
maitrisaṃnāhasaṃnaddho mahākāraṇādhiṣṭhānapratīṣṭhitāḥ |  
sarvākāravāropetaṃ sūnyatākārabhinirhṛtaṃ dhyānaṃ dhyāyati |  
tatra katamā sarvākāravāropetā sūnyatā | yā na dānavikalā' yāvan

This passage follows Ś's discussion of the gift, the preservation and the purification of one's person, enjoyments and merit and precedes his discussion of the increase of the same. It reflects what he has said and foreshadows what he is to say.

A bodhisattva is expected to purify his merit by meditating on emptiness. It is suggested that such a meditation not only destroys bad and evil dharmas, but helps a bodhisattva to recall those practices that Ś considers central to the way—the sevenfold set of conditions favourable to enlightenment (*bodhipakṣa dharmas*). In this passage, Ś reminds a bodhisattva that as he progresses along the way he should be ever mindful that emptiness is not deficient in the applications of mindfulness, the right strivings, the bases of supernatural power and so on. He reminds him that if he is constantly mindful of this and related beliefs then he is destined to attain not only the purification of his person, enjoyments and merit, but the purification of wisdom.<sup>252</sup>

#### 5.4 Conclusion.

Thus from the seeing<sup>253</sup> of things<sup>254</sup> comes the vision of the Buddha, from the Buddha's vision comes the vision of all things, from the vision of all things comes the vision of the primary and secondary causes<sup>255</sup>, from this comes the vision of the void<sup>256</sup>, and to see the void is not to see; not to see all things, Blessed One, is to see all things, which is the true seeing<sup>257, 258</sup>.

---

*nopāyavikalā* | *na mahāmaitrīmuditopekṣāvikalā* | *na satyajñānāvātāravikalā* | *na bodhicittasatvāpekṣāvikalā* | *nāśayādhyāśayaprayogavikalā* | *na dānapriyavadyatārthakriyā samānārthatāvikalā* | *na smṛtisamprajanyavikalā* | *na smṛtyupasthānasamyakprahāṇardhipādendriyabalabodhyaṅgāṣṭāṅgamārgavikalā* | *na śamathavipaśyanāvikalā* | *pe* |

<sup>252</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 273, ln. 5.

<sup>253</sup> I.e., *darśana*: cf. CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 197; & EDGERTON, p. 262.

<sup>254</sup> I.e., dharmas. It is noted in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 242, n. 2, that the Tib. reads *dharmadarśanāt buddhadarśanaṃ buddhadarśanāt*

<sup>255</sup> I.e., *hetu* & *pratyaya*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 621 & 375–376; & WAYMAN, *Calmng*, p. 484. Causes and conditions may be preferable.

<sup>256</sup> I.e., *śūnyatā*.

<sup>257</sup> I.e., *samyagdarśana*.

<sup>258</sup> Tr. in: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 242. This passage is problematic. In: *ibid.*, p. 242, n. 2, it is noted that the tr. is guided by the Tib.. In: BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 263 ln. 18–p. 264 ln. 2, this passage reads :

*tathā dharmadarśanaṃ* [116a] *buddhadarśanaṃ sarvasatvadarśanaṃ sarvasatvahetupratyayadarśanaṃ śūnyatādarśanaṃ śūnyatādarśanam adarśanaṃ* | *adarśanaṃ bhagavan sarvadharmāṇāṃ darśanaṃ samyagdarśanam iti* ||

This paper has suggested that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ a bodhisattva is expected to give all that he possesses for the welfare of others and that complete, unqualified giving is considered the *summum bonum* of the way. It has also suggested that for a bodhisattva to be able to give gifts that are suitable, he is expected to ensure their quality. For his gifts to be of greatest benefit, they are expected to be of utmost purity.

This paper suggests that a bodhisattva is expected to secure the quality of his gifts through the practice of the first two members of the four right strivings: *i.*) the non production of non existing bad dharmas; and *ii.*) the destruction of existing bad dharmas. § 4<sup>259</sup> shows that the practice of the non production of non existing bad dharmas is considered the practice of preservation (*rakṣā*). § 5<sup>260</sup> shows that the practice of the destruction of existing bad dharmas is considered the practice of purification (*śuddhi*). § 4.4<sup>261</sup> summarises the significance of preservation. It remains to summarise the significance of purification.

Table 1.1<sup>262</sup> indicates that the seventeenth to twenty-first verses of the ŚSKĀ and the eighth to fifteenth chapters of the Śs, concern the way in which a bodhisattva is to purify his person, enjoyments and merit. Table 1.1 also shows that Ś's treatment of these three forms of purification is unequal. As with his discussion of preservation, he seems most interested in practices associated with the person (*ātmabhāva*). Ś gives more attention to the purification of one's person than to the purification of enjoyments or merit.

The argument of § 5<sup>263</sup> can be summarised under four headings: *i.*) purification (*śuddhi*); *ii.*) purification of one's self (*ātmabhāvaśuddhi*); *iii.*) purification of enjoyments (*bhogaśuddhi*); and *iv.*) purification of merit (*puṇyaśuddhi*).

*Śuddhi.* Ś initially introduces the concept of purity (*śuddhi*). He explains the advantages of purity and disadvantages of impurity (*aśuddhi*).

A bodhisattva who attains purity is said to be of great benefit to others. Contact (*sprśa*) with his body (*kāya*) is thought to relieve the suffering of sentient beings and aid their escape from transmigratory existence (*saṃsāra*). On the contrary, a bodhisattva who fails to purify his person and who allows his qualities (*guṇas*) to become polluted and defiled, is of little benefit to others.

*Ātmabhāvaśuddhi.* Ś then describes the actual means by which a bodhisattva should purify his person from dharmas that are bad (*pāpaśod-*

<sup>259</sup> Pp. 93ff..

<sup>260</sup> Pp. 117ff..

<sup>261</sup> Pp. 113ff..

<sup>262</sup> P. 16.

<sup>263</sup> Pp. 117ff..

hana).

The purification of his person is to begin with the practice of the four dharmas (*catvāro dharmāḥ*): *i.*) the practice of self censure (*vidūṣaṇāsamudācāra*); *ii.*) the practice of the antidote (*pratipakṣasamudācāra*); *iii.*) the power of turning back from evil (*pratyāpattibala*)<sup>264</sup>; and *iv.*) the power of protection (*āśrayabala*). If a bodhisattva experiences contrition (*vipratīśārabahula*), engages in good actions (*kuśālāni karmāni*), turns away from bad actions (*akuśālāni karmāni*) and takes refuge it is thought that he will begin to purify his person from evil dharmas accumulated through unskillful actions in the past.

Ś holds that a bodhisattva should not be content with the purity attained through engaging in the four dharmas. He is expected to intensify his purity through engaging in the perfections (*pāramitās*) of patience (*kṣānti*), energy (*vīrya*), meditation (*dhyāna*) and wisdom (*prajñā*).

The paper has suggested that the perfection of giving (*dānapāramitā*) embraces all of the practices in the Śs and ŚSKĀ. The rôle of the other five perfections is more specific. Ś associates the perfection of morality (*śīlapāramitā*) with the non production of non existing bad dharmas. He associates the perfections on patience, energy, meditation and wisdom, with the destruction of existing bad dharmas. These four are to be applied as antidotes (*pratipakṣas*) to the deleterious influence of particular bad dharmas.

*Kṣāntipāramitā.* Patience in accepting suffering (*duṣkhādhivāsana-kṣānti*), in reflecting on the Dharma (dharmas) (*dharmānidhyānakṣānti*) and in bearing the injuries of others (*parāpakāramarṣaṇakṣānti*), is supposed to counter all the various forms of depression which can debilitate a bodhisattva. The attainment of the perfection of patience enables a bodhisattva to remain, in all circumstances, confident and sure. Ś believes that self assurance facilitates the application of energy to sacred knowledge (*śruta*).

*Vīryapāramitā.* Having attained patience, a bodhisattva is expected to focus all his energy on learning: *a.*) to practice the Dharma; *b.*) to produce profitable dharmas, not unprofitable dharmas; and *c.*) to abandon faults and embrace that which is right. Progress in these practices leads to the attainment—in succession—of the equipment of sacred knowledge (*śrutasaṃbhāra*), Dharma (*dharmasaṃbhāra*) and *jñāna* (*jñānasambhāra*). Through the realization of the perfection of energy, a bodhisattva

<sup>264</sup> It would seem that *pratyāpatti* is similar in meaning to Gk μετάνοια, -ας, & to Lat. *paenitentia*, -ae. Rendering this term as 'conversion' or 'repentance'—despite associations with the New Testament—is perhaps appropriate: cf. ARNDT & GINGRICH, pp. 511–512.

obtains an intellect (*buddhi*) free from the various forms of mental darkness (*tamas*) which have resulted from the accumulation of evil dharmas.

*Dhyānapāramitā.* The attainment of the perfections of patience and energy is thought merely to begin the process of the purification of one's person. According to Ś, nothing contributes more to the accumulation of bad dharmas than the many faults (*doṣas*) associated with life as a householder. An obligatory step towards the purification of one's self is renunciation of the world, ordination as a monk and entrance into the forest.<sup>265</sup> The destruction of existing bad dharmas is to be effected by recourse to the forest and by the application of formal meditation (*bhāvanā*). In the Śs and Śskā, the practice of the perfection of meditation is fundamental to the purification of one's person.

In the forest, after generating a sense of mental calm (*avikṣiptacittendriya*), a bodhisattva is expected to apply antidotes to the primary mental defilements (*kleśas*): *a.*) for passion (*rāga*), the meditation on the impure (*aśubhābhāvanā*); *b.*) for hatred (*dveṣa*), the practice of friendliness (*maitrī*); and *c.*) for delusion (*moha*), the apprehension of dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpādadarśana*).

Although the practice of the perfections of patience, energy and meditation, are considered necessary for the purification of one's person, practised alone, Ś considers them inadequate and incomplete. It is thought that the best way for a bodhisattva to truly purify his person of the hindrance (*āvaraṇa*) caused by the possession of bad dharmas is for him to practice the perfection of wisdom.

*Prajñāpāramitā.* At first, the perfection of wisdom involves engaging in the four applications of mindfulness (*smṛtyupasthānas*). Each application is to be applied as an antidote to a specific erroneous view (*viparyāsa*) which has previously resulted in the production of bad dharmas: *a.*) for the erroneous view associated with purity (*śuci*), mindfulness of the body (*kāya*); *b.*) for the erroneous view associated with pleasure (*sukha*), mindfulness of perception (*vedanā*); *c.*) for the erroneous view related to permanence (*nitya*), mindfulness of thought (*citta*); and *d.*) for the erroneous view related to a belief in a self (*ātman*), mindfulness of dharmas.

Ś holds that the attainment of the applications of mindfulness enables a bodhisattva to avoid mistaking the impermanent for the permanent,

<sup>265</sup> With regard to the *Ugraparipṛcchā*, the importance of renunciation, ordination & forest dwelling for progress on the Mahāyāna has recently attracted some attention: cf. NATTIER, pp. 93–94, 98–101 & 105–106. It should be noted that not all scholars recognise the significance of this triad for progress on the Mahāyāna: cf. PAGEL, p. 38; & SCHUSTER & HIRAKAWA as quoted in: NATTIER, pp. 99–101.

the non self for a self, the impure for the pure and the painful for the pleasurable. The applications counter aberrant perception and the bad dharmas that arise from it. Mindfulness of dharmas, in particular, is thought to eventually lead to a deep understanding of the lack of own being (*svabhāva*), dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpāda*) and emptiness (*śūnyatā*) of all dharmas.

Thus, indeed, the highest purification subsists in seeing the dharmas.<sup>266</sup>

*Bhogaśuddhi*. After purifying his person, a bodhisattva is obliged to purify his enjoyments. Right livelihood (*samyagājīva*)—the fifth member of the noble eightfold way—is to be vigorously pursued. And a bodhisattva is expected to eventually give and receive gifts with complete non attachment. His non attachment is to reflect a lack of distinction between the gift, the giver, and the recipient of the gift.

*Puṇyaśuddhi*. Having purified his person and enjoyments, a bodhisattva is to engage in the purification of his merit (*puṇyaśuddhi* ≡ *śubhaśuddhi*). His merit is to be purified through actions which manifest the realization of great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*) and emptiness (*śūnyatā*). Ś holds that constant mindfulness of emptiness will remove the last vestiges of bad and evil dharmas and cause a bodhisattva to constantly recollect those thirty-seven practices that he considers central to the way—the conditions favourable to enlightenment.

Discussion now turns to Ś's conception of the increase of that which is given and especially to increase through the practice of the third and fourth of the four right strivings—the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas.

<sup>266</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 265, ln. 1 :

*athaiyam api paramaviśuddhir dhamadarśane ( dharmā°)† sati' . . .*

## 6. INCREASING (VARDHANA).

It is a commonplace of contemporary scholarship that any theory or interpretation necessarily reflects the assumptions of its author and its readers. As the aims, conscious and unconscious, of scholars change, their readings of texts will change as well. To this extent, their readings are—sometimes positively, sometimes negatively, always productively—isogetical: they reveal far more about the views of scholars and their scholarly eras than exegesis is said to do.<sup>1</sup>

### 6.1 Remarks.

Now the increase of all<sup>2</sup> the three kinds<sup>3</sup> is to be related.<sup>4</sup>

The second to seventh chapters of the ŚS and fifth to sixteenth verses of the ŚSKĀ consider preservation. The eighth to fifteen chapters of the ŚS and seventeenth to twenty-first verses of the ŚSKĀ consider purification. Ś expects a bodhisattva to ensure that the gifts he gives for the benefit of others are suitably preserved and purified.

Yet Ś insists on more than the mere preservation and purification of gifts. In addition, a bodhisattva is to ensure that the gifts he gives have been increased. Table 1.1<sup>5</sup>, Table 6.2<sup>6</sup>, Table 6.3<sup>7</sup> and Table 6.4<sup>8</sup> show that the sixteenth to final chapter of the ŚS and twenty-second to twenty-sixth verse of the ŚSKĀ concern increase, notably the increase of one's person, enjoyments and merit.

Ś's conception of increase (*śuddhi*) is mentioned in § 1.2<sup>9</sup> and § 2.3<sup>10</sup>. It is noted that in the final quarter of the ŚS he defines increase as the third and fourth members of the four right strivings:

---

<sup>1</sup> TUCK, p. v.

<sup>2</sup> I.e., *api*: cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, p. 55, def. 4.

<sup>3</sup> *Viz.* of one's person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>4</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 273, ln. 11:

*idānīm trayāṇām api vṛddhir vā[119b]cyā ||*

<sup>5</sup> P. 16.

<sup>6</sup> P. 169.

<sup>7</sup> P. 170.

<sup>8</sup> P. 171.

<sup>9</sup> Pp. 9ff..

<sup>10</sup> Pp. 32ff..

Table 6.1: Chapters on increase.

16.)	<i>Bhadracaryāvidhi</i> <sup>a</sup>	Way (Rule) of the <i>Bhadracaryā</i>
17.)	<i>Vandanādyānuśamsas</i> <sup>b</sup>	Benefits <sup>c</sup> of Praise (Worship) & so on
18.)	<i>Ratnatrayānumṛti</i> <sup>d</sup>	Recollection of the Three Jewels
19.)	<i>Puṇyavṛddhi</i> <sup>e</sup>	Increase of Merit

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 297, ln. 6.

<sup>b</sup> Ibid., p. 315, ln. 16.

<sup>c</sup> I.e., *anuśamsas*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 34–35.

<sup>d</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 347, ln. 12.

<sup>e</sup> Ibid., p. 366, ln. 3.

He produces desire for the arising of good dharmas when they have not arisen, and when they have arisen, he produces desire and so on for their<sup>11</sup> continuance, for their increase: by this arises increase.<sup>12</sup>

It would seem, then, that in order to increase those things he is to give, a bodhisattva is to diligently practice the generation, maintenance and increase of dharmas that are good. *Arhants* also, are expected to cultivate dharmas that are good. Even so, there can be little doubt that for Ś the goal of the way of the bodhisattva—in contrast to that of the *arhant* or *śrāvaka*—gives his practice a special quality:

Supreme satisfaction is Buddhanness<sup>13</sup>: this means, that it is not produced by sentient beings through that measure of purification which is common to disciples<sup>14, 15</sup>

Table 6.1<sup>16</sup> shows that the titles of the final four chapters of the Śs reflect various aspects of the practice of increase.<sup>17</sup> The title of the sixteenth suggests that a bodhisattva is to constantly practice good conduct

<sup>11</sup> Viz. good dharmas.

<sup>12</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, lns. 12–14:

*anutpannānāṃ kuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ utpādāya chandaṃ janayati*  
| *yāvad utpannānāṃ ca sthitaye bhūyobhāvāya chandaṃ janayati*  
*ity ādi | anena vṛddhiḥ |*

<sup>13</sup> I.e., *buddhatva*. Fr. *buddha + tvam*: lit. Buddha-ness, or the essence of a Buddha. It is synonymous with the experience of enlightenment (*bodhi*).

<sup>14</sup> I.e., *śrāvakas*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 535.

<sup>15</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 273, ln. 15:

*a(ti)†trpti buddhatvaṃ<sup>1</sup> tan na śrāvakasādhāraṇena śuddhimātreṇa*  
*satvānāṃ janyata ity arthaḥ |*

<sup>16</sup> P. 160.

<sup>17</sup> For another summary, cf. Table 1.3 on p. 19.

(*bhadracaryā*) or the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*).<sup>18</sup> The title of the seventeenth indicates that he is also to constantly engage in worship and so on (*vandanādi*). These practices are believed to produce good dharmas that have not yet arisen.

Table 6.3<sup>19</sup> shows that eighteenth chapter describes two additional practices: *i.*) the constant practice of faith (*śraddhā*) and so on; and *ii.*) the practice of the recollection of the Three Jewels. These practices are thought to maintain and develop existing good dharmas and thereby to contribute to that which is the title of the nineteenth chapter—the increase of merit.

The titles of the sixteenth to nineteenth chapters, then, suggest a relationship between the increase of one's person and so on and the third and fourth of the right strivings—the generation of non existing good dharmas and maintenance and increase of existing good dharmas. A few comments on the twenty-second to twenty-seventh verses of the ŚSKĀ will clarify the nature of this relationship.

## 6.2 Increasing in the Śikṣāsamuccayakārikā.

Table 1.1<sup>20</sup> shows that the ŚSKĀ has a clear structure: *i.*) the first three verses are preparatory, they describe the condition and needs of a bodhisattva ready for the way; *ii.*) the fourth verse introduces and summarises the essential principles (*marmasthānas*) needed when he mounts the way. He has to learn: *a.*) to give to others his person, enjoyments and merit; and *b.*) to preserve, purify and increase the same; *iii.*) the fifth to sixteenth verses concern the preservation of his person and so on; *iv.*) the seventeenth to twenty-first verses the purification of his person and so on; *v.*) the twenty-second to twenty-sixth verses the development and increase of the same; and *vi.*) the twenty-seventh and final verse summarises and concludes the ŚSKĀ.

The meaning of the verses that concern preservation and purification is discussed in § 4.2<sup>21</sup> and § 5.2<sup>22</sup>. This section considers the verses on increase.

*grhītāraḥ subahavaḥ svalpaṃ cedam anena kiṃ |*  
*na cātīrptijanakaṃ vardhanīyam idaṃ tataḥ || 22 ||*<sup>23</sup>

Increasing one's  
person &  
enjoyments.

Those who take are many and this is little. What is the point of  
it?

<sup>18</sup> For comments on this association, cf. notes to ŚSKĀ 25 in Appendix A, pp. 193ff.; & in § 6.2, pp. 161ff.

<sup>19</sup> P. 170.

<sup>20</sup> P. 16.

<sup>21</sup> Pp. 95ff.

<sup>22</sup> Pp. 119ff.

<sup>23</sup> BENDALL, 'Śikṣāsamuccaya', p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 273, lns. 13–14.

And this is not producing supreme satisfaction<sup>24</sup>. For that reason this is to be increased. (22)

A bodhisattva may diligently preserve and purify his person, enjoyments and merit, but as they are limited, how is he to satisfy the needs of all other sentient beings? Further, what is a bodhisattva to do if all his previous practices fail to produce that supreme satisfaction which is Buddhahood? The answers—according to Ś—are found in the practice of increase.

*ātmabhāvasya kā vṛddhir balānālasavyavardhanaṃ |  
śūnyatākaruṇāgarbhād dānād bhogasya vardhanaṃ || 23 ||*<sup>25</sup>

What is the growth of one's person? It is the growth of strength and non idleness.  
The increase of enjoyment arises from giving full of emptiness and compassion. (23)

Increase—like preservation and purification—is to be practised with respect to one's person, enjoyments and merit. The increase of one's person is defined as the growth of strength (*bala*) and non idleness (*anālasya*). A bodhisattva is expected to develop or increase his person through constant and vigorous activity.

In Ś's auto commentary on the first two *pādas* of the twenty-third verse, he suggests that a bodhisattva increase his strength by the practice of ten dharmas.<sup>26</sup> He is expected to eradicate a propensity towards ten dharmas that are bad and inculcate a propensity towards ten dharmas that are good.

The increase of one's person is also the increase of non idleness (*anālasavyavardhana*). In the Śs Ś likens the increase of non idleness to the increase of energy (*vīryavardhana*).<sup>27</sup> The increase of one's person through the increase of strength and non idleness is yet another aspect of the perfection of energy.

The third and fourth *pādas* of the twenty-third verse introduce the increase of enjoyments. The increase of enjoyments it thought to depend on the experience of emptiness (*śūnyatā*). In the auto commentary these *pādas* are explained with a quotation from the *Vajracchedikā* :

It is not easy to describe the size of the mass of merit of a bodhisattva who gives a gift while not permanently fixed (not estab-

<sup>24</sup> I.e., *atitrpti*: def. as *buddhatva*, lit. Buddha-ness, in: BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 273, ln. 15.

<sup>25</sup> Ibid., p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 273, ln. 16; & p. 275, ln. 10.

<sup>26</sup> Ibid., p. 274, lns. 3–11. For these dharmas, cf. Table 6.5 on p. 172.

<sup>27</sup> Ibid., p. 275, ln. 1. For a eulogy to the practice of non idleness and energy, cf. *ibid.*, p. 275, lns. 1–6.

lished anywhere)<sup>28</sup>.<sup>29</sup>

A bodhisattva that is not permanently fixed (*apratīṣṭhita*) is able—through the realization of the perfection of wisdom—to give enjoyments freely, that is, to give without any sense of the giver, the gift, or the recipient of the gift.

In addition, in the final two *pādas*, Ś asserts that as compassion (*karuṇā*) purifies merit, so it increases enjoyments.<sup>30</sup> As previously mentioned, compassion is highly valued in the Śs: 'We will say that without compassion, nothing can be done by bodhisattvas'.<sup>31</sup>

*kṛtvādāv eva yatnena vyavasāyāśayau dṛḍhau |*  
*karuṇām ca puraskṛtya yateta śubhavṛddhaye || 24 ||*<sup>32</sup>

Increasing merit.

So at first having carefully established both resolve and intention<sup>33</sup>,  
and having placed compassion to the fore, he should strive after  
the increase of merit. (24)

Practising the perfection of energy, a bodhisattva is expected to increase his person by producing the ten good dharmas. Practising the perfection of wisdom, he is expected to increase his enjoyments by giving them with an understanding of emptiness (*śūnyatā*) and compassion (*karuṇā*). Having begun to practice the increase of his person and enjoyments, a bodhisattva is then supposed to turn his attention to the subject of the final four verses of the ŚSKĀ—the increase of merit (*śubhavardhana* ≡ *puṇyavardhana*).

It is one of Ś's fundamental beliefs that the mental state of a bodhisattva should suit the practice in which he is engaged. He considers an appropriate mental condition imperative at every stage of the path. The twenty-fourth verse introduces three positive mental states which a bodhisattva is to generate before he practices the increase of merit proper:

<sup>28</sup> I.e., *apratīṣṭhita*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 48; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 55. In: BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 252, n. 2, being *apratīṣṭhita* is interpreted as enabling a bodhisattva to transcend any sense of the gift, the giver, or the recipient of the gift. The present writer follows this interpretation.

<sup>29</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 275, lns. 12-13:

*yo bodhisatvo 'pratīṣṭhito dānaṃ dadāti | tasya puṇyaskandhasya*  
*na sukaraṃ pramāṇam udgrahītum iti ||*

<sup>30</sup> Cf. ŚSKĀ 21c & ŚSKĀ 23c.

<sup>31</sup> Ibid., p. 276, ln. 1:

*vinā ca karuṇayā na bodhisatvānām kiṃcic ceṣṭitam iti vakṣyā-*  
*maḥ |*

<sup>32</sup> Ibid., p. xlv. Cf. also ibid., p. 276, lns. 4-5.

<sup>33</sup> I.e., *āśaya*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 109; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 114. For *āśayas* as 'propensities' or 'latent defilements', cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 24, ln. 19 & n. 6.

*i.*) resolve (*vyavasāya*) for the welfare of others; *ii.*) (good) intention (*āśaya*)<sup>34</sup> towards others; and *iii.*) compassion (*karuṇā*)<sup>35</sup> towards others. It is suggested that the increase of merit is never to be motivated by self interest, but rather, by a single minded desire to promote the interests of others.

*bhadracaryāvidhiḥ kāryā vandanādiḥ*<sup>36</sup> *sadādarāt* |  
*śraddhādīnām sadābhyāsaḥ* ( *maitrībuddhādyanusmṛtiḥ* )<sup>†</sup><sup>37</sup> || 25 ||<sup>38</sup>

The way (rule)<sup>39</sup> of the *Bhadracaryā*<sup>40</sup>—praise (worship) and so on<sup>41</sup>—should be practised with constant devotion, the practice of faith and so on<sup>42</sup> should be constant, [and] friendli-

<sup>34</sup> Or strong intention (*adhyāśaya*).

<sup>35</sup> Or great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*).

<sup>36</sup> A variant is noted in the lower margin of the Cambridge Ms.: °*bhiḥ*. It is assumed in: BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 289, n. 10, that this marginal comment suggests an alternative reading of °*ādibhiḥ* (i.e., of *vandanādibhiḥ*). It is noted that such a reading raises doubt about the place of the twenty-fifth verse in the ŚSKĀ. The present writer considers that the marginal comment suggests a reading not of *vandanādibhiḥ* but rather of *vandanābhiḥ*. This agrees with the metre and place of the verse in the ŚSKĀ.

<sup>37</sup> The final *pāda* of the twenty-fifth verse appears to be based upon Ibid., p. 317, ln. 19; & p. 318, ln. 3. In the Cambridge Ms. *maitrī* is referred to in 142a: || *kā maitrī* ' *yathāhāryacandra*° (cf. *ibid.*, p. 317, ln. 19). In the Ms. *buddhādyanusmṛti* is referred to in 142b: || *kā buddhādyanusmṛtiḥ* | *tatra rāṣṭra*° (cf. *ibid.*, p. 318, lns. 2–3). Considering the separation of these references the fourth *pāda* of the twenty-fifth verse—if accepted—should probably read: *maitrī buddhādyanusmṛtiḥ*.

<sup>38</sup> Ibid., p. xvii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 289, ln. 12; p. 316, lns. 3–4; p. 317, ln. 18; & p. 318, ln. 3.

<sup>39</sup> I.e., *vidhi*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 488–489. The title of the sixteenth chapter is *Bhadracaryāvidhi*. For other occurrences of *vidhi*, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 193, ln. 3; & p. 273, ln. 10. In: BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 188, 251 & 263, *vidhi* is tr. as 'rule', 'increase' & 'ordinance', respectively.

<sup>40</sup> *Bhadracaryā*: lit. good conduct. Here Ś refers to the *Bhadracaryāpraṇidhānagāthā* which is included as part of final section of the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra*: cf. SUZUKI & IDZUMI, p. 543, ln. 9–p. 548, ln. 2; EDGERTON, p. 406; & CROSBY & SKILTON, pp. 9–10. For ref. to the *Bhadracaryā* in the Śs, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 290, ln. 8; p. 291, lns. 9–10; & p. 297, ln. 1. On the relationship between *bhadracaryā* and the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*), cf. CROSBY & SKILTON, pp. 9–11.

<sup>41</sup> I.e., *vandanā* & the other practices which make up the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*). The members which make up the *anuttarapūjā* are variously listed but in: KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § XIV, p. 3, they are given as: *a.*) praise (worship) (*vandanā*); *b.*) worship (reverence) (*pūjanā*); *c.*) confession of evil (*pāpadeśanā*); *d.*) (expression of) thanks (*anumodanā*); *e.*) request (for instruction) (*adhyeṣaṇa*); *f.*) production of the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicittotpāda*); & *g.*) dedication (of the mind of enlightenment or enlightenment) (*pariṇāmana*). Cf. also EDGERTON, pp. 18, 32, 323, 350 & 470. For ref. to the *anuttarapūjā*, cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>42</sup> I.e., *śraddhā* & the other qualities & practices which make up the four dharmas for the attainment of specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*), the five faculties & the five powers. For ref. to *śraddhā* and so on, cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

ness, [and] the recollection of the Buddha(s) and so on<sup>43</sup>. (25)

The twenty-fifth verse introduces four practices for the increase of merit proper: *i.*) the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*); *ii.*) the four dharmas leading to specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*); *iii.*) the five faculties (*indriyas*) and five powers (*balas*); and *iv.*) the recollection of the Three Jewels (*ratnatrayānusmṛti*).

The first and second *pādas* indicate that a bodhisattva is expected to engage in the way (rule) of the *Bhadracaryā*. The *Bhadracaryā*—also known as the *Bhadracarī* or *Bhadracaryāprañidhānagāthā*—appears in the final section of the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra*, although it also occurs as an independent text.<sup>44</sup> The *Bhadracarī* formulates the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*) which the second *pāda* refers to as praise (worship) and so on (*vandanādi*). The auto commentary in the ŚS considers the practice of the supreme forms of worship together with the benefits (*anuśamsas*) which result from their practice.<sup>45</sup>

The third *pāda* indicates that a bodhisattva is to increase his merit through the constant practice of faith and so on (*śraddhādīnām sadābhyāsaḥ*). The auto commentary indicates that this refers to the four good dharmas conducive to specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitāyai saṃvartante*)<sup>46</sup> and to the five faculties and powers.<sup>47</sup>

The fourth *pāda* emphasises the importance of friendliness (*maitrī*) and the recollection of the Buddha(s) and so on (*buddhānyanusmṛti*). In the commentary friendliness is mentioned in brief, while the recollection of the Three Jewels (*ratnatrayānusmṛti*) is treated in detail.<sup>48</sup> In addition to his practice of the *anuttarapūjā*, the dharmas conducive to *viśeṣagāmitā*, the faculties and powers, a bodhisattva is expected to increase his merit through the recollection of the Buddha(s) (*buddhānusmṛti*), Dharma (*dharmānusmṛti*) and Saṃgha (*saṃghānusmṛti*).

*sarvāvasthāsu satvārtho dharmadānaṃ nirāmiṣaṃ |*

<sup>43</sup> I.e., *buddhānusmṛti* & the other practices which make up the recollections (*anusmṛtis*): *a.*) recollection of the Buddha (*buddhānusmṛti*); *b.*) Dharma (*dharmānusmṛti*); *c.*) Saṃgha (*saṃghānusmṛti*); *d.*) morality (*śīlānusmṛti*); *e.*) renunciation (*tyāgānusmṛti*); & *f.*) gods (*devānusmṛti*). For these, cf. KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § LIV, p. 11; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1148–1154, pp. 60–61; & EDGERTON, p. 36. For ref. to the first three *anusmṛtis*, cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>44</sup> Cf. WATANABE cited in: HANAYAMA, p. 795, n. 14320. For ref. to Mss of the *Bhadracarī*, cf. BENDALL, '*Āksāsamuccaya*', p. 297, n. 1. It is said in: EDGERTON, p. xxvi. that this text is identical with that which appears in: SUZUKI & IDZUMI, p. 543, ln. 9–p. 548, ln. 2.

<sup>45</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.2 on p. 169; & Table 6.3 on p. 170

<sup>46</sup> BENDALL, '*Āksāsamuccaya*', p. 316, lns. 5–6.

<sup>47</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>48</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

*bodhicittaṃ ca puṇyasya vṛddhihetuḥ samāsataḥ* || 26 || <sup>49</sup>

In every situation, the benefit of sentient beings, the spiritual <sup>50</sup>  
gift of the Dharma <sup>51</sup>,  
and the mind of enlightenment—the cause of the growth of merit  
in short. (26)

The twenty-fifth verse introduces four categories of practice considered suitable for the increase of merit. For the most part, each category is to be conducted by a bodhisattva while alone in the forest. The twenty-sixth verse, on the other hand, introduces three aspects of the increase of merit which are supposed to be practised while in society with others: *i.*) the benefit of sentient beings (*sattvārtha*); *ii.*) the spiritual gift of the Dharma (*nirāmiṣadharmadāna*); and *iii.*) the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*).

In the first verse of the ŚSKĀ, Ś advises an incipient bodhisattva to selflessly devote himself to advancing the welfare of others. In the penultimate verse he restates his belief in the primacy of self sacrifice. <sup>52</sup> Self denial and the promotion of the interests of others is expected of a bodhisattva at all stages on the path.

In the fourth *pāda* of the sixth verse a bodhisattva is advised to preserve his person by always contemplating Mahāyāna sūtras. In the fourth *pāda* of the sixteenth he is advised to preserve his merit by forsaking doubt in the Dharma. In the second *pāda* of the twenty-sixth he is advised to increase his merit through the spiritual gift of the Dharma (*dharmadānaṃ nirāmiṣaṃ*). The injunction in the twenty-sixth verse, together with the auto commentary in the ŚS, suggests that once a bodhisattva is well schooled in the Dharma and well established in his belief in the Dharma, then he is ready to give the Dharma to others. <sup>53</sup>

The third *pāda* of the twenty-sixth verse mentions another factor in the increase of merit—the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*). While Ś suggests the generation of the mind of enlightenment in the fourth *pāda* of the second verse, he is comparatively reticent about this quality in the ŚSKĀ. This does not indicate a lack of interest. <sup>54</sup> The paucity of reference is due to Ś's desire to describe the way of the bodhisattva principally as the way of the right strivings.

Epilogue.

*siddhiḥ samyakprahāṇānām apramādāviyojanāt* |

<sup>49</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlvii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 348, ln. 3; p. 350, lns. 21 & 24; & p. 356, ln. 1.

<sup>50</sup> I.e., *nirāmiṣa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 299, n. 2.

<sup>51</sup> I.e., *dharmadāna*. This term has been variously tr.. In: BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 310–313, it is the 'pious gift', the 'gift of righteousness' & the 'gift of the Law'.

<sup>52</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.4 on p. 171.

<sup>53</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.4 on p. 171.

<sup>54</sup> It is well known that the mind of enlightenment is one of the most significant concepts in the BCA. Many have written on *bodhicitta*. For a recent treatment, cf. BRASSARD.

*smṛtyātha samprajanyena yoniśaś cintanena ca* || 27 || <sup>55</sup>

The complete attainment of the right strivings arises from not abandoning heedfulness<sup>56</sup>, by mindfulness, by awareness and by thorough reflection. (27)

The twenty-seventh verse encapsulates the main themes of both the ŚSKĀ and ŚS. In this verse, Ś subsumes the practices which he associates with the path—those of the preservation, purification and increase of one's person, enjoyments and merit—under a single heading, the practice of the four right strivings. In this verse Ś shows that for him the way of the bodhisattva is essentially the way of the right strivings.

The second *pāda* of the twenty-seventh verse indicates that a bodhisattva is expected to attain the right strivings by maintaining constant heedfulness (*apramādāviyojana*). The third and fourth *pādas* suggest that heedfulness (*apramāda*) itself results from the cultivation of mindfulness (*smṛti*), awareness (*samprajanya*) and reflection (*cintana*).

In twenty-seventh verse—the last of the ŚSKĀ—the importance of unbroken self awareness is stressed again. Whenever a bodhisattva acts, it is thought imperative that he acts with full consciousness of the nature and consequences of his actions.

### 6.3 Increasing in the Śikṣāsamuccaya.

Table 1.1<sup>57</sup> and Table 1.3<sup>58</sup> indicate that the sixteenth to nineteenth chapters of the ŚS consider the increase of one's person, enjoyments and merit. The content of these chapters is summarised in Table 6.2<sup>59</sup>, Table 6.3<sup>60</sup> and Table 6.4<sup>61</sup>. These chapters contain an auto commentary on the twenty-second to final verse of the ŚSKĀ.

The principal themes of this section of the ŚS are that a bodhisattva is:

- a.) to increase his person and so on that he might have sufficient to satisfy the needs of all other sentient beings;
- b.) to increase his person by increasing his: *i.*) strength (*bala*); and *ii.*) energy (*vīrya*).
- c.) to increase his enjoyments by giving them with: *i.*) wisdom (*prajñā*); and *ii.*) compassion (*karuṇā*).

<sup>55</sup> BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlvii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 356, lns. 8–9.

<sup>56</sup> I.e., *apramāda*: lit. non heedlessness.

<sup>57</sup> P. 16.

<sup>58</sup> P. 19.

<sup>59</sup> P. 169.

<sup>60</sup> P. 170.

<sup>61</sup> P. 171.

- d.) to prepare to increase his merit by producing: *i.*) resolve (*vyavasāya*); *ii.*) intention (*āśaya*); and *iii.*) compassion.
- e.) to begin to increase his merit by practising: *i.*) the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*); *ii.*) the four dharmas leading to specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*); *iii.*) the five faculties (*indriyas*) and powers (*balas*); and *iv.*) the recollection of the Three Jewels (*ratnatrayānusmṛti*).
- f.) to continue to increase his merit by: *i.*) always promoting the welfare of others (*sattvārtha*); *ii.*) giving the spiritual gift of the Dharma (*nirāmiṣadharmadāna*); and *iii.*) by generating the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*).
- g.) to eventually attain the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*) by constant heedfulness (*apramāda*) in all of his practices.

In his description of preservation and purification, Ś is mainly concerned with explicating the preservation and purification of one's person. Table 6.2, Table 6.3 and Table 6.4 show that in his description of increase he is mainly concerned with explicating the increase of merit. A little over two pages is allotted to the increase of one's person and enjoyments. Over eighty pages are devoted to the increase of merit.

### 6.3.1 Increasing one's person & enjoyments.

§ 4<sup>62</sup> and § 5<sup>63</sup> asserted that the Śs and ŚSKĀ suggest that a bodhisattva is expected: *a.*) to practice preservation (*rakṣā*), the first right striving—the non production of non existing bad dharmas—by the practice of the perfections of giving and morality; and *b.*) to practice purification (*śuddhi*), the second right striving—the destruction of existing bad dharmas—by the practice of the perfections of patience, energy, meditation and wisdom. This section asserts that the Śs and ŚSKĀ suggest that a bodhisattva is then expected to practice increase (*vṛddhi*), the third and fourth right strivings—the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas.

The sixteenth to nineteenth chapters of the Śs provide a bodhisattva with instruction in the production and development of dharmas that are good. He is expected to practice increase—as he is expected to practice preservation and purification—so that he can give to others gifts that are suitable. And his practice of increase—like his practice of preservation and purification—is expected to be systematic.

<sup>62</sup> Pp. 93ff.

<sup>63</sup> Pp. 117ff.

Table 6.2: Increase in the ŚS-A.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
BHADRAČARYĀVIDHIḤ ṢOḌAŚAḤ P <sup>o</sup> Ḥ	273–297	251–269
<b>Increasing one's person.</b>	273–275	251–252
22.) <sup>c</sup>	273	251
<i>The Perfection of Energy (cont.).</i>	273–275	251–252
23ab.)	273	251
10 dharmas to increase strength ( <i>bala</i> ).	274	251–252
Practice non idleness ( <i>anālasya</i> )!	275	252
23a.)	275	252
<i>The Perfection of Wisdom (cont.).</i>	275–297	252–269
<b>Increasing enjoyments.</b>	275–276	252–253
23cd.)	275	252
Give with wisdom ( <i>prajñā</i> ) & compassion ( <i>karuṇā</i> )!	275–276	252–253
23d.)	276	253
<b>Increasing merit.</b>	276–356	253–313
24.)	276	253
Establish resolve ( <i>vyavasāya</i> )!	276–278	253–255
Bear :		
the faults ( <i>doṣas</i> ) of others !;	278–279	255
the burden ( <i>bhāra</i> ) of others !	280–281	255–257
Transfer merit ( <i>kuśalamūlapariṇāma</i> ) to others !	281–283	257–258
Put on armour ( <i>saṃnāha</i> )!	283	258–259
Establish strong intention ( <i>adhyāśaya</i> )!	284–285	259–260
24.)	286	261
Attain great compassion ( <i>mahākaruṇā</i> )!	285–289	260–263
24.)	289	263
25ab.)	289	263
3 agglomerations (of religion) ( <i>skandhas</i> ): confession of evil ( <i>pāpadeśanā</i> ); gratification in merit ( <i>puṇyānumodanā</i> ); requesting a Buddha ( <i>buddhādhyeṣaṇa</i> ).	290–291	263–265
10 great vows ( <i>mahāpraṇidhānas</i> ).	291–295	265–268
Supreme dedication ( <i>anuttarapariṇāmanā</i> )	296–297	268–269

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', pp. 273–297.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 251–269.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 6.3: Increase in the Śs-B.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Increasing merit (cont.).</b>	276–356	253–313
VANDANĀDYANUŚAṂSĀḤ SAPTADAŚAḤ P°	297–315	270–282
25b.) <sup>c</sup>	297	270
Benefits of worship ( <i>vandanā</i> & <i>pūjā</i> ). 8 dharmas to attain communion with the Buddhas ( <i>buddhasamavadhāna</i> ). Comparative value of gifts to the Buddha. 10 dharmas to avoid the impurity of the womb ( <i>garbhamala</i> ). Benefits: of (expression of) thanks ( <i>anumodanā</i> ); of request (for instruction) ( <i>adhyeṣaṇa</i> ).	297–309 309–312 312–313 313 313–315 315	270–276 276–278 278–279 279–280 280–282 282
RATNATRAYĀNUSMṚTIR NĀMĀṢṬĀDAŚAḤ P°	316–347	283–306
25a.)	316	283
25c.)	316	283
4 dharmas to attain specific attainment ( <i>viśeṣagāmitā</i> ): faith ( <i>śraddhā</i> ); reverence ( <i>gaurava</i> ); humility ( <i>nirmāna</i> ); energy ( <i>vīrya</i> ).	316 316	283 283
25c.)	316–317	283–284
5 faculties ( <i>indriyas</i> ) & 5 powers ( <i>balas</i> ): faith ( <i>śraddhā</i> ); energy ( <i>vīrya</i> ); mindfulness ( <i>smṛti</i> ); concentration ( <i>samādhi</i> ); wisdom ( <i>prajñā</i> ).	317 317 318	284 & 285 285 285
25c.)	318–327	285–291
25d i.)	318–322	285–288
25d ii.)	322–324	288–289
Recollection of the three jewels ( <i>ratnatrayānusmṛti</i> ): of the Buddha ( <i>buddhānusmṛti</i> ); of the Dharma ( <i>dharmānusmṛti</i> ); of the Saṃgha ( <i>saṃghānusmṛti</i> ). Qualities ( <i>guṇas</i> ) & actions of bodhisattvas. Sundry rays ( <i>raśmis</i> ) of bodhisattvas. Concentrations ( <i>samādhis</i> ) of bodhisattvas.	324–327 327–333 333–343 343–347	289–291 291–296 296–303 303–306

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 297–347.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 270–306.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 6.4: Increase in the Śs-C.

	ed. <sup>a</sup>	tr. <sup>b</sup>
<b>Increasing merit (cont.).</b>	276–356	253–313
(PUNYAVR̥DDHIḤ) NAVADAŚAḤ P° ḥ	348–366	307–320
26a.) <sup>c</sup>	348	307
Always benefit others!	348–349	307–308
Do not fear life in the forest!	349–350	308–309
26a.)	350	310
26b.)	350	310
20 benefits of spiritual gifts ( <i>nivāṃśadānas</i> ).	351	310
Benefits of teaching the Dharma ( <i>dharmadeśanā</i> ).	351–352	310–311
How to give the gift of the Dharma ( <i>dharmadāna</i> ).	352–355	311–113
26b.)	355	313
26cd.)	356	313
<b>Epilogue</b>	356–366	313–320
27.)	356	313
Right strivings ( <i>samyakpradhānas</i> ).	356	313
Non heedlessness ( <i>apramāda</i> ).	356–357	314–315
<i>The Perfection of Meditation (cont.)</i> .	357–361	315–317
Equality of self & others ( <i>parātmāsamatā</i> ).	357–361	315–317
Exchanging self with others ( <i>parātmaparivartana</i> ).	361	317
Give one's person to others!	362–364	318–319
Obeisance to Mañjuśrī.	365	320
Transfer of merit.	366	320

<sup>a</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', pp. 348–366.<sup>b</sup> BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 307–320.<sup>c</sup> ŚSKĀ.

Table 6.5: Ten dharmas to increase strength.

<i>akuśaladharmā</i>	<i>kuśaladharmā</i>
1.) forsaking the Dharma	forsaking life & body
2.) feeling proud ( <i>māna</i> )	feeling humble <sup>a</sup> ( <i>avanāma</i> )
3.) feeling aversion ( <i>pratigha</i> )	feeling indulgent ( <i>kṣamā</i> )
4.) giving hunger ( <i>jighatsā</i> )	giving enjoyment ( <i>bhojana</i> )
5.) giving fear ( <i>bhīta</i> )	giving security ( <i>abhaya</i> )
6.) giving sickness ( <i>glāna</i> )	giving health <sup>b</sup> ( <i>bhūtacikitsā</i> )
7.) giving poverty ( <i>daridratā</i> )	giving wealth ( <i>bhoga</i> )
8.) neglecting <i>caityas</i>	maintaining <i>caityas</i>
9.) speaking unpleasantly	speaking pleasantly ( <i>ānandavacana</i> )
10.) giving fatigue ( <i>śrāntaklānta</i> )	taking up the burden ( <i>bhāra</i> )

<sup>a</sup> Lit. 'bowing'. *Avanāma* is the opposite of *unnāma*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 72 & p. 132.

<sup>b</sup> Lit. 'real cure'.

A bodhisattva is expected to increase his person by increasing his strength (*bala*) and energy (*vīrya*). His enjoyments are to be increased by giving them with wisdom (*prajñā*) and compassion (*karuṇā*).

*Ātmabhāvavardhana*. Table 6.5<sup>64</sup> shows how a bodhisattva is expected to increase his strength and thereby his person. In general, he is to destroy all inclination towards the generation of bad dharmas and develop a propensity towards the production of good dharmas. In particular, he is to eschew ten especially enervating dharmas and to cultivate their opposites.

It is thought that a bodhisattva becomes truly strong only when he abandons everything for the sake of others. Ś's position is uncompromising: a bodhisattva who fails to forsake his life and body for others, forsakes the Dharma; a bodhisattva who is not humble towards others, is proud; a bodhisattva who does not give health and wealth to others, gives sickness and poverty and so on. The non production of good dharmas, then, is considered tantamount to the production of bad dharmas. And the non production of good dharmas leads not to the increase of strength, but to

<sup>64</sup> P. 172.

the decrease.

A bodhisattva is to increase not only his strength, but also his activity (*anālasya*) or energy (*vīrya*).<sup>65</sup> The formula of the right strivings stresses that each striving is to be practised with energy (*vīryam ārabhate*).<sup>66</sup> Likewise, in his auto commentary on the twenty-third verse, Ś insists on the increase of one's person through the sustained practice of energy (*ārabdhavīrya*)<sup>67</sup>:

For when energy is practised by bodhisattvas, Sāgaramati, the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of the Buddha is not difficult to attain. Why? Where there is energy, Sāgaramati, there there is enlightenment. Besides, when bodhisattvas are lazy<sup>68</sup> enlightenment is very very remote. From a lazy bodhisattva there is no giving, . . . there is no wisdom, from a lazy bodhisattva there is no benefit for others.<sup>69</sup>

The generation and application of energy, then, is considered as critical to the increase of one's person as to the purification of one's person.<sup>70</sup>

This is the increase of one's person in brief.<sup>71</sup>

*Bhogavardhana*. Table 6.2<sup>72</sup> shows that a bodhisattva is advised to increase his enjoyments by giving them to others with an understanding of emptiness (*sūnyatā*). Gifts are to be given freely, without distinction between the giver, the gift and the recipient of the gift.<sup>73</sup> Above all, Ś wants

<sup>65</sup> In: BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p.275, ln. 1, *anālasyavardhana* ≡ *vīryavardhana*.

<sup>66</sup> Cf. Appendix B, pp. 203ff..

<sup>67</sup> Ibid., p. 275, lns. 1 & 3.

<sup>68</sup> I.e., *kusīda*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 189.

<sup>69</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 275, lns. 3-6:

*ārabdhavīryāṇāṃ hi sāgaramate bodhisatvānāṃ na durlabhā bhavaty anuttarā samyak sambodhiḥ | tat kasya hetoḥ | yatra sāgaramate vīryam tatra bodhiḥ | kusīdānāṃ punaḥ sudūra vidūre bodhiḥ | nāsti kusīdasya dānaṃ yāvan nāsti prajāṇā [120a] nāsti kusīdasya parārtha iti ||*

<sup>70</sup> For the relationship between *vīrya* & *ātmabhāvaśodhana*, cf. § 5.3.1, pp. 127ff.; & Table 5.3 on p. 125.

<sup>71</sup> Ibid., p. 275, ln. 9:

*iyam saṃkṣepād ātmabhāvavṛddhiḥ ||*

<sup>72</sup> P. 169.

<sup>73</sup> For the same concept in different words, cf. *ibid.*, p. 270, ln. 19-p. 271, ln. 1:

*evaṃ dvayavigamatayā māyālakṣaṇasvabhāvaviśuddhiṃ bodhisattvas tad dānaṃ dadāti |*

So, from the cessation of duality, purified of own being, the mark of illusion, that gift the bodhisattva gives.

the gifts of a bodhisattva to be empty of self interest.

Skill and application are thought necessary to give to others without self interest. It is expected that those who wish to increase their enjoyments through giving be trained in the perfection of wisdom (*prajñāpāramitāyāṃ śikṣitavyam*).<sup>74</sup> The attainment of wisdom (*prajñā*) is considered as essential to the increase of enjoyments as to the purification of enjoyments.<sup>75</sup>

That is the increase of enjoyments in brief.<sup>76</sup>

### 6.3.2 Increasing merit.

The increase of merit is the source of all increase. Therefore it is called being prepared<sup>77, 78</sup>

A bodhisattva is first to increase his person by increasing his strength and energy. He is then to increase his enjoyments by giving gifts with wisdom and an understanding of emptiness. He is then to prepare to increase his merit by generating resolve (*vyavasāya*), good intention (*svāśaya*) and great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*). These good dharmas are introduced in the twenty-fourth verse of the ŚSKĀ. The first two thirds of the auto commentary on this verse explains resolve and intention, the final third great compassion.<sup>79</sup>

*Vyavasāya & āśaya*. In preparation for the practice of the increase of merit proper, a bodhisattva is expected to firmly establish his resolve (*vyavasāya*). This stage in the path is considered a time for mental focus, not laxity (*śaithilya*).<sup>80</sup> As a warrior, before he takes the field, prepares his weapons (*astras*) and armour (*saṃnāha*), so a bodhisattva, before he increases his merit, prepares his mind.<sup>81</sup>

<sup>74</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 275, lns. 16 & 17.

<sup>75</sup> For the relationship between an understanding of non duality (*dvayavigamata*) & *bhogaśodhana*, cf. § 5.3.2, pp. 149ff..

<sup>76</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 276, lns. 1–2:

*iti saṃkṣepād bhogavṛddhiḥ ||*

<sup>77</sup> I.e., *parikarabandha*: lit. tying the girdle.

<sup>78</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 276, ln. 3:

*puṇyavṛddhiḥ sarvavṛddhīnāṃ mūlam iti tadarthaṃ parikarabandha  
ucyate ||*

<sup>79</sup> For ref., cf. Table 6.2 on p. 169.

<sup>80</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 276, ln. 8.

<sup>81</sup> In this part of the Śs, martial imagery is esp. marked: cf. esp. *ibid.*, p. 276, lns. 7–9; p. 278, lns. 4–13; & p. 283, lns. 3–11. For the bodhisattva as a hero, cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Meanings', p. 259.

At this point, a bodhisattva is to consolidate all he has attained through his practice of preservation and purification. He is supposed to be motivated solely by a desire for the benefit of others and to have attained the six perfections. No longer is he to be assisted by the perfections, the perfections are to be assisted by him :

Thus this strong armour is bound<sup>82</sup> : 'Whatever is to be done<sup>83</sup> by all sentient beings, I will get it done. That which noble bodhisattvas and those very recently departed on the vehicle will not do, I will get it done. Giving is not my companion<sup>84</sup>, but I am the companion of giving. Morality, patience, energy, meditation and wisdom are not my companions, but I am the companion of morality, patience, energy, meditation and wisdom. I am not to be served by the perfections, but the perfections are to be served by me. So I should proceed in the articles of attraction<sup>85</sup> and in all the sources of good, ... After Māra with his hosts and chariots is overcome by me, alone, without second, without companion, standing on the adamantine circumference of the earth, by wisdom attained in a single moment (of thought<sup>86</sup>), the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of the Buddha is to be realised<sup>87, 88</sup>.

Good intention (*svāśaya*) is considered the source of all the good dharmas of a Buddha. A bodhisattva without good intention is thought to be without good dharmas<sup>89</sup> :

<sup>82</sup> Cf. *mahāsaṃnāhasaṃnaddha*, well armed with great armour, in: KAJIYAMA, 'Meanings', p. 259.

<sup>83</sup> I.e., *pariprāpayati* : cf. EDGERTON, p. 327, def. 2.

<sup>84</sup> I.e., *sahāyaka* here ≡ *sahāya* & *sahāyika* : cf. *ibid.*, p. 588.

<sup>85</sup> I.e., *saṃgrahavastus* : cf. *ibid.*, p. 548 ; & KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § XIX, p. 4 :

catvāri saṃgrahavastūni || dānaṃ priyavacanam arthacaryā  
samānārthatā ceti ||

<sup>86</sup> I.e., *cittakṣaṇa* : cf. EDGERTON, p. 229.

<sup>87</sup> I.e., *abhisambudhyate* & so on : cf. *ibid.*, pp. 58-59, def. 2.

<sup>88</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 278, lns. 6-14 :

sa evaṃ dṛḍhasaṃnāhaḥ saṃnaddho ' yat kiñcit sarvasatvānāṃ  
pariprāpayitavyaṃ bhaviṣyati tad ahaṃ pariprāpayiṣyāmi | yat  
sarvāryāḥ sarvanavayānasamprasthitā bodhisatvā na pariprāpayi-  
ṣyanti tad ahaṃ pariprāpayiṣyāmi | na mama dānaṃ sahāyakaṃ '  
ahaṃ punar dānasya sahāyaḥ | na mama śīlakṣāntivīryadhyānapra-  
jñāḥ sahāyikāḥ | ahaṃ punaḥ śīlakṣāntivīryadhyānaprajñānāṃ  
sahāyo ' nāhaṃ pāramitābhir upasthātavyo mayā punaḥ pāramitā  
upasthātavyāḥ | evaṃ saṃgrahavastuṣu sarvakuśalamūleṣu ca-  
leyam | yāvad ekākinā mayā 'dvitīyenāsahāyena vajramaye  
mahīmaṇḍale sthiteṇa sabalaṃ savāhanaṃ māraṃ dharṣayitvā  
eka(citta)<sup>†</sup>kṣaṇasamāyuktayā prajñayā 'nuttarā samyaksambodhir  
abhisamboddhavyeti ||

For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, pp. 170-171.

<sup>89</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 284, lns. 7-8.

As, Blessed One, from that tree whose root is rotten, flowers and fruit do not grow, so, Blessed One, from him whose intention is rotten, all good dharmas do not arise. Therefore, Blessed One, by a bodhisattva who wants the enlightenment of the Buddha, good intention should be well learnt<sup>90</sup>, well preserved, well purified and well mastered<sup>91, 92</sup>.

*Karuṇā*. At all stages along the path—at the beginning, middle and end—the generation of great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*) is thought essential to the progress of a bodhisattva.<sup>93</sup> Good intention shares with great compassion a sense of benevolence (*saumyatā*) and friendliness (*maītratā*) towards all sentient beings.<sup>94</sup> Even so, for Ś, great compassion is superior.

In conclusion to his auto commentary on the twenty-fourth verse of the ŚSKĀ Ś asserts that of all the good dharmas associated with the Mahāyāna, great compassion is prerequisite (foremost) (*pūrvāṅgama*)<sup>95</sup> :

As it was said in the noble *Dharmasaṃgītisūtra*: ‘Now then, Avalokiteśvara, the *bodhisattva-mahāsattva*, said this to the Blessed One: “Blessed One, a bodhisattva is not to be instructed in too many dharmas. One dharma, Blessed One, is to be well accomplished and well penetrated (understood) by a bodhisattva. All the dharmas of the Buddha are contained in this. What one dharma? Namely<sup>96</sup> great compassion. Through great compassion, Blessed One, all the dharmas of the Buddha are possessed by bodhisattvas... So, Blessed One, where the great compassion of a bodhisattva goes, there all the dharmas of the Buddha go... So, Blessed One, when great compassion arises, then the other dharmas that produce enlightenment are abundant in activity... So, Blessed One, when other dharmas that produce enlightenment are established, great compassion is abundant in creating itself in itself... So, Blessed One, when great compassion exists, there is the production of other dharmas that produce enlightenment”.’<sup>97</sup>

<sup>90</sup> I.e., *sūdgṛhīta*: cf. *udgṛhṇāti* in: EDGERTON, p. 129.

<sup>91</sup> I.e., *svadhiṣṭita*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 12–13 & 16.

<sup>92</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 285, lns. 3–6:

*tad yathā bhagavan yasya vṛkṣasya mūlaṃ vipannaṃ tasya puṣpaphalāni na bhūyaḥ prarohanti | evam eva bhagavan yasyāśayo vipannaṃ tasya sarve kuśalā dharmā na bhūyaḥ sambhavanti | tas-māt tarhi bhagavan bodhisatvena buddhabodhyarthikena svāśayaḥ sūdgṛhītaḥ svārakṣitaḥ suśodhitaḥ svadhiṣṭitaḥ kartavya iti ||*

<sup>93</sup> *Mahākaruṇā* is often extolled in the Śs. A simple word count shows that *mahākaruṇā* occurs three times as often as *karuṇā*. A bodhisattva is expected to generate great compassion rather than mere compassion.

<sup>94</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 285, lns. 14ff.

<sup>95</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 287, lns. 7–8. For a recent ed. of this passage, cf. BRAARVIG, I, p. 166.

<sup>96</sup> I.e., *yad uta*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 443, def. 1.

<sup>97</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Çikṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 286, ln. 7–p. 287, ln. 5:

*yathoktam āryadharmasaṃgītisūtre | atha khalv avalokiteśvaro*

In the above quoted passage from the *Śatasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitāsūtra*<sup>98</sup> Subhūti asks the Buddha which are the good dharmas that contribute to enlightenment (*kuśaladharmā bodhipakṣāḥ*). He wishes to know the dharmas that help *pratyekabuddhas*, bodhisattvas and Buddhas attain the *summum bonum* of the Mahāyāna. In the above quoted passage from the *Dharmasaṃgītisūtra* Ś implies that a long answer to Subhūti's question is not needed.

If a bodhisattva generates great compassion, then he effectively generates all dharmas that contribute to enlightenment (*bodhikaradharmas*). Thus, ultimately, a bodhisattva need not learn every permutation of every dharma. For according to Ś, where there is great compassion, there there is every dharma necessary for enlightenment.

A bodhisattva is expected to attain three qualities before he practices the increase of merit proper: *i.*) the firm resolve to benefit others; *ii.*) good intention towards others; and *iii.*) great compassion towards others. Only after satisfying this precondition is it thought appropriate for him to begin to engage in the actual increase of merit.

The twenty-fifth verse of the ŚSKĀ and Ś's auto commentary on this verse associate four practices with the increase of merit proper: *i.*) the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*); *ii.*) the four dharmas leading to specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*); *iii.*) the five faculties (*indriyas*) and powers (*balas*); and *iv.*) the recollection of the Three Jewels (*ratnatrayānusmṛti*). Each practice combines elements of worship and devotion with elements of concentration and meditation.

*Anuttarapūjā.* A bodhisattva is to begin the increase of merit proper with the practice of the supreme forms of worship. This Mahāyāna ritual generally consists of seven successive parts: *i.*) praise (worship) (*vandanā*); *ii.*) worship (reverence) (*pūjanā*); *iii.*) confession of evil (*pāpadeśanā*);

c  
*bodhisatvo mahāsatvo bhagavantam etad avo<sup>c</sup>rat | na bhagavan  
 bodhisatvenātibahuṣu dharmeṣu śikṣitavyaṃ | eko dharmo bhagavan  
 bodhisatvena svārādhitāḥ supratividdhāḥ kartavyaḥ | tasya  
 sarvabuddhdharmāḥ karatalagatā bhavanti | katama ekadharmo  
 | yad uta mahākaruṇā | mahākaruṇayā bhaga[126a]van bodhisatvānāṃ  
 sarvabuddhadharmāḥ karatalagatā bhavanti | ...' evam eva bhagavan  
 yena bodhisatvasya mahākaruṇā gacchati | tena sarve buddhadharmā  
 gacchanti | ...' evam eva bhagavan mahākaruṇā yatroditā bhavati  
 tatrānyabodhikarā dharmāḥ kriyāsu pracurā bhavanti | ...' evam  
 eva bhagavan mahākaruṇādhiṣṭhitānām anyeṣāṃ bodhikarāṇāṃ  
 dharmāṇāṃ svasmin svasmin karaṇīye prācuryaṃ bhavati | ...' evam  
 eva bhagavan mahākaruṇāyāṃ satyāṃ anyeṣāṃ bodhikarāṇāṃ  
 dhamāṇāṃ ( dharmāṇāṃ )<sup>†</sup> pravṛttir bhavatīti ||*

For another version of this passage, cf. DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramatī*, comm. on BCA 9:76ab, p. 486, ln. 11–p. 487, ln. 5.

<sup>98</sup> Cf. § 2, pp. 23ff..

*iv.*) (expression of) thanks (*anumodanā*)<sup>99</sup>; *v.*) request (for instruction) (*adhyeṣaṇa*); *vi.*) request (for the non forsaking of sentient beings) (*yācana*); and *vii.*) dedication (of merit) (*pariṇāmana*). While the rôle of the supreme forms of worship is variously interpreted<sup>100</sup>, there is little doubt that Ś considers them fundamental to the increase<sup>101</sup> of merit.

The seventeenth chapter is solely devoted to an explanation of the benefits (*anuśamsas*) that arise from worship and of how worship increases merit. Among other advantages, worship generates: *a.*) eight dharmas that effect communion with the Buddhas (*buddhasamavadhāna*)<sup>101</sup>; and *b.*) ten dharmas that effect birth untainted by the impurity of the womb (*garbhamala*).<sup>102</sup>

*Viśeṣagāmitā.* Those departed on the Mahāyāna (*mahāyānasamprasthitas*) are also expected to generate the four good dharmas tending towards specific attainment<sup>103</sup>: *i.*) faith (*śraddhā*); *ii.*) reverence (*gaurava*); *iii.*) humility (*nirmāna*); and *iv.*) energy (*vīrya*).

Specific attainment is defined as the ability to focus thought so acutely that meditation (*dhyāna*) is attained.<sup>104</sup> A bodhisattva who secures specific attainment appears to unify devotion and concentration. Ś considers specific attainment as critical to the increase of merit as to the purification of one's person.<sup>105</sup>

*Indriyas & Balas.* Further practices for the increase merit, are the fourth and fifth sets of the conditions favourable to enlightenment (*bodhipakṣa dharmas*)—the five faculties (*indriyas*) and powers (*balas*). Table 2.4<sup>106</sup>, Table 2.5<sup>107</sup> and Table 6.3<sup>108</sup> show that the faculties and powers are associated with: *a.*) faith (*śraddhā*); *b.*) energy (*vīrya*); *c.*) mindfulness (*smṛti*); *d.*) concentration (*samādhi*); and *e.*) wisdom (*prajñā*).

<sup>99</sup> For the relationship between *anumodanā* & *pariṇāmanā*, cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Transfer', pp. 12–13.

<sup>100</sup> Cf. CROSBY & SKILTON, pp. 11–13, where it is suggested that the *anuttara-pūjā* is instrumental in the cultivation of the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*).

<sup>101</sup> Cf. esp. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 309, lns. 13–18.

<sup>102</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 313, lns. 10–17.

<sup>103</sup> I.e., *viśeṣādhiḡama* ≡ *viśeṣagamana* ≡ *viśeṣagāmitā*.

<sup>104</sup> For this def., cf. EDGERTON, p. 501.

<sup>105</sup> For specific attainment in its various forms, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 191, lns. 2 & 9; & p. 316, lns. 5–12. It seems that specific attainment is simultaneously: *a.*) one of the eighty forms of sacred knowledge (*śrutākāras*); *b.*) one of the manifestations of the equipment of the Dharma (dharmas) (*dharmasaṃbhāra*); and *c.*) the goal of the practice of faith, reverence, humility & energy.

<sup>106</sup> P. 42.

<sup>107</sup> P. 43.

<sup>108</sup> P. 170.

The significance of each of the faculties and powers in the ŚS is discussed in § 2.5.<sup>109</sup> It is asserted that the faculties represent the actualisation of a firm belief in: *a.*) the workings of *karma*; *b.*) the value of bodhisattvas and the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*); *c.*) the doctrines associated with dependent arising (*pratītyasamutpāda*) and emptiness (*śūnyatā*); and *d.*) the dharmas of the Buddha and in the value of attaining these dharmas. It is asserted that the powers, for their part, are considered instrumental in protecting a bodhisattva against assault from all the Māras (*sarvamāras*) and mental defilements (*sarvakleśas*) and in ensuring that he is not liable to turning back (*avinivartin*) from the Mahāyāna.<sup>110</sup>

The faculties and powers usually occur as the fourth and fifth sets of the conditions favourable to enlightenment. Even so, as the faculties and powers involve the creation, consolidation and development of dharmas that are good, Ś also considers them another aspect of the second set of conditions favourable to enlightenment, the third and fourth right strivings—the production of non existing good dharmas and increase of existing good dharmas.

*Ratnatrayānusmṛti.* In the ŚS the increase of merit proper involves not only the practice of the supreme forms of worship, the dharmas leading to specific attainment and the faculties and powers, but also the recollection of the Three Jewels (*ratnatrayānusmṛti*)—the recollection of the Buddha(s) (*buddhānusmṛti*), Dharma (*dharmānusmṛti*) and Saṃgha (*saṃghānusmṛti*).

*Buddhānusmṛti.* When he engages in the recollection of the Buddha(s) (*buddhānusmṛti*)—as when he engages in the supreme forms of worship—a bodhisattva is expected to praise (worship) (*vandanā*) the Buddha(s).<sup>111</sup> He is to recall and laud the characteristic marks (*lakṣaṇas*) and qualities (*guṇas*) of the Buddha(s).<sup>112</sup> Moreover, he is to desire their qualities for himself:

... Thus, he recalls them<sup>113</sup>. And thus, having recalled them, he produces [in himself]<sup>114</sup> mindfulness for the sake of the perfect development<sup>115</sup> of their qualities. This is called the recollection of the Buddha(s).<sup>116</sup>

<sup>109</sup> Pp. 42ff.

<sup>110</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 317, lns. 13–17.

<sup>111</sup> The formula *vandāmi te*—'I praise (worship) you'—is a constant refrain in Ś's description of *buddhānusmṛti*: cf. *ibid.*, pp. 318ff.

<sup>112</sup> For ref. to *lakṣaṇas* & their occurrence, cf. EDGERTON, pp. 458–460.

<sup>113</sup> *Viz.* the Buddhas.

<sup>114</sup> I.e., *upasthāpayati*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 144, def. 2.

<sup>115</sup> I.e., *pariṇīpatti*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 325.

<sup>116</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 322, lns. 12–13:

*Dharmānusmṛti*. The recollection of the Dharma is expected to result in: a.) the emulation of the interdependent relationship between the Buddhas and the Dharma<sup>117</sup>; and b.) the alignment of all thought (*citta*) with the Dharma.<sup>118</sup>

At this critical stage on the path, it is thought that a bodhisattva should accept total dependence on the Dharma. He is to accept that apart from the Dharma, he has neither support (*pratiśaraṇa*) nor refuge (*parāyaṇa*). To reinforce his sense of dependence a bodhisattva is advised to constantly repeat the refrain: 'Thus it is necessary for me to make my thought like the Dharma'.<sup>119</sup>

*Samghānusmṛti*. As a bodhisattva is to come to embody the qualities of the Buddha(s) and the Dharma, so he is to embody the qualities of the Saṃgha:

Then, the recollection of the Saṃgha by the bodhisattva arises thus: these qualities of the Saṃgha, these should be attained by me for myself and for all sentient beings.<sup>120</sup>

The recollection of the Saṃgha is not the recollection of the general community of Mahāyāna practitioners, but rather, of only a few advanced bodhisattvas.<sup>121</sup> To increase his merit through the practice of the recollection of the Saṃgha, a bodhisattva has to attempt to become like those highly accomplished bodhisattvas who can, at will:

- a.) assume all the forms (*rūpas*) of sentient beings, that they might find favour with sentient beings<sup>122</sup>;
- b.) employ all means (*upāya* and *mukha*) for the benefit of sentient beings<sup>123</sup>;

---

...! evaṃ tān anusmarati | evaṃ ca tān anusmṛtya tadguṇapariniṣ-  
pattyarthaṃ smṛtim upasthāpayati || tad ucyate buddhānusmṛtir  
iti ||

Cf. also BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 321, ln. 11.

<sup>117</sup> Ibid., p. 322, ln. 14–p. 323, ln. 3.

<sup>118</sup> Ibid., p. 323, ln. 3–p. 324, ln. 4.

<sup>119</sup> I.e., *tathā mayā dharmadṛśacittena bhavitavyaṃ*. From *ibid.*, p. 323, ln. 4–p. 324, ln. 3, this refrain is repeated 11 times.

<sup>120</sup> Ibid., p. 324, lns. 8–9:

*tatra bodhisatvasya saṃgham anusmarataḥ evaṃ bhavati | ya ete  
saṃghasya bhūtā guṇā ete mayā tmanāḥ sarvasatvānāṃ ca niṣpā-  
dayitavyā iti ||*

<sup>121</sup> Ibid., p. 324, ln. 10; & p. 327, ln. 5.

<sup>122</sup> Ibid., p. 324, ln. 11–p. 327, ln. 4.

<sup>123</sup> Ibid., p. 327, ln. 20–p. 333, ln. 12.

- c.) display all the rays (*raśmis*), that sentient beings might see the Buddha, Dharma and Saṃgha, and the way (*mārga*)<sup>124</sup>; and
- d.) attain all the concentrations (*samādhis*), that they might perform miracles (*vikurvas*) before sentient beings.<sup>125</sup>

It seems, then, that the practice of the recollection of the Three Jewels—while it complements the practice of the supreme forms of worship and dharmas leading to specific attainment—is especially complementary to the practice of the faculties and powers. Success in the recollection of the Buddha(s), Dharma and Saṃgha, and in the faculties and powers is imagined to lead to an experience of the immense value of: a.) the Buddhas and striving to attain the unsurpassed and supreme enlightenment of the Buddhas; b.) the Dharma and living in accord with the Dharma; and c.) the bodhisattvas and following the way of the bodhisattvas. It is thought that unqualified acceptance and realization of these three cardinal concepts assures a bodhisattva of the increase of his merit.

*Sattvārtha.* Practice of the supreme forms of worship and meditation on the Three Jewels while alone in the forest may teach a bodhisattva to place others before himself. Even so, he still needs the means to incorporate this teaching into his daily life in society with others.<sup>126</sup>

In his auto commentary on the twenty-sixth verse of the ŚSKĀ Ś advises a bodhisattva to increase his benefit—as well as his merit—by beginning to offer all of his daily actions, no matter how trivial, to others. Whenever he acts 'he is to generate a thought' for the well being of others.<sup>127</sup> Likewise, whenever he feels fearful, he is to recall bodhisattvas who are skilled at abandoning all that they have (*sarvasvaparitāgakuśala*)<sup>128</sup>. He is expected never to rest until in his daily practice he shows that he has given or abandoned everything (*sarvaṃ parityaktam*)<sup>129</sup> for the sake of others.

<sup>124</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 333, ln. 17. For *raśmis*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 333, ln. 13–p. 343, ln. 10.

<sup>125</sup> For *samādhis*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 343, ln. 11–p. 347, ln. 11. For *vikurvas*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 327, ln. 20; p. 328, lns. 9 & 15; p. 333, ln. 12; p. 345, ln. 12; & p. 347, ln. 5.

<sup>126</sup> By meditation (*bhāvanā*), the writer ref. to what—for want of a better term—might be ref. to as cultivation or formal meditation. It is recognised that his def. of *bhāvanā* is narrow and fails to account for the wide range of practices which Buddhists associate with this term. For a useful discussion of this subject, cf. RAHULA.

<sup>127</sup> I.e., *cittam utpādayati*, a refrain which is repeated fifteen times: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 348, ln. 4–p. 349, ln. 5. In the next passage, a similar refrain—*tenaivaṃ cittam utpādayitavyam*—is repeated three times: cf. *ibid.*, p. 349, ln. 6–p. 250, ln. 19.

<sup>128</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 349, ln. 13.

<sup>129</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 349, ln. 8.

*Nirāmiṣadharmadāna*. The auto commentary on the second *pāda* of the twenty-sixth verse in the nineteenth chapter suggests that highest priority should be given to the spiritual gift of the Dharma (*nirāmiṣadharmadāna*). A bodhisattva is expected to begin to give the Dharma by communicating or teaching it to others.<sup>130</sup>

Yet at this point on the path, Ś also expects a bodhisattva to experience hesitation and perhaps trepidation. As Śākyamuni, after he became a Buddha, was uncertain whether to teach the Dharma to others, so it is with a bodhisattva on his return to society after the solitude of the forest. After meditating alone, it is thought to require courage (*ālinacitta*) to share with others what he has learnt.<sup>131</sup>

Accordingly, Ś tries to impress a newly returned bodhisattva with the benefits (*anuśamsas*) of teaching the Dharma, especially as it relates to the Mahāyāna and practice of the perfection of wisdom :

Thus a *bodhisattva-mahāsattva* is endowed<sup>132</sup> with the source of good. Thus, his attention focused<sup>133</sup> on the source of good, the possibility does not exist, Ānanda, that this *bodhisattva-mahāsattva* should turn back from the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of the Buddha. This is impossible.<sup>134</sup>

To secure such benefits, a learned bodhisattva (*paṇḍita*) must constantly expound the foremost dharmas (*agradharmas*) before assemblies of monks (*bhikṣus*) and nuns (*bhikṣuṇikās*).<sup>135</sup> Although teaching greatly increases his merit, he is to think only of the benefit it brings to others :

Rather, may I think clearly always, may I become a Buddha and these sentient beings.

I learn about the Dharma for the benefit of the world, this is the basis of all happiness for me.<sup>136</sup>

<sup>130</sup> I.e., *deśyati*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 272, def. 1.

<sup>131</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 352, lns. 8–9.

<sup>132</sup> I.e., *samanvāgata*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 564.

<sup>133</sup> Cf. *samanvāharati* in: *ibid.*, pp. 564–565.

<sup>134</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 352, lns. 4–6:

*evaṃ kuśalamūlasamanvāgato bodhisatvo mahāsatvaḥ ' evaṃ kuśalamūlaṃ samanvāharan na sthānam ānandānavakāśo yat sa bodhisatvo mahāsatvo vivartetānuttarāyāḥ samyakṣambodheḥ ' naitat sthānaṃ vidyata iti ||*

<sup>135</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 353, lns. 6 & 4. For *bhikṣuṇikā*, cf. EDGERTON, p. 409.

<sup>136</sup> BENDALL, 'Cikṣāsamuccaya', p. 354, lns. 1–2:

*anyatra cinteya sadā vicakṣaṇaḥ bhaveya buddho 'ham ime ca satvā | etac ca me sarvasukhopadhānaṃ yaṃ dharma śrāvemi hitāya loka ||*

Before assemblies, a bodhisattva is to merely see himself as a servant ; he is to be a physician (*vaidya*), the audience, those who are sick (*ātura*), and the Dharma, their medicine (*bhaiṣajya*).<sup>137</sup>

*Bodhicitta.* Ś finishes his auto commentary on the twenty-sixth verse by mentioning the importance of developing the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicitta*). The mind of enlightenment—while hardly deprecated—is described with a brevity shared by neither of the other factors contributing to the increase of merit.<sup>138</sup> Ś intends to fix attention firmly on the rôle of the third and fourth right strivings—the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas.

With his few words on the mind of enlightenment, Ś ends his discourse on preservation, purification and increase. He has, he believes, given in outline, the religious discipline suitable for an incipient bodhisattva who desires to mount the Mahāyāna :

This sort of preliminary bodhisattva religious discipline is initially taught for the sake of the recollection of those who are beginning to practice. But, at length, indeed, it is a subject for the Buddha.<sup>139</sup>

*Samyakpradhānas.* § 1.2<sup>140</sup> and § 2.3<sup>141</sup> assert that in the ŚS and ŚSKĀ the concept of the right strivings informs Ś's description of the way of the bodhisattva. All that remains is to note how Ś acknowledges his dependence on this concept in his brief auto commentary on the final verse of the ŚSKĀ.

Ś usually comments on verses of the ŚSKĀ in words of his own and with direct quotations from Mahāyāna sūtras. He explains the meaning of the final verse of the ŚSKĀ by a combination of both. His explication consists of his own version of one of the traditional formulae of the four right strivings.<sup>142</sup>

According to Ś's version of the formula: the first right striving (the non production of non existing bad dharmas) is the practice of preservation (*rakṣā*); the second striving (the destruction of existing bad dharmas) is the practice of purification (*śuddhi*); while the third and fourth strivings (the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas) are the practice of increase (*vṛddhi*).

<sup>137</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 355, lns. 9–10.

<sup>138</sup> Ibid., p. 356, lns. 3–5.

<sup>139</sup> Ibid., p. 356, lns. 6–7:

*eṣādika ādika[162b]rmikāṇaṃ sahasā bodhisatvaśikṣā smaraṇārtham  
upadarśitā | vistaratas tu buddhaviṣaya eva ||*

<sup>140</sup> Pp. 9ff..

<sup>141</sup> Pp. 32ff..

<sup>142</sup> For text & tr. of this formula, cf. Appendix B, pp. 203ff..

In the twenty-seventh verse and in his commentary on this verse Ś makes explicit the basis for his description of the path.

Ś describes the path itself as the gradual preservation, purification and increase of one's person, enjoyments and merit. A bodhisattva is expected to preserve his person and so on by the non production of non existing bad dharmas. He is to purify his person and so on by the destruction of existing bad dharmas. And finally, he is to increase his person and so on by the production of non existing good dharmas and the increase of existing good dharmas. The preservation, purification and increase of his person and so on are to be practised so that he can make a suitable gift of his person and so on to others. In the Śs and ŚSKĀ this is the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*).

*Apramāda & so on.* The relations between the right strivings, heedfulness (*apramāda*) and so on, is stressed in the first prose paragraph of the epilogue to the Śs.<sup>143</sup> In this passage, Ś effectively concludes his compendium on the way of the bodhisattva. His conclusion is especially suitable. It integrates—as if they had never been separate<sup>144</sup>—the practice of faith (*śraddhā*), heedfulness, energy (*vīrya*), mindfulness and awareness (*smṛtisamprajanya*), the right strivings and the conditions favourable to enlightenment :

For it was said in the *Tathāgataguhyasūtra*: 'Then what is heedfulness? The restraint of the (sense) faculties<sup>145</sup>; Having seen forms with the eye he becomes neither one who grasps at appearances<sup>146</sup> nor one who grasps at minor marks<sup>147</sup>. . . . Observing dharmas with the mind he becomes neither one who grasps at appearances nor one who grasps at minor marks.<sup>148</sup> In all dharmas he accurately

<sup>143</sup> For ref. to the epilogue, cf. Table 1.1 on p. 16; Table 1.3 on p. 19; & Table 6.4 on p. 171.

<sup>144</sup> Cf. STEINKELLNER, 'Logic', p. 311 :

As soon as we start reading Dharmakīrti on his own terms we find ourselves participating in his philosophical workshop. And the philological situation in his case is luckily such that we can literally observe him at work, taking up a theme again and again, adapting it, fitting it together with other themes he has taken up again and welding them together so that they seem never to have been separate.

<sup>145</sup> I.e., *indriyas*, the six sense faculties: the eye faculty (*cakṣurindriya*); ear faculty (*śrotendriya*); nose faculty (*ghrāṇendriya*); tongue faculty (*jihvendriya*); body faculty (*kāyendriya*); & mind faculty (*manendriya*). For these, cf. ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1853–1857, p. 101. On the classification of the faculties, cf. GETHIN, pp. 104–106.

<sup>146</sup> I.e., *nimitta*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 297–298.

<sup>147</sup> I.e., *anuvyañjana*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 34.

<sup>148</sup> These two sentences ref. to another traditional formula of the right strivings. For a more complete version of this passage, cf. BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*',

perceives enjoyment and distress and escape (from the world). This is called heedfulness. Moreover, heedfulness is controlling one's own thought, it is considering the thought of others<sup>149</sup>, it is giving attention to delight in the Dharma by not being a slave to delight in the mental defilements. . . . This is called heedfulness. He that has faith and heedfulness, Guhyakādhipati, his conduct results from right energy<sup>150</sup>. With this energy, he acquires<sup>151</sup> those dharmas that are the cause of heedfulness and faith. He that has faith and heedfulness and energy, Guhyakādhipati, should apply himself in mindfulness and awareness. Through mindfulness and awareness he does not lose all the conditions favourable to enlightenment. He that has faith and heedfulness and energy and mindfulness and awareness, Guhyakādhipati, should apply himself in thorough<sup>152</sup> practise. For a bodhisattva that is thoroughly practised, Guhyakādhipati, perceives what is as that which is, he perceives what is not as that which is not. . . . that the eye exists by convention and so on'.<sup>153</sup>

#### 6.4 Conclusion.

This paper asserts that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ it is the foremost responsibility of a bodhisattva to give all that he has to promote the advantage of others. In the Śs and ŚSKĀ, then, the way of the bodhisattva is the way of absolute, unqualified giving.

p. 202, lns. 9–15; MORRIS & HARDY, II, § 14, pp. 16–17; & RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, pp. 225–226. The text & tr. of this passage is given as Formula B2 in Appendix B, pp. 205ff.

<sup>149</sup> I.e., āraḥṣā: cf. BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 357, n. 1; & EDGERTON, p. 102.

<sup>150</sup> I.e., ānulomikena vīryeṇa: cf. ibid., pp. 96–97.

<sup>151</sup> I.e., samudānayaṭi: cf. ibid., p. 573.

<sup>152</sup> I.e., yonīśas: cf. ibid., p. 448, def. 2.

<sup>153</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 357, lns. 1–11:

uktam hy āryatathāgataguhyasūtre | tatra katamo 'pramādo'<sup>1</sup>  
 yad indriyaṣaṃvaraḥ | sa cakṣuṣā rūpāṇi dṛṣṭvā na nimittagrāhī  
 bhavati<sup>1</sup> nānuvyañjanagrāhī | evaṃ yāvan manasā dharmān vi-  
 jñāya na nimittagrāhī bhavati<sup>1</sup> nānuvyañjanagrāhī | sarvadharṃeṣv  
 āsvādaṃ cādinavaṃ ca niḥsaraṇaṃ ca yathābhūtaṃ prajānāti<sup>1</sup>  
 ayam ucyate 'pramādaḥ || punaraparam apramādo yat svacittasya  
 damaṇaṃ paracittasyāraḥṣā kleśarater aparikarmaṇā dharmarater  
 anuvartanaṃ yāvad ayam ucyate 'pramādaḥ | yasya guhyakād-  
 hipate śraddhā cāpramādaś ca tasyānulomikena vīryeṇa kāryaṃ<sup>1</sup>  
 yena tān apramādakāraṇān śraddhākāraṇāṃś ca dharmān samudā-  
 nayati | yasya guhyakādhipate śraddhā cāpramādaś ca vīryaṃ  
 ca tena smṛtisamprajanye yogaḥ karaṇīyaḥ | yena smṛtisampra-  
 janyena sarvān bodhipakṣān dharmān na vipraṇāśayati | yasya  
 guhyakādhiyate śraddhā cāpramādaś ca vīryaṃ ca smṛtisampra-  
 janyaṃ ca tena yonīśaḥ prayoge yogaḥ karaṇīyaḥ | yonīśaḥ prayukto  
 hi guhyakādhipate bodhisatvo yad asti tad astīti prajānāti<sup>1</sup> yan nāsti  
 tan nāstīti prajānāti | yāvad asti saṃvṛtyā cakṣur ity ādi ||

This paper also asserts that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ the benefit associated with the gifts of a bodhisattva is in direct proportion to their quality and quantity. In the Śs and ŚSKĀ, then, a bodhisattva is obliged to ensure that his gifts—his person, enjoyments and merit—are suitably preserved, purified and increased.

That which a bodhisattva gives is expected to be devoid of dharmas that are bad and replaced<sup>etc</sup> with dharmas that are good. It is asserted that Ś considers that such a beneficial state is attained by the practice of the four right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*): *a.*) a bodhisattva is expected to strive not to reduce the quality of his gifts through the production of any bad dharmas that do not exist; *b.*) he is to strive to increase the quality of his gifts through the destruction of any bad dharmas that exist; *c.*) he is to strive to increase the quantity of his gifts through the production of good dharmas that do not exist; and *d.*) he is to strive to ensure the constant and abundant supply of his gifts through the maintenance and development of good dharmas that exist.

§ 4<sup>154</sup> considers Ś's conception of the preservation of gifts by the practice of the first right striving. § 5<sup>155</sup> considers his conception of the purification of gifts by the practice of the second right striving. § 6<sup>156</sup> considers his description of the increase of gifts by the practice of the third and fourth right strivings. It remains only to summarise the rôle of increase in the Śs and ŚSKĀ.

Table 1.1<sup>157</sup> shows that the twenty-second to twenty-seventh<sup>57th</sup> verses of the ŚSKĀ and sixteenth to nineteenth chapters of the Śs discuss the means by which a bodhisattva is expected to increase his person, enjoyments and merit. This table also shows that Ś's treatment of the three forms of increase—like his treatment of the three forms of preservation and purification—is unequal. Yet, unlike his discussion of preservation and purification—where most attention is given to the preservation and purification of one's person—Ś is most concerned with the increase of merit (*puṇya* ≡ *śubha*).

The argument of § 6<sup>158</sup> can be summarised under five headings: *i.*) increase (*vṛddhi*); *ii.*) increase of one's self (*ātmabhāvavṛddhi*); *iii.*) increase of enjoyments (*bhogavṛddhi*); *iv.*) increase of merit (*puṇyavṛddhi*); and *v.*) the right strivings (*samyakpradhānas*).

*Vṛddhi.* Ś initially explains why a bodhisattva should practice increase. The practice of preservation and purification makes those things that a bodhisattva possesses suitable for giving. Yet a bodhisattva may possess

<sup>154</sup> Pp. 93ff..

<sup>155</sup> Pp. 117ff..

<sup>156</sup> Pp. 159ff..

<sup>157</sup> P. 16.

<sup>158</sup> Pp. 159ff..

little. If so, he is obliged to increase the quantity of his possessions, that is, his person, enjoyments and merit. If he succeeds, he gives himself greater opportunity to benefit others and a greater chance of attaining Buddhahood.

*Ātmabhāvaṛddhi.* Ś then describes practices for the increase of one's person. A bodhisattva is to begin by engaging in the generation of the ten good dharmas. He is never to generate bad dharmas by asserting himself to the detriment of others. He is always to sacrifice himself for the benefit of others. Self denial is thought to increase—rather than decrease—strength (*bala*). Likewise, it is thought that a bodhisattva that is constantly active for the benefit of others has abundant energy (*vīrya*) and remains tireless. Self centred inactivity ( $\equiv$  *ālasya*)—not selfless activity ( $\equiv$  *anālasya*)—is thought to make a bodhisattva weary.

*Bhogavṛddhi.* Ś then describes the practice of the increase of enjoyments. When giving enjoyments, a bodhisattva is to be guided by an understanding of emptiness (*śūnyatā*) and motivated by compassion (*karuṇā*).<sup>159</sup> As a result of practising the perfection of wisdom, he should not distinguish his own interests (*svārtha*) from those of others (*parārtha*). Self interest and the interests of others should be considered identical. He is to give gifts that are free of self interest.

For Ś it is not enough that a bodhisattva identifies his own advantage with that of others, he must also experience a profound sense of the suffering of others and of the urgent need to alleviate suffering. Gifts are always to be given with great compassion. Wisdom (*prajñā*)—in the Śs and ŚSKĀ—is never without compassion.<sup>160</sup>

*Puṇyavṛddhi.* Next is the description of the means by which a bodhisattva is to prepare his person for the increase of merit proper. Ś considers it essential for a bodhisattva to engage in all of his practices—but especially the increase of merit—with a suitable mental condition. It is imperative, he believes, that a bodhisattva firmly establish: *a.*) his resolve (*vyavasāya*) to give all that he has to others; *b.*) his good intention (*svāśaya*) towards others; and *c.*) his great compassion towards others. Any deficiency in these qualities is thought to impede the benefit that a bodhisattva gives to others.

After reaffirming the need for a bodhisattva to be absolutely committed to promoting the well being of all sentient beings, Ś describes four

<sup>159</sup> Or great compassion (*mahākaruṇā*).

<sup>160</sup> For the centrality of the practice of compassion (*karuṇā*), means of approach (*upāya*) & wisdom (*prajñā*), cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation', pp. 115ff.; & Idem, 'Philosophy', p. 200. Cf. also NAGAO, 'Buddha-kāya', p. 103; & Idem, 'Ascent', p. 203.

practices associated with the increase of merit proper: *i.*) the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjās*); *ii.*) the four dharmas leading to specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*); *iii.*) the five faculties (*indriyas*) and powers (*balas*); and *iv.*) the recollection of the Three Jewels (*ratnatrayānusmṛti*).

The benefits (*anuśaṃsas*) arising from these four practices include: *a.*) birth untainted by the impurity of the womb (*garbhamala*); *b.*) communion with the Buddhas (*buddhasamavadhāna*); *c.*) the production of unshakeable faith (*śraddhā*) in the supreme value of the Buddhas, the Dharma and the bodhisattvas (Saṃgha); *d.*) the production of sufficient energy (*vīrya*) to live by the Dharma, to travel the way of the bodhisattvas and eventually, to attain Buddhahood; *e.*) the production of the ability to unite one's mind (*citta*) with the Dharma; and *f.*) and the production of the qualities (*guṇas*) of exalted bodhisattvas and Buddhas.

These four practices unite devotion and concentration. They also gradually transform an incipient bodhisattva into a practitioner of considerable attainment. Ś seems to expect a bodhisattva to engage in these practices and obtain their results through worship and meditation while alone in the forest.

While in the forest, a bodhisattva is to engage in worship and meditation, but while in society, he is to engage in beneficial social action. Having learnt—through devotional and meditative practices—the importance of altruism, he is obliged to practice altruism in his daily life. Ś considers it imperative that a bodhisattva dedicate all his daily actions—those that are small, as much as those that are great—to the benefit of sentient beings (*sattvārtha*). When with others, he is to overcome all reticence. It is considered critical that he strive to give the spiritual gift of the Dharma (*nirāmiṣadharmadāna*). A bodhisattva, once he is learned, is never to stop teaching the Dharma. The measure of the attainment of a bodhisattva, it seems, is the extent to which he benefits others in thought, word and action. In the ŚS and ŚSKĀ this is almost the final injunction.

*Samyakpradhānas.* Finally, having completed his description of preservation, purification and increase Ś names the practice that informs his conception of the way—the practice of the four right strivings.

According to Ś, the path to be followed by a bodhisattva consists of nothing but the manipulation of dharmas. Dharmas that are bad are to be defeated through the preservation and purification of one's person, enjoyments and merit. Dharmas that are good are to be secured through the increase of the same. A bodhisattva is expected to be constantly engaged in the destruction and production of dharmas. And in all of his practices he is to apply faith, energy, heedfulness and mindfulness and awareness. Although he is engaged in preliminary trainings, he is to recollect that his trainings are worthy of the Buddha himself.

## 7. POSTSCRIPT.

Scholastics are systematizers and as such they seek to bring unity to a tradition. To accomplish this, scholastic philosophers have often considered it necessary to create (or, less charitably, to impose) a monothetic vision on a polysemic textual corpus.<sup>1</sup>

§ 3.4<sup>2</sup> concludes that the content, structure and theme of the Śs and ŚSKĀ is determined by Ś's conception of giving. It is concluded, in short, that Ś considers it the foremost responsibility of a bodhisattva to practice complete giving. He is expected to give without reservation all that he possesses, notably his person, enjoyments and merit. Complete giving is considered the basis of the attainment of the unsurpassed and perfect enlightenment of the Buddha.

§ 4.4<sup>3</sup> concludes that Ś considers the practice of giving facilitated by the practice of preservation. It concludes that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ a bodhisattva is expected to carefully preserve the quality of that which he is to give<sup>4</sup> by the practice of the first right striving—the non production of non existing bad dharmas.

§ 5.4<sup>5</sup> concludes that in the Śs and ŚSKĀ the practice of giving is also thought facilitated by the practice of purification. It is concluded that a bodhisattva is expected to fastidiously purify his gifts<sup>6</sup> by the practice of the second right striving—the destruction of existing bad dharmas.

§ 6.4<sup>7</sup> concludes that Ś also considers the practice of giving facilitated by the practice of increase. It concludes that a bodhisattva is expected to increase the quantity of that which he is to give<sup>8</sup> by the practice of the third and fourth right strivings—the production of non existing good dharmas and the development and increase of existing good dharmas.

In the Śs and ŚSKĀ, then, the practice of the four right strivings precedes and supports the practice of complete giving. Just as complete giving is considered fundamental to the attainment of enlightenment, so the right strivings are fundamental to the attainment of complete giving.

---

<sup>1</sup> CABEZÓN, *Language*, p. 55.

<sup>2</sup> Pp. 88ff..

<sup>3</sup> Pp. 113ff..

<sup>4</sup> Viz. his person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>5</sup> Pp. 154ff..

<sup>6</sup> Viz. his person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>7</sup> Pp. 185ff..

<sup>8</sup> Viz. his person, enjoyments & merit.

In the Śs and ŚSKĀ, then, the right strivings are essentially the foundation of the way of the bodhisattva (*bodhisattvamārga*).

*samyakpradhānas* —→ *sarvotsarjana* —→ *samyaksambodhi*

Figure 7.1: The *bodhisattvamārga*—A.

The way of the bodhisattva as described by Ś in the Śs and ŚSKĀ is represented in Figure 7.1<sup>9</sup> and in more detail in Figure 7.2<sup>10</sup>.

Both figures represent the way as a simple lineal progression. They suggest that a bodhisattva is only expected to pass through three stages: from the practice of the right strivings, through the practice of complete giving, to the attainment of complete and perfect enlightenment.

The theoretical simplicity of this three fold *schema* conceals the subtlety required to put it into practice. In theory it is suggested that a bodhisattva can progress towards enlightenment by becoming increasingly skilled at the manipulation of dharmas. In practice it is found that in order to attain the complete and perfect enlightenment of a Buddha, a bodhisattva will have to increasingly perceive that ultimately there are no dharmas to be manipulated :

Indeed, it was said in the *Dharmasaṃgītisūtra*: ‘ “Truth<sup>11</sup>, truth, youth of good family, that is a name for emptiness. And this emptiness neither arises nor ceases”. He said: “Indeed, if dharmas are said to be empty by the Blessed One, from this, all dharmas shall neither arise nor cease”. Nirārambha the bodhisattva said: “Indeed, youth of good family, so—as you well know—all dharmas neither arise nor cease”. He said: “This which was said by the Blessed One—“conditioned dharmas arise and cease”—what is the sense (purpose) of this which was said by the Tathāgata?” He said: “The disposition<sup>12</sup> of the world, youth of good family, is predisposed<sup>13</sup> to arising and ceasing. Then, the Tathāgata, full of great compassion, for the sake of removing fear from the world, according to common practice, said that “they<sup>14</sup> arise and cease”. But, in this respect, there is neither arising nor ceasing of any dharma”.’<sup>15</sup>

<sup>9</sup> P. 190.

<sup>10</sup> P. 191.

<sup>11</sup> I.e., *tathatā*, lit. such-ness or thus-ness: cf. EDGERTON, p. 248; CONZE, *Dictionary*, pp. 186–187; & TAKASAKI, pp. 53 & 103.

<sup>12</sup> I.e., *saṃniveśa*: cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 287, ln. 7; WAYMAN, *Calming*, p. 486; EDGERTON, p. 559; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 401.

<sup>13</sup> I.e., *abhiniviṣṭa*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 20 & 53; CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 61; & WAYMAN, *Calming*, p. 484.

<sup>14</sup> Viz. dharmas.

<sup>15</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Āḥāra-samuccaya*’, p. 263, lns. 1–8:

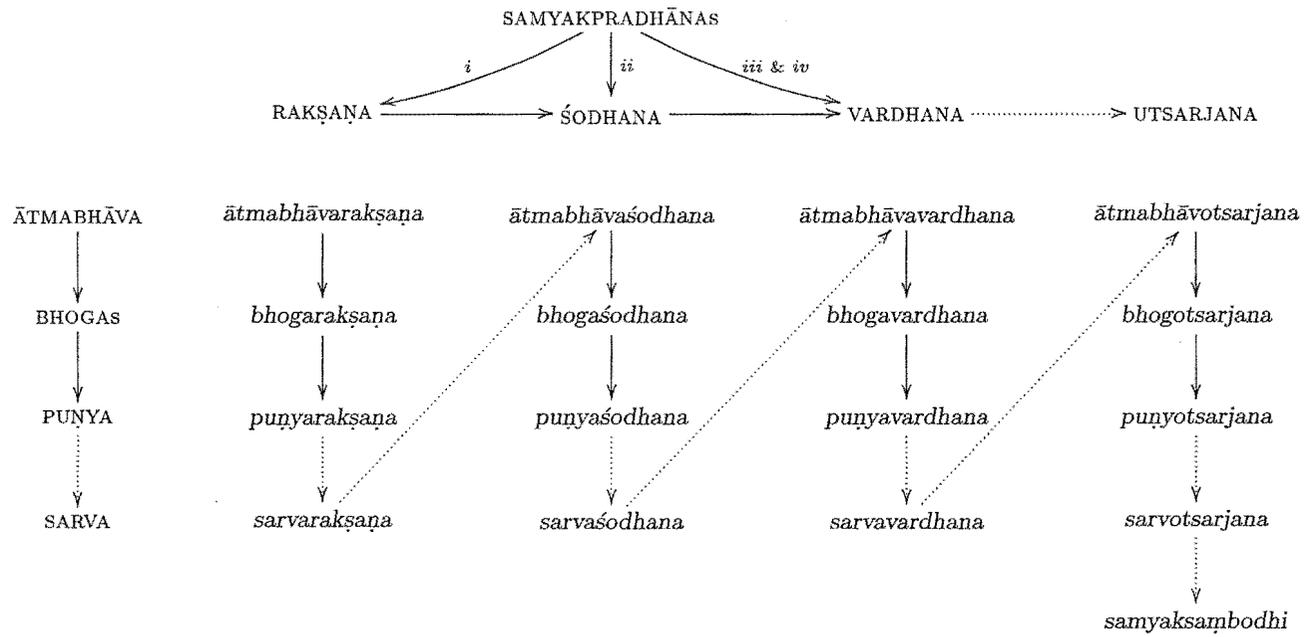


Figure 7.2: The *bodhisattvamārga*—B (for key cf. n. 4 on p. x).

---

*dharmasaṃgītyām apy uktaṃ | tathatā tathateti kulaputra sūnyatāyā etad adhivacanaṃ | sā ca sūnyatā notpadyate na nirudhyate | āha | yady evaṃ dharmāḥ sūnyā uktā bhagavatā tasmāt sarvadharmā notpadyante na nirotsyante | nirārambho bodhisatvaḥ | āha | evam eva kulaputra tathā yathābhisambudhyase sarvadharmā notpadyante na nirudhyante | āha | yadetad uktaṃ bhagavatā saṃskṛtā dharmā utpadyante nirudhyante cety asya tathāgatabhāṣitasya ko 'bhiprāyaḥ | āha | utpādanirodhābhiniṣṭaḥ kulaputra lokasaṃniveśaḥ | tatra tathāgato mahākāruṇiko lokasyottrāsapada-parihārārthaṃ vyavahāraśāśā uktavān utpadyante nirudhyante ceti | na cātra kasyacid dharmasyotpādo na nirodha iti ||*

This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:150cd, p. 588, ln. 13–p. 589, ln. 8. For a similar position, cf. also GARFIELD, MMK XVIII:6, pp. 49 & 249. For the rôle of convention (*saṃvṛti*), cf. also BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 256, lns. 9–18. This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:155, p. 593, ln. 9–p. 594, ln. 2.

## Appendix A

### ŚSKĀ.

#### Text & Translation.

*yadā mama pareṣāṃ ca bhayaṃ duṣkhaṃ ca na priyaṃ |  
tadātmanaḥ ko viśeṣo yat taṃ rakṣāmi netaraṃ || 1 ||*<sup>1</sup>

Prologue.

‘When fear and suffering are disliked by myself and others,  
then about the self, what is special, that I preserve it, not an-  
other?’ (1)

*duṣkhāntaṃ kartukāmena sukhāntaṃ gantum icchatā |  
śraddhāmūlaṃ dṛḍhīkṛtya bodhau kāryā matir dṛḍhā || 2 ||*<sup>2</sup>

By he that wishes to destroy suffering, by he that strives to reach  
the limits of happiness,  
after strengthening the basis which is faith, the mind should be set  
firm on enlightenment. (2)

*(sūtrānteṣu durvijñeyo)<sup>†3</sup> bodhisatvasya saṃvaraḥ |  
marmasthānāny ato vidyād yenānāpattiko bhavet || 3 ||*<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. xxxix. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 2, lns. 10–11.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xxxix. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 2, lns. 13–14.

<sup>3</sup> Variant readings exist for the first *pāda* of the third verse: cf. *ibid.*, p. xxxix, ... *mahāyānād*; PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*, p. 69, n. 92, *durvijñeyo mahāyānād*; & a restoration suggested by Prof. P. HARRISON, *sūtreṣu vistareṇokto*.

It is curious to note that BENDALL, ‘*Ākṣāsamuccaya*’, p. 17, lns. 11–12, contains a clause which does not appear in the Cambridge Ms., 12a: *yāni hi...°oktāni ||*. In agreement with the Ms. a more satisfactory reading for the passage might be:

*‘ durvijñeyo ‘vistaroktatvād bodhisatvasya saṃvaraḥ ‘tataḥ kiṃ  
yuktaṃ || marmasthānāny ato vidyād yenānāpattiko bhavet ||  
katamāni ca tāni marmasthānāni || yad uta || ātmabhāvasya  
bhogānāṃ tryadhvavṛtteḥ śubhasya ca | utsargaḥ sarvasatvebhyas  
tad rakṣāsuddhivardhanam || (cf. *ibid.*, p. 17, lns. 10–14)*

The present writer would like to accept ‘*durvijñeyo*’ *vistaroktatvād bodhisatvasya saṃvaraḥ*’ as the first line of the third verse of the ŚSKĀ. Unfortunately, the extra syllable which attends the abstract form of *ukta* would appear to prevent this.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xxxix. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 17, lns. 10–11.

The restraint (practice) of a bodhisattva is hard to discern in the sūtras;  
hence he should know the essential principles so that he may become a non transgressor. (3)

Giving one's  
person, enjoyments  
& merit.

ātmabhāvasya bhogānām tryadhvavṛtteḥ śubhasya ca |  
utsargaḥ sarvasatvebhyas tadrakṣāsuddhivardhanam || 4 || <sup>5</sup>

The gift to all sentient beings of one's person <sup>6</sup>, enjoyments <sup>7</sup> and

<sup>5</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. xl. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 17, lns. 13–14.

<sup>6</sup> I.e., ātmabhāva. Fr. ātman + bhāva: lit. self being, the state of being a self, the condition of self, selfhood.

In: EDGERTON, p. 92, it is held that ātmabhāva = śarīra, i.e., the physical body. The present writer considers this tr. narrow. It does not account for the full range of meanings associated with ātmabhāva in the Śs & ŚSKā.

In these texts ātmabhāva—like the five aggregates (*skandhas*) (cf. KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy', p. 202; & NAGAO, 'Ontology', p. 164.)—signifies the physical body and the mind.

In theory, ātmabhāva ≡ *skandhas*: a.) form (physical body) (*rūpa*); b.) perception (*vedanā*); c.) cognition (ideation) (*saṃjñā*); d.) volition (*saṃskāra*); & e.) consciousness (*viññāna*). In practice, ātmabhāva refers to each aggregate either alone or together with the others. For the five aggregates, cf. KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § XXII, p. 5; TAKASAKI, pp. 107ff.; & EDGERTON, p. 607, def. 2.

Ātmabhāva, then, signifies all dharmas that constitute individual existence: cf. MROZIK, pp. 16ff.. This is clearly described in: BARNETT, p. 104, n. 1:

The word *ātma-bhāva*, literally "condition of self," i.e. person or body, properly denotes the plexus of concepts which collectively form the idea of an individual being as conceived by himself.

Ātmabhāva might be referred to as one's entire person, or in brief, as one's person: cf. BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. xl; BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 19; BARNETT, p. 104; HEDINGER, p. 10, n. 39; & MROZIK, p. 20.

<sup>7</sup> I.e., *bhoga*. Fr. √ *bhuj*, i.e., to enjoy, use, possess. *Bhoga* signifies: i.) enjoyment, use, or possession; & ii.) an object of enjoyment, use, or possession: cf. HEDINGER, p. 10, n. 40. In terms of def. 2, *bhogas* signify the six external sense-fields (*bāhyāyatanas*) which are the objects of the six internal sense-fields (*ādhyātmikāyatanas*): cf. EDGERTON, p. 101, def. 5; & TAKASAKI, pp. 107ff..

The external sense-fields are: a.) form (*rūpa*); b.) sound (*śabda*); c.) smell (*gandha*); d.) taste (*rasa*); e.) tangible object (*spraṣṭavya*); & f.) mind-object (*dharma*).

The internal sense-fields are: a.) eyes (*caḥṣus*); b.) ears (*śrota*); c.) nose (*ghrāṇa*); d.) tongue (*jihvā*); e.) body (*kāya*); & f.) mind (*manas*).

*Bhogas* are the external sense-objects identified by the internal sense-fields with sensations (*vedanās*) of pleasure or happiness (*sukha*).

As objects or items of enjoyment—cf. MROZIK, p. 169—*bhogas* might be referred to as pleasures or enjoyments: cf. CROSBY & SKILTON, p. 20; BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. xl; & BENDALL & ROUSE, p. 19.

merit<sup>8</sup> arising in the three times<sup>9</sup> ;  
the preservation, purification and increase of these<sup>10</sup>. (4)<sup>11</sup>

*paribhogāya satvānām ātmabhāvādi dīyate |*  
*araksite kuto bhogaḥ kiṃ dattaṃ yan na bhujyate || 5 ||*<sup>12</sup>

Preserving one's  
person.

For the enjoyment of sentient beings one's person and so on<sup>13</sup> are  
given.  
If not preserved<sup>14</sup>, where is the enjoyment? If not enjoyed, what  
is a gift? (5)

*tasmāt satvopabhogārtham ātmabhāvādi pālayet |*  
*kalyāṇamitrānutsargāt sūtrāṇām ca sadekṣaṇāt || 6 ||*<sup>15</sup>

Therefore for the enjoyment of sentient beings one's person and so  
on should be preserved ;  
by not forsaking spiritual friend(s) and by constant study<sup>16</sup> of the  
sūtras. (6)

*tatrātmabhāve kā rakṣā yadanarthavivarjanam |*  
*kenaitallabhyate sarvaṃ niṣphalasyandavarjanāt || 7 ||*<sup>17</sup>

Then regarding one's person, what is preservation? Eschewing  
that which is evil.  
How is all this found? By eschewing fruitless outcomes<sup>18</sup>. (7)

<sup>8</sup> I.e., *śubha*. Fr. √ *śubh* which means: *i.*) to beautify, embellish & adorn ;  
& *ii.*) to prepare, make fit or ready. *Śubha* signifies: *i.*) anything bright or  
beautiful; & *ii.*) benefit, service, good or virtuous action. In terms of def. 2,  
*śubha* is synonymous with *puṇya*, i.e., merit.

<sup>9</sup> I.e., *tryadhva*: cf. EDGERTON, p.260. This ref. to the past, present &  
future.

<sup>10</sup> Viz. one's person, enjoyments & merit.

<sup>11</sup> Following Ś's commentary in: BENDALL, '*Ākṣāsamuccaya*', p. 18, lns. 8-9,  
tr. at the end of § 3.2, pp. 72ff.

<sup>12</sup> Ibid., p. xl. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 34, lns. 11-12.

<sup>13</sup> I.e., *ātmabhāvādi*. This ref. to one's person, enjoyments and merit.

<sup>14</sup> I.e., one's person, enjoyments and merit.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid., p. xl. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 34, lns. 13-14 & 18; p. 41, lns. 9, 10 & 13; &  
p. 42, ln. 9.

<sup>16</sup> I.e., *ikṣaṇa*, here ≡ *darśana*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 41, ln. 13. For Ś studying seems to  
involve not only looking at but also looking after, experiencing and contemplat-  
ing.

<sup>17</sup> Ibid., p. xli. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 44, lns. 19-20; & p. 116, ln. 12.

<sup>18</sup> I.e., *niṣphalasyandas*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 614. In this paper *phala* is tr. as  
fruit. An alternative tr. would be effect: cf. KAJIYAMA, '*Tarkabhāṣā*', pp. 223  
& 248; & NAGAO, '*Logic*', p. 127.

*etat sidhyet sadā smṛtyā (sadāsmṛtyā)† smṛtis tīvrādarād bhavet |  
ādarah śamamāhātmyam jñātvātāpena jāyate || 8 ||*<sup>19</sup>

This should be attained by constant mindfulness. Mindfulness should arise from intense devotion. Devotion—having been known as the greatness of tranquility<sup>20</sup>—arises from zeal. (8)

*samāhito yathābhūtaṃ prajānātīty avadan muniḥ |  
śamāc ca na calec cittam bāhyaceṣṭānivartanāt || 9 ||*<sup>21</sup>

'He that is concentrated (on an object)<sup>22</sup> understands in accordance with the truth', said the Muni. And the mind should not depart from tranquility by abstaining from outward activity. (9)

*sarvatṛācapalo mandam atisnigdhabhībhaṣaṇāt |  
āvarjayej janaṃ bhavyam ādeyaś cāpi jāyate || 10 ||*<sup>23</sup>

Always steady, by speaking very affectionately, gradually, he should attract suitable people. And thus he becomes acceptable<sup>24</sup>. (10)

<sup>19</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xli. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 118, ln. 3; & p. 119, lns. 1 & 2-3.

<sup>20</sup> I.e., *śamamāhātmya*, here ≡ *śamathamāhātmya* & *śamasya māhātmyam*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 119, lns. 2 & 9.

The noun *māhātmya* is fr. the adj. *mahātman*. It means high-mindedness, majesty & dignity: cf. MONIER-WILLIAMS, pp. 796 & 815.

For the use of *mahātman* by Ś, cf. § 3.3.2, pp. 82ff., & BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 23, ln. 15.

For the use of *māhātmya*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 119, lns. 1ff.; & p. 145, lns. 11-15. In the latter passage, the association between *māhātmya* & impartiality or benevolence (*samatā*) is marked.

<sup>21</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xli. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 119, lns. 9-10; & p. 123, lns. 13-14.

<sup>22</sup> I.e., *samāhita*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 570; & SAITO, 'Buddhapālitamūlamadhyamakavṛtti', I, p. 149, ln. 19. Here *samāhita* ≡ *samāhitamanas*: cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 119, ln. 11. This has influenced previous translations of this passage: 'whoso hath fixed mind' in: *ibid.*, p. xli; & 'he that hath centred thought' in: BARNETT, p. 104.

For ref. to the occurrence of this passage in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramatī*, cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 10, ln. 3 & n. 1; & BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 119, n. 5. For add. ref., cf. *ibid.*, p. 403.

<sup>23</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 124, lns. 3-4.

<sup>24</sup> I.e., *ādeya*. This adj. means welcome, acceptable, pleasing & agreeable: cf. EDGERTON, p. 94.

*anādeyaṃ tu taṃ lokaḥ paribhūya jināṅkuraṃ |*  
*bhasmacchanno yathā vahnīḥ pacyeta narakādiṣu || 11 ||* <sup>25</sup>

But the inhabitants of the world, having rebuked <sup>26</sup> the shoot of the Jina as one that is unacceptable, as fire covered with ashes, they could burn <sup>27</sup> in the hells and so on. (11)

*ratnameghe jinenoktas tena saṃkṣepasamvaraḥ |*  
*yenāprasādaḥ satvānāṃ tad yatnena vivarjayet || 12 ||* <sup>28</sup>

Therefore a concise rule <sup>29</sup> was related by the Jina in the *Ratnamegha*:  
He should carefully eschew that which causes the disfavour of sentient beings. (12)

*eṣā rakṣātmabhāvasya bhaiṣajyavasanādibhiḥ |*  
*ātmatṛṣṇopabhogāt tu klišṭāpattiḥ prajāyate || 13 ||* <sup>30</sup>

This is the preservation of one's person with medicines, clothes and so on.  
But grievous misfortune is produced by the enjoyment of one's own desires. (13)

*sukṛtārambhiṇā bhāvyaṃ mātrajñena ca sarvata(h)<sup>†</sup> |*  
*iti śikṣāpadād asya bhogarakṣā na duṣkarā || 14 ||* <sup>31</sup>

Preserving enjoyments.

He must be one who undertakes good actions and one who is moderate <sup>32</sup> completely:  
by this moral precept, the preservation of enjoyments is not difficult for him. (14)

*svārthavipākavaitṛṣṇyāc chubhaṃ saṃrakṣitaṃ bhavet |*  
*paścāttāpaṃ na kurvīta na ca kṛtvā prakāśayet || 15 ||* <sup>33</sup>

Preserving merit.

<sup>25</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 124, lns. 10-11.

<sup>26</sup> I.e., *paribhūya*, in the sense given to *paribhāṣati* & *paribhāṣaka* in: EDGERTON, p. 328.

<sup>27</sup> I.e., *pacyeta*. For *pacyate*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 314.

<sup>28</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 124, lns. 13-14.

<sup>29</sup> I.e., *saṃvara*, which here, seems to be synonymous with *saṃgraha*. For the use of *saṃgraha*, cf. *ibid.*, p. 127, lns. 6-7.

<sup>30</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xliii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 127, lns. 8 & 14; & p. 143, lns. 1 & 3.

<sup>31</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xliii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 143, lns. 19-20.

<sup>32</sup> I.e., *mātrajña*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 429.

<sup>33</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xliii. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 146, lns. 21-22; p. 147, lns. 18-19 & 20; & p. 148, lns. 1-2.

Merit should be preserved by freedom from desire for the ripening of self interest.

Having given<sup>34</sup> he should not feel regret. And having acted he should not proclaim his actions. (15)

*lābhasatkārahītaḥ syād unnatiṃ varjayet sadā |  
bodhisatvaḥ prasannaḥ syād dharme vimatiṃ utsrjet || 16 ||*<sup>35</sup>

He should fear profit and honour. He should eschew pride constantly.

A bodhisattva should be faithful<sup>36</sup>. He should eschew doubt in the Dharma. (16)

Purifying one's person.

*śodhitasyātmabhāvasya bhogaḥ pathyo bhaviṣyati |  
samyaksiddhasya bhaktasya niṣkaṇasyeva dehinām || 17 ||*<sup>37</sup>

When one's person is purified, it will become a wholesome object of enjoyment<sup>38</sup>

for sentient beings, as when boiled rice—free from the kernel and so on<sup>39</sup>—is correctly prepared. (17)

*trṇacchannaṃ yathā śasyaṃ rogaiḥ sīdati naidhate |  
buddhāṅkuras tathā vṛddhiṃ kleśacchanno na gacchati || 18 ||*<sup>40</sup>

As grain covered by weeds wastes away with disease, not growing strong;

so a shoot of the Buddha covered by mental defilements, does not undergo growth. (18)

*ātmabhāvasya kā śuddhiḥ pāpakleśaviśodhanaṃ |  
saṃbuddhoktyarthasāreṇa yatnābhāve tv apāyagaḥ || 19 ||*<sup>41</sup>

<sup>34</sup> I.e., *datvā*: cf. Ś's commentary in: BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. 147, ln. 20.

<sup>35</sup> Ibid., p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 148, lns. 6–7.

<sup>36</sup> I.e., *prasanna*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 388.

<sup>37</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 158, lns. 14–15.

<sup>38</sup> I.e., *bhogaḥ pathyaḥ*, which signifies both a wholesome object of enjoyment & wholesome enjoyment.

<sup>39</sup> I.e., *niṣkaṇa*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 308 & 165. *Niṣkaṇa* is thought to mean free of the red coating between the kernel and the husk.

<sup>40</sup> BENDALL, 'Çikṣāsamuccaya', p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 159, lns. 20–21.

<sup>41</sup> Ibid., p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 160, lns. 2–3.

What is the purification of one's person? Purification from evil and mental defilements, in agreement with the essential meaning of the words of the Perfect Buddhas. But in the absence of endeavour, he enters into the (three) evil paths<sup>42</sup>. (19)

*kṣameta śrutam eṣeta saṃśrayeta vanaṃ tataḥ |  
samādhānāya yujyeta bhāvayed aśubhādikam || 20 ||*<sup>43</sup>

He should be patient. He should seek sacred knowledge. Then he should resort to the forest.  
He should concentrate on *samādhi*. He should cultivate (the meditation on) the impurities and so on. (20)

*bhogaśuddhiṃ ca jānīyāt samyagājīvaśodhanāt |  
śūnyatākaruṇāgarbhaceṣṭitāt puṇyaśodhanam || 21 ||*<sup>44</sup>

Purifying  
enjoyments &  
merit.

And he should experience the purification of enjoyments by the purification of right livelihood, the purification of merit by actions full of emptiness and compassion. (21)

*gṛhītāraḥ subahavaḥ svalpaṃ cedam anena kiṃ |  
na cātīrṭtījanakaṃ vardhanīyam idaṃ tataḥ || 22 ||*<sup>45</sup>

Increasing one's  
person &  
enjoyments.

Those who take are many and this is little. What is the point of it?  
And this is not producing supreme satisfaction<sup>46</sup>. For that reason this is to be increased. (22)

*ātmabhāvasya kā vṛddhir balānālasavyavardhanaṃ |  
śūnyatākaruṇāgarbhād dānād bhogasya vardhanaṃ || 23 ||*<sup>47</sup>

What is the growth of one's person? It is the growth of strength and non idleness.  
The increase of enjoyment arises from giving full of emptiness and compassion. (23)

kṛtvādāv eva yatnena vyavasāyāśayau dṛḍhau |  
karuṇām ca puraskṛtya yateta śubhavṛddhaye || 24 || <sup>48</sup>

Increasing merit.

So at first having carefully established both resolve and intention <sup>49</sup>,  
and having placed compassion to the fore, he should strive after  
the increase of merit. (24)

bhadracaryāvidhiḥ kāryā vandanādiḥ <sup>50</sup> sadādarāt |  
śraddhādīnām sadābhyāsaḥ (maitrībuddhāyanusmṛtiḥ) <sup>†</sup> <sup>51</sup> || 25 || <sup>52</sup>

The way (rule) <sup>53</sup> of the *Bhadracaryā* <sup>54</sup>—praise (worship) and so

<sup>42</sup> I.e., *apāyas* ≡ the three *durgatis*, i.e., the paths of animals (*tiryagyoni*), hungry spirits (*pretas*), & hell (*naraka*): cf. EDGERTON, p. 46; TAKASAKI, pp. 131–133; & KAJIYAMA, 'Transfer', pp. 4–7. For the six states of existence (*gatis*): cf. BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 256, lns. 13–18. This passage is quoted in: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*, comm. on BCA 9:155, p. 593, ln. 13–p. 594, ln. 3.

<sup>43</sup> BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 179, lns. 5, 6, 7, 8 & 9.

<sup>44</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlv. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 267, ln. 11; & p. 270, ln. 8.

<sup>45</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 273, lns. 13–14.

<sup>46</sup> I.e., *atitrpti*: def. as *buddhatva*, lit. Buddha-ness, in: *ibid.*, p. 273, ln. 15.

<sup>47</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 273, ln. 16; & p. 275, ln. 10.

<sup>48</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 276, lns. 4–5.

<sup>49</sup> I.e., *āśaya*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 109; & CONZE, *Dictionary*, p. 114. For *āśayas* as 'propensities' or 'latent defilements', cf. OLDMEADOW, p. 24, ln. 19 & n. 6.

<sup>50</sup> A variant is noted in the lower margin of the Cambridge Ms.: °*bhiḥ*. It is assumed in: BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 289, n. 10, that this marginal comment suggests an alternative reading of °*ādibhiḥ* (i.e., of *vandanādibhiḥ*). It is noted that such a reading raises doubt about the place of the twenty-fifth verse in the ŚSKĀ. The present writer considers that the marginal comment suggests a reading not of *vandanādibhiḥ* but rather of *vandanābhiḥ*. This agrees with the metre and place of the verse in the ŚSKĀ.

<sup>51</sup> The final *pāda* of the twenty-fifth verse appears to be based upon *Ibid.*, p. 317, ln. 19; & p. 318, ln. 3. In the Cambridge Ms. *maitrī* is referred to in 142a: || *kā maitrī* 'yathāhāryacandra° (cf. *ibid.*, p. 317, ln. 19). In the Ms. *buddhāyanusmṛti* is referred to in 142b: || *kā buddhāyanusmṛtiḥ* | *tatra rāṣṭra°* (cf. *ibid.*, p. 318, lns. 2–3). Considering the separation of these references the fourth *pāda* of the twenty-fifth verse—if accepted—should probably read: *maitrī buddhāyanusmṛtiḥ*.

<sup>52</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 289, ln. 12; p. 316, lns. 3–4; p. 317, ln. 18; & p. 318, ln. 3.

<sup>53</sup> I.e., *vidhi*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 488–489. The title of the sixteenth chapter is *Bhadracaryāvidhi*. For other occurrences of *vidhi*, cf. BENDALL, '*Āikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 193, ln. 3; & p. 273, ln. 10. In: BENDALL & ROUSE, pp. 188, 251 & 263, *vidhi* is tr. as 'rule', 'increase' & 'ordinance', respectively.

<sup>54</sup> *Bhadracaryā*: lit. good conduct. Here Ś refers to the *Bhadracaryāpraṇidhānagāthā* which is included as part of final section of the *Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra*: cf. SUZUKI & IDZUMI, p. 543, ln. 9–p. 548, ln. 2; EDGERTON, p. 406; & CROSBY

on <sup>55</sup>—should be practised with constant devotion,  
the practice of faith and so on <sup>56</sup> should be constant, [and] friendli-  
ness, [and] the recollection of the Buddha(s) and so on <sup>57</sup>. (25)

*sarvāvasthāsu satvārtho dharmadānaṃ nirāmiṣaṃ |*  
*bodhicittaṃ ca puṇyasya vṛddhihetuḥ samāsataḥ || 26 ||* <sup>58</sup>

In every situation, the benefit of sentient beings, the spiritual <sup>59</sup>  
gift of the Dharma <sup>60</sup>,  
and the mind of enlightenment—the cause of the growth of merit  
in short. (26)

*siddhiḥ samyakprahāṇānām apramādāviyojanāt |*  
*smṛtyātha samprajanyena yoniśaś cintanena ca || 27 ||* <sup>61</sup>

Epilogue.

The complete attainment of the right strivings arises from not  
abandoning heedfulness <sup>62</sup>,  
by mindfulness, by awareness and by thorough reflection. (27)

& SKILTON, pp. 9–10. For ref. to the *Bhadracaryā* in the Śs, cf. BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 290, ln. 8; p. 291, lns. 9–10; & p. 297, ln. 1. On the relationship between *bhadracaryā* and the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*), cf. CROSBY & SKILTON, pp. 9–11.

<sup>55</sup> I.e., *vandanā* & the other practices which make up the supreme forms of worship (*anuttarapūjā*). The members which make up the *anuttarapūjā* are variously listed but in: KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § XIV, p. 3, they are given as: *a.*) praise (worship) (*vandanā*); *b.*) worship (reverence) (*pūjanā*); *c.*) confession of evil (*pāpadeśanā*); *d.*) (expression of) thanks (*anumodanā*); *e.*) request (for instruction) (*adhyeṣaṇa*); *f.*) production of the mind of enlightenment (*bodhicittotpāda*); & *g.*) dedication (of the mind of enlightenment or enlightenment) (*pariṇāmana*). Cf. also EDGERTON, pp. 18, 32, 323, 350 & 470. For ref. to the *anuttarapūjā*, cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>56</sup> I.e., *śraddhā* & the other qualities & practices which make up the four dhar-  
mas for the attainment of specific attainment (*viśeṣagāmitā*), the five faculties  
& the five powers. For ref. to *śraddhā* and so on, cf. Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>57</sup> I.e., *buddhānusmṛti* & the other practices which make up the recollections  
(*anusmṛtis*): *a.*) recollection of the Buddha (*buddhānusmṛti*); *b.*) Dharma  
(*dharmānusmṛti*); *c.*) Saṃgha (*saṃghānusmṛti*); *d.*) morality (*śīlānusmṛti*);  
*e.*) renunciation (*tyāgānusmṛti*); & *f.*) gods (*devānusmṛti*). For these, cf. KA-  
SAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § LIV, p. 11; ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 1148–  
1154, pp. 60–61; & EDGERTON, p. 36. For ref. to the first three *anusmṛtis*, cf.  
Table 6.3 on p. 170.

<sup>58</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 348, ln. 3; p. 350,  
lms. 21 & 24; & p. 356, ln. 1.

<sup>59</sup> I.e., *nirāmiṣa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 299, n. 2.

<sup>60</sup> I.e., *dharmadāna*. This term has been variously tr.. In: BENDALL & ROUSE,  
pp. 310–313, it is the 'pious gift', the 'gift of righteousness' & the 'gift of the Law'.

<sup>61</sup> BENDALL, '*Çikṣāsamuccaya*', p. xlvi. Cf. also *ibid.*, p. 356, lms. 8–9.

<sup>62</sup> I.e., *apramāda*: lit. non heedlessness.



## Appendix B

### SAMYAKPRADHĀNAS.

#### Text & Translation.

##### *Śikṣāsamuccaya.*

*tatra anutpannānāṃ pāpakānāṃ akuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ anutpādāyaiva chandaṃ janayati vyāyacchati vīryam ārabhate cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti samyakpraṇidadhāti ity anena rakṣā || utpannānāṃ ca prahāṇāya chandaṃ janayati ity anena śuddhiḥ | anutpannānāṃ kuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ utpādāya chandaṃ janayati | yāvad utpannānāṃ ca sthitāya bhūyobhāvāya chandaṃ janayati ity ādi | anena vṛddhiḥ |*<sup>1</sup>

In that case, he<sup>2</sup> produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well<sup>3</sup> for the non arising of bad, evil dharmas when they have not arisen: by this arises preservation. And he produces desire for the destruction of them<sup>4</sup> when they have arisen: by this arises purification. He produces desire for the arising of good dharmas when they have not arisen and when they have arisen, he produces desire and so on for their<sup>5</sup> continuance, for their increase: by this arises increase.

##### *Mahāvvyutpatti.*

*anutpannānāṃ pāpakānāṃ akuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ anutpādāya chandaṃ janayati. utpannānāṃ pāpakānāṃ akuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ prahāṇāya chandaṃ janayati. anutpannānāṃ kuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ utpādāya chandaṃ janayati. utpannānāṃ kuśalānāṃ dharmāṇāṃ sthitāya bhūyobhāvāya asaṃpramoṣāya paripūraṇāya chandaṃ janayati. vyayacchate. vīryam ārabhati. cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti. samyakpradadhāti.*<sup>6</sup>

He<sup>7</sup> produces desire for the non arising of bad, evil dharmas when they have not arisen. He produces desire for the destruction of bad, evil dharmas when they have arisen. He produces desire for the arising of good dharmas when they have not arisen. He produces

<sup>1</sup> BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', p. 356, lns. 10–14.

<sup>2</sup> Viz. a bodhisattva.

<sup>3</sup> I.e., *samyakpraṇidadhāti*: cf. DAYAL, p. 103, n. 89.

<sup>4</sup> Viz., bad, evil dharmas.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. good dharmas.

<sup>6</sup> ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA, ¶¶ 958–961, p. 51.

<sup>7</sup> Viz. a bodhisattva.

desire for the continuance, increase, non loss<sup>8</sup> and fulfilment<sup>9</sup> of good dharmas when they have arisen. He endeavours. He produces energy. He takes hold of his mind. He exerts himself well.

*Dharmasaṃgraha.*

*katamāni catvāri samyakprahāṇāni | tadyathā || utpannānām kuśalamūlānām saṃrakṣaṇam | anutpannānām samutpādaḥ | utpannānām akuśalānām dharmāṇām prahāṇam | anutpannānām punar anutpādaś ceti ||*<sup>10</sup>

Which are the four right strivings? As here follows. Preservation of the sources of good which have arisen. Production of those<sup>11</sup> that have not arisen. Abandonment<sup>12</sup> of bad dharmas that have arisen. And again non production of those<sup>13</sup> that have not arisen.

*Daśabhūmikasūtra.*

*so 'nutpannānām pāpakānām akuśalānām dharmāṇām anutpādāya cchandaṃ janayati vyāyacchate vīryam ārabhate cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti samyak praṇidadhāti (mots soulignés abrégés: &) | utpannānām pāpakānām akuśalānām dharmāṇām prahāṇāya & anutpannānām kuśalānām dharmāṇām utpādāya & utpannānām kuśalānām dharmāṇām sthitaye 'sampramoṣāya vaipulyāya bhūyobhāvāya bhāvanāya paripūraye & ||*<sup>14</sup>

He generates the wish, endeavours, applies the energy, activates the mind and vows rightly in order not to produce the bad and sinful things which are not yet produced, in order to get rid of the bad and sinful things which are already produced, in order to produce the meritorious things which are not yet produced and in order to preserve, not to lose, to make wide, to increase, to exercise and to fulfil the meritorious things which are already produced.<sup>15</sup>

*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā.*

*pu<sup>o</sup> 16 su<sup>o</sup> 17 bo<sup>o</sup> 18 mahāsattvasya mahāyānam | yad uta catvāri samyakprahāṇi | katamāni catvāri | iha su<sup>o</sup> bo<sup>o</sup> mahāsattvo 'nutpannānām pāpakānām akuśalānām dharmāṇām anutpādāya chandaṃ janayati vyāyacchate vīryam ārabhate cittaṃ pratigṛhṇāti*

<sup>8</sup> I.e., *asaṃpramoṣa*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 83.

<sup>9</sup> I.e., *paripūraṇa*: cf. *ibid.*, p. 327.

<sup>10</sup> KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL, § XLV, p. 10. Cf. also ZANGMO & CHIME, § 45, ¶ 1-4, p. 26.

<sup>11</sup> *Viz.*, good dharmas.

<sup>12</sup> I.e., *prahāṇa*: cf. EDGERTON, pp. 389-390.

<sup>13</sup> *Viz.*, bad dharmas.

<sup>14</sup> RAHDER, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 38 lns. 24-30.

<sup>15</sup> *Tr.* in: HONDA, § Bhūmi IV, ¶ C, p. 167.

<sup>16</sup> I.e., *punaraparaṃ*.

<sup>17</sup> I.e., *subhūte*.

<sup>18</sup> I.e., *bodhisattvasya*.

*samyakpraṇīdadhāti utpannānaṃ pāpakānaṃ akusalānaṃ dharmānaṃ prahāṇāya chandaṃ jan<sup>o</sup> 19 | anuppannānaṃ kuśalānaṃ dharmānaṃ utpādāya chandaṃ jan<sup>o</sup> | utpannānaṃ kuśalānaṃ dharmānaṃ syitaye (sthitaye)† bhūyo bhavāya (bhūyobhāvāya)† asaṃpramoṣāya aparihāṇāya chandaṃ jan<sup>o</sup> | tac cānupalambhayogena | idam api su<sup>o</sup> bo<sup>o</sup> mahāsattvasya mahāyānam | 20*

Moreover, Subhūti, the Mahāyāna of the *bodhisattva-mahāsattva*, that too<sup>21</sup> is the four right strivings. What four? Now, Subhūti, a *bodhisattva-mahāsattva* produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well for the non arising of bad, evil dharmas when they have not arisen. He produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well for the destruction of bad, evil dharmas when they have arisen. He produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well for the arising of good dharmas when they have not arisen. He produces desire, he endeavours, he produces energy, he takes hold of his mind, he exerts himself well for the continuance, increase, non loss, [and] non decrease of good dharmas when they have arisen. Even that, Subhūti, is the Mahāyāna of the *bodhisattva-mahāsattva*.

#### Nikāyas.

#### Formula A.

*idha... bhikkhu [1] anuppannānaṃ pāpakānaṃ akusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ anuppādāya chandaṃ janeti vāyamati viriyaṃ ārabhati cittaṃ paggaṇhāti padahati; [2] uppannānaṃ pāpakānaṃ akusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ pahāṇāya chandaṃ janeti vāyamati viriyaṃ ārabhati cittaṃ paggaṇhāti padahati; [3] anuppannānaṃ kuśalānaṃ dhammānaṃ uppādāya chandaṃ janeti vāyamati viriyaṃ ārabhati cittaṃ paggaṇhāti padahati; [4] uppannānaṃ kuśalānaṃ dhammānaṃ ṭhitiyā asaṃmosāya bhīyyo bhāvāya vepullāya bhāvanāya pāripūriyā chandaṃ janeti vāyamati viriyaṃ ārabhati cittaṃ paggaṇhāti padahati. 22*

In this connection [...] a *bhikkhu* [1] generates purpose, strives, initiates strength, takes hold of his mind, endeavours for the sake of the non arising of bad, unwholesome *dhammas* that have not arisen; [2] he generates purpose, strives, initiates strength, takes hold of his mind, endeavours for the sake of abandoning bad unwholesome *dhammas* that have arisen; [3] he generates purpose,

<sup>19</sup> I.e., *janayati vyāyacchate cittaṃ pratigṛhṇāti samyakpraṇīdadhāti*: cf. DUTT, 'Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā', p. 207, n. 3. Cf. also LÉVI, I, p. 142 lns. 5–6.

<sup>20</sup> DUTT, 'Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā', p. 207, lns. 15–21.

<sup>21</sup> I.e., *yad uta*: cf. EDGERTON, p. 444, def. 3.

<sup>22</sup> RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, p. 221; TRENCKNER & CHALMERS, II, p. 11; FEER, IV, pp. 364–365; & V, pp. 244–245; MORRIS & HARDY, I, pp. 39 & 296; II, pp. 15 & 256; IV, p. 462; & DAVIDS, pp. 105 & 208–215.; as given in: GETHIN, p. 69.

strives, initiates strength, takes hold of his mind, endeavours for the sake of the arising of wholesome *dhammas* that have not (yet) arisen; [4] he generates purpose, strives, initiates strength, takes hold of his mind, endeavours for the sake of establishing, of not losing, of increase, of abundance, of development, of fulfilment of wholesome *dhammas* that have arisen.<sup>23</sup>

Formula B.

Formula B1.

1. *Cattār' imāni bhikkhave padhānāni. Katamāni cattāri?*<sup>24</sup>

*Samvarappadhānaṃ pahānappadhānaṃ bhāvanappadhānaṃ, anurakkhanappadhānaṃ.*

Monks, there are these four efforts. What four?<sup>25</sup>

The effort to restrain, that to abandon, that to make-become and the effort to preserve.

2. *Katamañ ca bhikkhave samvarappadhānaṃ?*

*Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu anuppannānaṃ pāpakānaṃ akusakānaṃ dhammānaṃ anuppādāya chandaṃ janeti vāyamati viriyaṃ ārabhati cittaṃ paggaṇhāti padahati. Idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave samvarappadhānaṃ.*

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to restrain?

Herein a monk generates desire for the non arising of evil, unprofitable states that have not yet arisen; he makes an effort, sets going energy, he lays hold of and exerts his mind (to this end). This, monks, is called 'the effort to restrain'.

3. *Katamañ ca bhikkhave pahānappadhānaṃ?*

*Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu uppannānaṃ pāpakānaṃ akusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ pahānāya chandaṃ janeti... padahati. Idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave pahānappadhānaṃ.*

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to abandon?

Herein a monk generates desire for the abandoning of evil, unprofitable states that have arisen; he makes an effort... exerts his mind (to this end). This is called 'the effort to abandon'.

4. *Katamañ ca bhikkhave bhāvanappadhānaṃ?*

*Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu anuppannānaṃ kusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ uppādāya chandaṃ janeti... padahati.*

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to make-become?

<sup>23</sup> Tr. fr. Pāli in: GETHIN, p. 69.

<sup>24</sup> MORRIS & HARDY, II, § 69, p. 74.

<sup>25</sup> WOODWARD & HARE, II, § ix(69), pp. 83-84.

Herein he generates desire for the arising of profitable states not yet arisen ; he makes an effort . . . exerts his mind (to this end). This is called 'the effort to make-become'.

5. *Katamañ ca bhikkhave anurakkhanappadhānaṃ ?*

*Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu uppannānaṃ kusalānaṃ dhammānaṃ t̥hi-tiyā asammosāya bhiyyobhāvāya vepullāya bhāvanāya pāripūriyā chandaṃ janeti vāyamati viriyaṃ ārabhati cittaṃ paggaṇhāti padahati. Idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave anurakkhanappadhānaṃ.*

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to preserve ?

Herein a monk generates desire for the establishing, for the non confusion, for the more-becoming, for the increase, cultivation and fulfilment of profitable states that have arisen ; he makes an effort, sets going energy, he lays hold of and exerts his mind (to this end). This is called 'the effort to preserve'.

*Imāni kho bhikkhave cattāri padhānāni.*

*Samvaro ca pahānañ ca bhāvanā anurakkhanā  
Ete padhānā cattāro desitādiccabandhunā  
Yehi bhikkhu idhātāpī khayaṃ dukkhassa pāpuṇāti.*

So these, monks, are the four endeavours.

Restraint, leaving, making-become, preserving—  
These are the four exertions taught by him,  
The Kinsman of the Sun, Herein a monk  
Ardently striving makes an end of Ill.

*Formula B2.*

*Cattār' imāni bhikkhave padhānāni. Katamāni cattāri ?*<sup>26</sup>

*Samvarappadhānaṃ pahānappadhānaṃ bhāvanappadhānaṃ, anurakkhanappadhānaṃ.*

Monks, these are the four efforts. What four?<sup>27</sup>

The effort to restrain, the effort to abandon, the effort to make become and the effort to watch over.

*Katamañ ca bhikkhave samvarappadhānaṃ ?*

*Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu cakkhunā rūpaṃ disvā na nimittagghāhī hoti nānuyyañjanaggāhī hoti yatvādhikaraṇaṃ enaṃ cakkhundriyaṃ asaṃvutaṃ viharantaṃ abhijjhādomanassā pāpakā akusalā dhammā anvassaveyyuṃ: tassa samvarāya paṭipajjati rakkhati cakkhundriyaṃ cakkhundriye samvaraṃ āpajjati; sotena saddaṃ*

<sup>26</sup> MORRIS & HARDY, II, § 14, pp. 16–17; & RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE, III, pp. 225–226.

<sup>27</sup> WOODWARD & HARE, II, § iv(14), pp. 15–17.

sutvā. . . pe. . . ghānena gandhaṃ ghāyitvā. . . pe. . . jivhāya rasaṃ sayitvā. . . pe. . . kāyena phoṭṭhabbaṃ phusitvā. . . pe. . . manasā dhammaṃ viññāya na nimittaggāhī hoti nānuyvañjanaggāhī yatvādhikaraṇaṃ enaṃ manindriyaṃ asaṃvutaṃ viharantaṃ abhijjhādomanassā pāpakā akusalā dhammā anvāssaveyyuṃ : tassa saṃvarāya pariṇāpajjati rakkhati manindriyaṃ manindriye saṃvaram āpajjati. Idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave saṃvarappadhānaṃ.

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to restrain ?

Herein a monk, seeing an object with the eye, is not entranced by its general features or by its details. Inasmuch as coveting and dejection, evil, unprofitable states, might flow in upon one who dwells with this eye-faculty uncontrolled, he applies himself to such control, sets guard over the eye-faculty, wins the restraint thereof. Hearing a sound with the ear, or with the nose smelling an odour, or with the tongue tasting a savour, or with body contacting tangibles, or with mind cognising mental states, he is not entranced by their general features or by their details ; but, inasmuch as coveting . . . might flow in upon one who dwells with this mental faculty uncontrolled, he applies himself to such control. . . wins restraint thereof. This, monks, is called 'the effort to restrain'.

*Katamañ ca bhikkhave pahānappadhānaṃ ?*

Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu uppannaṃ kāmavitakkaṃ nādhivaseti pajahati vinodeti vyantikaroti anabhāvaṃ gameti, uppannaṃ vyāpādavitakkaṃ. . . pe. . . uppannaṃ vihiṃsāvitakkaṃ. . . pe. . . uppannuppane pāpake akusale dhamme nādhivaseti pajahati vinodeti vyantikaroti anadhānaṃ gameti. Idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave pahānappadhānaṃ.

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to abandon ?

Herein a monk does not admit sensual thought that has arisen, but abandons it, expels it, makes an end of it, drives it out of renewed experience. So also with regard to malign and cruel thought that has arisen. He does not admit evil, unprofitable states that arise from time to time. . . he drives them out of renewed existence. This, monks, is called 'the effort to abandon'.

*Katamañ ca bhikkhave bhāvanappadhānaṃ ?*

Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu satisambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti vivekanissitaṃ virāganissitaṃ nirodhanidditaṃ vosaggapariṇāmiṃ dhamma-vicayasambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti. . . pe. . . viriyasambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti. . . pe. . . pītisambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti. . . pe. . . passaddhisambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti. . . pe. . . samādhisambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti. . . pe. . . upekkhāsambojjhaṅgaṃ bhāveti vivekanissitaṃ virāganissitaṃ nirodhanissitaṃ vossaggapariṇāmiṃ. Idaṃ vuccati bhikkhave bhāvanappadhānaṃ.

And of what sort is the effort to make become ?

Herein a monk makes to become the limb of wisdom that is mindfulness, that is based upon seclusion, on dispassion, on ending, that ends in self surrender. He makes to become the limb of wisdom that is the investigation of Dhamma. . . the limb of wisdom that is

energy, that is so based. He makes to become the limb of wisdom that is zest. . . that is tranquility. . . that is concentration. . . that is equanimity, based upon seclusion, on dispassion, on ending, that ends in self surrender. This, monks, is called 'the effort to make become'.

*Katamañ ca bhikkhave anurakkhanappadhānaṃ ?*

*Idha bhikkhave bhikkhu uppannaṃ bhaddakaṃ samādhinimittaṃ anurakkhati aṭṭikasaññaṃ puḷavakasaññaṃ vinīlakasaññaṃ vipubakasaññaṃ vicchiddakasaññaṃ uddhumātakasaññaṃ. Idaṃ vucati bhikkhave anurakkhanappadhānaṃ.*

And of what sort, monks, is the effort to watch over?

Herein a monk watches over the favourable concentration-mark, the idea of the skeleton, the idea of the worm-eaten corpse, of the discoloured corpse, of the fissured corpse, the idea of the inflated corpse. This is called 'the effort to watch over'.

*Imāni kho bhikkhave cattāri padhānānīti.*

*Samvaro ca pahānañ ca bhāvanā anurakkhanā  
Ete padhānā cattāro desitādiccabandhunā  
Yehi bhikkhu idh' ātāpī khayaṃ dukkhassa pāpuṇeti.*

These then, monks, are the four efforts.

Restraint, abandoning, making-become, watching o'er,  
These are the four (best) efforts taught by him,  
The Kinsman of the Sun. Herein a monk,  
Ardently striving, makes an end of Ill.



## REFERENCES.

- Arndt, W. and Gingrich, F., *A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature: A translation and adaptation of the fourth revised and augmented edition of Walter Bauer's 'Griechisch-Deutsches Wörterbuch zu den Schriften des Neuen Testaments und der übrigen urchristlichen Literatur'*, 2nd edition. (Chicago & London: The University of Chicago Press, 1979) (cited: ARNDT & GINGRICH).
- Asano, M., "Bodhicittopāda" in the "Śikṣāsamuccaya", in: *Bukkyo Bunka*, Volume 27. (Tōkyō: Tōkyō Daigaku Bukkyo Seinenkai, 1991), ISSN 0287-5225, pp. 26-47 (cited: ASANO, 'Bodhicittopāda').
- Idem, 'Śāntideva as "Mantracārin"', in: *Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū*, Volume 41 (2). (Tōkyō: Nihon Indogaku Bukkyō Gakkai, March 1993), ISSN 0019-4344, pp. 206-210, other title, 'Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies' (cited: ASANO, 'Mantracārin').
- Idem, 'The "Sūtrasamuccaya" and the "Śikṣāsamuccaya"', in: *Bukkyōgaku*, Volume 37. (Tōkyō: Bukkyōgaku Kenyukai, December 1995), ISSN 0387-026X, pp. 56-74, other title, 'Journal of Buddhist Studies' (cited: ASANO, 'Śikṣāsamuccaya').
- Idem, 'On another "Sūtrasamuccaya"', in: *Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū*, Volume 47 (1). (Tōkyō: Nihon Indogaku Bukkyō Gakkai, December 1998), ISSN 0019-4344, pp. 182-186, other title, 'Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies' (cited: ASANO, 'Sūtrasamuccaya').
- Augustine, M. J., *The Buddhist notion of faith*, Ph. D thesis, (Graduate Theological Union (Berkeley, Calif.), 1978), University Microfilms, 1980, includes bibliography (cited: AUGUSTINE).
- Barnett, L. D., *The path of light: Rendered from the Bodhi-caryāvatāra of Śāntideva: A manual of Mahāyāna Buddhism*, (London: John Murray, 1947), Wisdom of the East Series, incompl. tr. fr. Skt. to Eng. (cited: BARNETT).
- Batchelor, S., *A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*, (Dharamsala: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1979), a tr. of compl. Tib. text of 'Bodhicaryāvatāra' (cited: BATCHELOR).
- Bendall, C., editor, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*', a compendium of Buddhist teaching compiled by Śāntideva chiefly from earlier Mahāyāna Sūtras, (St. Petersburg: Commissionaires de l'Academie Imperiale des Sciences, 1897-1902), Bibliotheca Buddhica, the 1st ed. of compl. Skt. text, repr. Delhi, 1992 (cited: BENDALL, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*').
- Idem, *Catalogue of the Buddhist Sanskrit Manuscripts in the University Library, Cambridge*, (Stuttgart: Franz Steiner Verlag, 1992), Publications of the Nepal-German Manuscript Preservation Project 2, orig. publ. Cambridge, University Library, 1883 (cited: BENDALL, *Catalogue*).
- Idem and Rouse, W. H. D., '*Śikṣā Samuccaya*': A Compendium of Buddhist Doctrine, (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1971), tr. of compl. Skt. text, repr. Delhi, 1990 (cited: BENDALL & ROUSE).

- Bernhard, F., editor, '*Udānavarga*', (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht for Abhandlungen der Akademie de Wissenschaften in Göttingen, 1965–1967), 2 vols., ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: BERNHARD).
- Bhattacharya, B., editor, '*Tattvasaṃgraha*' of *Śāntarakṣita with the Commentary of Kamalaśīla*, Volume 30: Gaekwad Oriental Series, (Baroda, 1926) (cited: BHATTACHARYA).
- Bhattacharya, V., editor, '*Bodhicaryāvatāra*', (1 Park Street, Calcutta 16: The Asiatic Society, December 1960), Bibliotheca Indica 1580, an interlinear ed. of the Skt. & Tib. texts (cited: BHATTACHARYA).
- Bond, G., 'The Gradual Path as a Hermeneutical Approach to the "Dhamma"', in: Lopez, D., editor, *Buddhist Hermeneutics*, Volume 6. (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1988), pp. 29–45 (cited: BOND).
- Braarvig, J., editor, '*Akṣayamatīnirdeśasūtra*': *The Tradition of Imperishability in Buddhist Thought*, (Oslo: Solum Forlag, 1993), 2 vols. (cited: BRAARVIG).
- Brassard, F., *The Concept of 'Bodhicitta' in Śāntideva's 'Bodhicaryāvatāra'*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 2000), McGill Studies in the History of Religions (cited: BRASSARD).
- Buitenen, J. A. B. van, *Rāmānuja on the Bhagavadgītā: a condensed rendering of his Gītābhāṣya with copious notes and an introduction*, (Motilal Banarsidass, 1968) (cited: VAN BUITENEN).
- Buswell, R. and Gimello, R., 'Introduction', in: Buswell, R. and Gimello, R., editors, *Paths to Liberation: The Mārga and Its Transformations in Buddhist Thought*, (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1992), Studies in East Asian Buddhism 7, pp. 1–36 (cited: BUSWELL and GIMELLO).
- Cabezón, J., *A Dose of Emptiness: an annotated translation of the 'sTong thun chen mo' of mKhas grub dGe legs dpal bzang*, (Albany: State University of New York Press, 1992), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies (cited: CABEZÓN, *Dose*).
- Idem, *Buddhism and Language: A Study of Indo-Tibetan Scholasticism*, (Albany: State University of New York Press, 1994), SUNY Series, Toward a Comparative Philosophy of Religions (cited: CABEZÓN, *Language*).
- Chattopadhyaya, A., *Tāranātha's History of Buddhism in India*, (Simla: Indian Institute of Advanced Study, 1970) (cited: CHATTOPADHYAYA).
- Conze, E., *The Prajñāpāramitā Literature*, Volume 6: Indo-Iranian Monographs, 1st edition. ('S-Gravenhage, The Hague: Mouton & Co., 1960) (cited: CONZE, *Prajñāpāramitā Literature – I*).
- Idem, *Materials for a Dictionary of the Prajñāpāramitā Literature*, (Tōkyō, 1967) (cited: CONZE, *Dictionary*).
- Idem, *The Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Lines and its Verse Summary*, (Bolinas, California: Four Seasons Foundation, 1973), compl. tr. of 'Aṣṭasāhasrikā prajñāpāramitā sūtra' (cited: CONZE, *Eight Thousand*).
- Cowell, E. and Neil, R., '*Divyāvadāna*': *a collection of early Buddhist legends now first edited from the Nepalese Sanskrit mss. in Cambridge and Paris*, (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1886), ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: COWELL & NEIL).
- Cox, C., 'Attainment through Abandonment: The Sarvāstavādin Path of Removing Defilements', in: Buswell, R. and Gimello, R., editors, *Paths to Liberation: The Mārga and Its Transformations in Buddhist Thought*, (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1992), Studies in East Asian Buddhism 7, pp. 63–105 (cited: COX, 'Attainment').

- Cox, C., *Disputed Dharmas, Early Buddhist Theories of Existence: An Annotated Translation of the Section on Factors Dissociated from Thought from Saṅghabhadra's 'Nyāyānusāra'*, Volume XI: Studia Philologica Buddhica, Monograph Series, (Tōkyō: The International Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1995) (cited: COX, *Dharmas*).
- Crosby, K. and Skilton, A., *Śāntideva: The 'Bodhicaryāvatāra'*, (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998), an Eng. tr. of compl. Skt. text (cited: CROSBY & SKILTON).
- Cüppers, C., editor, *The IXth chapter of the 'Samādhiraśasūtra': a text-critical contribution to the study of Mahāyāna sūtras*, (Stuttgart: F. Steiner, 1990), Eng., Chin., Skt., & Tib., incl. bibliographical ref. & indexes (cited: CÜPPERS).
- Das, S. C. and Śāstrī, S. C., *'Karuṇāpuṇḍarīka'*, (Calcutta, 1898), ed. of text (cited: DAS & ŚĀSTRĪ).
- Dauids, C. Rhys, editor, *'Vibhaṅga'*, being the second book of the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*, (London: H. Frowde for Pāli Text Society, 1904), ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: DAVIDS).
- Idem and Dauids, T. Rhys, *Dialogues of the Buddha I-III*, (London: Pāli Text Society, 1899-1921), 3 vols., tr. fr. Pāli of the 'Dīgha-Nikāya' (cited: RHYS DAVIDS & RHYS DAVIDS).
- Idem, Carpenter, J., and Stede, W., *'Dīgha-Nikāya' I-III*, (London: H. Frowde for Pāli Text Society, 1890-1911), 3 vols., ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: RHYS DAVIDS, CARPENTER & STEDE).
- Dauids, T. Rhys and Stede, W., *Pāli-English dictionary*, (London: Pāli Text Society, 1972) (cited: RHYS DAVIDS & STEDE).
- Dayal, H., *The Bodhisattva Doctrine in Buddhist Sanskrit Literature*, (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1975) (cited: DAYAL).
- Dimitrov, D., *Tables of the Old Bengali Script (on the basis of a Nepalese manuscript of Daṇḍin's 'Kāvya-darśa')*, (Marburg, 2001), unpublished, to be included in: *'Śikhīsamīceśyāḥ'*. Indian and Tibetan Studies. (Collectanea Indologica et Tibetica). Ed. by Dimitrov, D., Roesler U., & Steiner, R.. Wien 2002. (Wiener Studien zur Tibetologie und Buddhismuskunde. Heft 53), pp. 27-78 (cited: DIMITROV).
- Dowman, K., *Masters of the 'Mahāmudrā': Songs and Histories of the Eighty-four Buddhist Siddhas*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1985) (cited: DOWMAN).
- Dutt, N., editor, *'Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā prajñāpāramitā': edited with critical notes and introduction*, (London, 1934), Calcutta Oriental Series 28, ed. of incompl. Skt. text (cited: DUTT, *'Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā'*).
- Idem, editor, *'Bodhisattvabhūmi'*, (Patna: K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1966), Tibetan Sanskrit Works Series VII, incompl. ed. of text (cited: DUTT, *'Bodhisattvabhūmi'*).
- Edgerton, F., *Buddhist Hybrid Sanskrit Grammar and Dictionary*, (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1972) (cited: EDGERTON).
- Eimer, H., 'Suvarṇadvīpa's Commentaries on the "Bodhicaryāvatāra"', in: Bruhn, K and Wezler, A., editors, *Studien zum Jainismus und Buddhismus: Gedenkschrift für Ludwig Alsdorf*, Volume 23. (Wiesbaden: F. Steiner, 1981), pp. 73-78 (cited: EIMER).

- Ergardt, J. T., *Faith and Knowledge in Early Buddhism: an analysis of the contextual structures of an arahant-formula in the 'Majjhima-Nikāya'*, (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1977) (cited: ERGARDT).
- Fausböll, M., editor, *The 'Jātaka' together with its commentary, being tales of the anterior births of Gotama Buddha*, (London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trubner, 1877–1896), 7 vols., ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: FAUSBÖLL).
- Feer, L., editor, *'Saṃyutta-Nikāya'*, (London: Oxford University Press for Pāli Text Society, 1884–1898), 6 vols., ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: FEER).
- Filliozat, J., '“Śikṣāsamuccaya” and “Sūtrasamuccaya”', *Journal Asiatique (Paris)* (1964), pp. 473–478 (cited: FILLIOZAT).
- Finot, L., editor, *'Rāṣṭrapālaparipṛcchā': sūtra du Mahāyāna*, (St Petersburg, 1901), Bibliotheca Buddhica II, ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: FINOT).
- Frauwallner, E., *Die Philosophie des Buddhismus*, (Berlin, 1956) (cited: FRAUWALLNER).
- Gadamer, H-G., *Truth and Method*, (New York: Seabury Press, 1975) (cited: GADAMER).
- Garfield, J., *The Fundamental Wisdom of the Middle Way: Nāgārjuna's 'Mūlamadhyamakakārikā'*, (New York: Oxford University Press, 1995) (cited: GARFIELD).
- Gethin, R., *The Buddhist Path to Awakening: A study of the 'Bodhi-Pakkhiyā Dhammā'*, Volume 7: Brill's Indological Library, (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1992), a doctoral dissertation to the Department of Comparative Religion, University of Manchester, 1987 (cited: GETHIN).
- Ghosa, P., editor, *'Śatasāhasrikā prajñāpāramitā sūtra'*, (Calcutta: Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1902–1913), Bibliotheca Indica, Nos. 146–148, incompl. ed. of text (cited: GHOSA).
- Gombrich, R., 'Seminar Papers, 1987–88', *The Buddhist Forum* 1 (1990), p. 11, ed. Skorupski, T. (cited: GOMBRICH).
- Gómez, L., 'Emptiness and moral perfection', *Philosophy East and West (Honolulu)* 23 (1973), pp. 361–373 (cited: GÓMEZ, 'Emptiness').
- Idem, 'Buddhist Literature: Exegesis and Hermeneutics', in: Eliade, M., editor, *Encyclopedia of Religion*, Volume 2. (New York: Macmillan, 1987), pp. 529–540 (cited: GÓMEZ, 'Literature').
- Gómez, L., 'Unspoken Paradigms: Meanderings through the metaphors of a field', *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies (Madison, Wisconsin)* 18:2 (1995), pp. 183–268 (cited: GÓMEZ, 'Paradigms').
- Idem, 'The Way of the Translators: Three Recent Translations of Śāntideva's "Bodhicaryāvatāra"', in: Nattier, J., editor, *Buddhist Literature*, Volume 1. (Bloomington: East Asian Studies Centre, Indiana University, 1999), pp. 262–354 (cited: GÓMEZ, 'Translators').
- Griffiths, P. J., 'Buddhist Hybrid English: Some notes on philology and hermeneutics for Buddhologists', *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies (Madison, Wisconsin)* 4:2 (1981), pp. 7–32 (cited: GRIFFITHS).
- Guenther, H. V., *sGam.po.pa, The Jewel Ornament of Liberation: Dam.chos yid.bžin.gyi nor.bu thar.pa rin.po che'i rgyan žes.bya.ba theg.pa chen.po'i lam.rim.gyi bsad.pa*, (London: Rider & Co., 1970) (cited: GUENTHER).

- Gyatso, K., *Meaningful to Behold: The Bodhisattva's Way of Life*, (London: Tharpa Publications, 1998), a commentary on the 'Bodhicaryāvatāra' (cited: GYATSO).
- Gyatso, T., *Transcendent Wisdom, A Commentary on the Ninth Chapter of Shantideva's Guide to the Bodhisattva Way of Life*, (Ithaca: Snow Lion Publications, 1988), trans. fr. Skt. & Tib. & ed. by B. A. Wallace (cited: GYATSO, *Wisdom*).
- Idem, *A flash of lightning in the dark of night: A guide to the bodhisattva's way of life*, (Boston: Shambhala, 1994), a commentary on the 'Bodhicaryāvatāra' tr. fr. the Tib. by the Padmakara Translation Group (cited: GYATSO, *Lightening*).
- Hahn, M., editor, *Nāgārjuna's Ratnāvalī: Vol. I, The Basic Texts (Sanskrit, Tibetan, Chinese)*, (Bonn: Indica et Tibetica Verlag, 1982) (cited: HAHN).
- Hanayama, S., *Bibliography on Buddhism*, (Tōkyō: The Hokuseido Press, 1961) (cited: HANAYAMA).
- Hardy, E., editor, '*Nettipakaraṇa*': with extracts from Dhammapala's commentary, (London: H. Frowde for Pāli Text Society, 1902), ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: HARDY).
- Harrison, P., *The Samādhi of Direct Encounter with the Buddhas of the Present: an annotated English translation of the Tibetan version of the 'Pratyutpanna-Buddha-Saṃmukhāvasthita-Samādhi-Sūtra' with several appendices relating to the history of the text*, (Tōkyō: International Institute for Buddhist Studies, 1990), Studia Philologica Buddhica Monograph Series 5 (cited: HARRISON, '*Pratyutpannabuddhasammukhāvasthitasamādhisūtra*').
- Idem, 'The "Ekottarikāgama" Translations of An Shigao', in: Kieffer-Pülz, P. and Hartmann, J-U., editors, *Bauddhaviyāsudhākaraḥ: Studies in Honour of Heinz Bechert on the Occasion of His 65th Birthday*, Volume 30. (Swisttal-Odendorf: Indica et Tibetica, 1997), pp. 261–283 (cited: HARRISON, 'Ekottarikāgama').
- Hedinger, J., *Aspekte der Schulung in der Laufbahn eines Bodhisattva: Dargestellt nach dem Śikṣāsamuccaya des Śāntideva*, (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz, 1984), Freiburger Beiträge zur Indologie (cited: HEDINGER).
- Hirakawa, A., 'The Meaning of "Dharma" and "Abhidharma"', in: *Indianisme et Bouddhisme: Mélanges Offerts a Mgr. Étienne Lamotte*, (Louvain-La-Neuve: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut Orientaliste, 1980), Publications de l'Institut Orientaliste de Louvain, pp. 159–175 (cited: HIRAKAWA).
- Honda, M., 'Annotated Translation of the "Daśabhūmika-sūtra" (revised by Johannes Rahder)', in: Sinor, D., editor, *Studies in South, East, and Central Asia presented as a Memorial Volume to the late Professor Raghu Vira by members of the Permanent International Altaistic Conference and edited by Denis Sinor, Indiana University, Bloomington, Ind. (U.S.A)*, Volume 74. (J22 Hauz Khas Enclave, New Delhi 16: International Academy of Indian Culture, 1968), pp. 115–276 (cited: HONDA).
- Horner, I., *Collection of the Middle Length Sayings (Majjhima-nikāya)*, (London: Luzac for Pāli Text Society, 1954–1959), 3 vols., tr. of compl. Pāli text (cited: HORNER).

- Huntington, C., 'A 'nonreferential' view of language and conceptual thought in the work of Tsong-kha-pa', *Philosophy East and West (Honolulu)* 33 (1983):4, pp. 325–339 (cited: HUNTINGTON).
- Idem and Wangchen, N., *The Emptiness of Emptiness: An Introduction to Early Indian Mādhyamika*, (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1989), a tr. fr. Skt. of the 'Mādhyamakāvātāra' of Candrakīrti (cited: HUNTINGTON & WANGCHEN).
- Ichishima, S., 'Rareness of Great Compassion in the "Sūtrasamuccaya"', in: *Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū*, Volume 45 (2). (Tōkyō: Nihon Indogaku Bukkyō Gakkai, March 1997), ISSN 0019–4344, pp. 19–23, other title, 'Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies' (cited: ICHISHIMA).
- Ishida, C., 'Some New Remarks on the "Bodhicaryāvatāra" Chapter 5', in: *Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū*, Volume 37 (1). (Tōkyō: Nihon Indogaku Bukkyō Gakkai, December 1988), ISSN 0019–4344, pp. 479–476, other title, 'Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies' (cited: ISHIDA, 'Remarks').
- Idem, 'Action and its Result in the "Bodhicaryāvatāra"', in: *Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū*, Volume 44 (2). (Tōkyō: Nihon Indogaku Bukkyō Gakkai, March 1996), ISSN 0019–4344, pp. 23–28, other title, 'Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies' (cited: ISHIDA, 'Action').
- Ishihama, Y. and Fukuda, Y., *A New Critical Edition of the 'Mahāvīyūtpatti': Sanskrit–Tibetan–Mongolian Dictionary of Buddhist Terminology*, (The Toyo Bunko, 1989), *Studia Tibetica* 16 (cited: ISHIHAMA & FUKUDA).
- Johnston, E., editor, *'Saundarānanda-kāvya'*, (Oxford University Press, 1928), ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: JOHNSTON).
- Jong, J. W. de, 'The Absolute in Buddhist Thought', in: *Essays in Philosophy: presented to Dr. T. M. P. Mahadevan*, (Madras: Ganesh & Co., 1962), pp. 56–64 (cited: DE JONG, 'Absolute').
- Idem, 'The Problem of the Absolute in the Madhyamaka School', *Journal of Indian Philosophy (Dordrecht)* II (1972), pp. 1–6, Eng. tr. of 'Le problème de l'absolu dans l'école Madhyamaka', 'Revue philosophique de la France et de l'étranger', pp. 322–327 (Paris, 1950) (cited: DE JONG, 'Problem').
- Idem, 'The Study of Buddhism. Problems and Perspectives.' in: Ratnam, P. and Chandra, L., editors, *Studies in Indo-Asian Art and Culture*, Volume 4. (Delhi: International Academy of Indian Culture, 1974), pp. 13–26, Eng. tr. of 'Die Studie van het Boeddhisme. Problemen en Perspectieven'. [Inaugural Lecture, University of Leiden, 28 Sept. 1956] (The Hague: Mouton, 1956) (cited: DE JONG, 'Study').
- Jong, J. W. de, 'La Légende de Śāntideva', *Indo-Iranian Journal* 16 (1975), pp. 161–182 (cited: DE JONG, 'La Légende').
- Idem, 'Review of J. Hedinger, "Aspekte der Schulung in der Laufbahn eines Bodhisattva: Dargestellt nach dem Śikṣāsamuccaya des Śāntideva" (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz, 1981)', *Indo-Iranian Journal* 30 (1987), pp. 230–235 (cited: DE JONG, 'Review of Hedinger').
- Joshi, L. M., *Śāntideva's 'Śikṣāsamuccaya-kārikās'*, (Sarnath, India: Maha Bodhi Society, 1965), Eng. tr. with notes (cited: JOSHI).
- Kajihara, M., 'The "Bodhicaryāvatāra" for Ritual Recitation', in: *Machikaneyama Ronsō*, Volume 25. (Toyonaka: Osaka Daigaku Bungakubu, December 1991), ISSN 0387–4818, pp. 25–38 (cited: KAJIHARA, 'Recitation').

- Kajihara, M., 'On the "Pariñāmanā" Chapter of the "Bodhicaryāvatāra"', in: *Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Kenkyū*, Volume 40 (2). (Tōkyō: Nihon Indogaku Bukkyō Gakkai, March 1992), ISSN 0019-4344, pp. 1062-1059, other title, 'Journal of Indian and Buddhist Studies' (cited: KAJIHARA, 'Chapter').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Later Mādhyamikas on epistemology and meditation', in: Kiyota, M., editor, *Mahāyāna Buddhist Meditation: Theory and Practice*, (Honolulu, 1978), pp. 114-143 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Meditation').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'History and Literature of the Madhyamaka Philosophy', *Kōza Daijō Bukkyō (Series Mahāyāna Buddhism)* 7 (1982), pp. 1-83, in Japanese (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'History').
- Idem, 'On the meanings of the words "bodhisattva" and "mahāsattva" in Prajñāpāramitā literature', in: Hercus, L. A., editor, *Indological and Buddhist Studies: Volume in Honour of Professor J. W. de Jong on his Sixtieth Birthday*, (Canberra, 1982), pp. 253-270 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Meanings').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Mādhyamika', in: Eliade, M., editor, *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Volume 9. (New York: Macmillan, 1987), pp. 71-77 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Mādhyamika').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'The "Avayavinirākaraṇa" of Paṇḍita Aśoka', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 491-496 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Avayavinirākaraṇa').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Controversy between the "sākara-" and the "nirākara-vādins" of the Yogācāra school—some materials', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 389-400 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Controversy').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'An Introduction to Buddhist Philosophy—an annotated translation of the "Tarkabhāṣā" of Mokṣākaragupta', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 189-360 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Tarkabhāṣā').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Mahāyāna Buddhism and the philosophy of "prajñā"', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 89-98 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Philosophy').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Realism of the Sarvāstivāda school', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 129-146 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Realism').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Transfer and transformation of merits in relation to emptiness', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 1-20 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Transfer').
- Kajiyama, Y., 'Women in Buddhism', in: Mimaki, K., editor, *Y. Kajiyama: Studies in Buddhist Philosophy*, (Kyōto, 1989), pp. 53-70 (cited: KAJIYAMA, 'Women').
- Kalupahana, D., *Nāgārjuna, Philosophy of the Middle Way: 'Mūlamadhyamakakārikā', Introduction, Sanskrit Text, English Translation and Annotation*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1986), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies (cited: KALUPAHANA).
- Kanakura, E., *Satori ye no michi*, Volume 9: Sara soshō, (Kyōtō: Heirakuji Shoten, 1965), Japanese tr. of 'Bodhicaryāvatāra', incl. bibliographical ref. (cited: KANAKURA).
- Kasawara, K., Müller, F. Max, and Wenzel, H., '*Dharmasaṃgraha*', (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1885), ed. of text, repr. Amsterdam, 1972 (cited: KASAWARA, MÜLLER & WENZEL).

- Bodhisattva Images of Human Perfection* (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1989)
- Katz, N., ~~*Buddhist and Western Philosophy*, (New Delhi: Sterling Press, 1981)~~  
(cited: KATZ).
- Kern, H. and Nanjio, B., '*Saddharmapuṇḍarīka*', (St Petersburg, 1908–1912),  
Bibliotheca Buddhica X, ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: KERN & NANJIO).
- Klaus, K., 'Einige textkritische und exegetische Bemerkungen zu Śāntidevas  
"Śikṣāsamuccaya" (Kapitel XII und XIII)', in: Kieffer-Pülz, P. and Hart-  
mann, J-U., editors, *Bauddhaviyāsudhākarah: Studies in Honour of Heinz  
Bechert on the Occasion of His 65th Birthday*, Volume 30. (Swisttal-  
Odendorf: Indica et Tibetica, 1997), pp. 397–406 (cited: KLAUS).
- La Vallée Poussin, L. de, editor, *Prajñākaramati's Commentary to the 'Bo-  
dhicaryāvatāra' of Āntideva*, Edited with Indices, (Calcutta: Asiatic  
Society of Bengal, 1901–1914), Bibliotheca Indica 983, 1031, 1090,  
1126, 1139, 1305 & 1399, critical ed. of the compl. Skt. text (cited:  
DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, *Prajñākaramati*).
- Idem, 'Bodhisattva', in: Hastings, J., editor, *Encyclopaedia of religion and  
ethics*, Volume 2. (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1908–1927),  
pp. 739–753 (cited: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, 'Bodhisattva').
- La Vallée Poussin, L. de, *L'Abhidharmakośa de Vasubandhu*, (Paris: Paul  
Geuthner, 1923–1931), 6 vols., tr. into French, repr. as *Mélanges Chi-  
nois et Bouddiques*, XVI:1–6, 1971 (cited: DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN,  
*L'Abhidharmakośa*).
- Idem, '*Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*', (Berkeley, California: Asian Human-  
ities Press, 1988), Eng. tr. by Leo M. Pruden, 2 vols. (cited:  
DE LA VALLÉE POUSSIN, '*Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam*').
- Lamotte, É., *Le Traité de la Grand Vertue de Sagesse*, (Louvain: Bureau  
Muséon, 1944–1976), 4 vols., tr. into French of the 'Mahāprajñāpārami-  
topadeśa' of Nāgārjuna (cited: LAMOTTE, *Le Traité*).
- Idem, 'Assessment of Textual Interpretation in Buddhism', in: Lopez, D., edi-  
tor, *Buddhist Hermeneutics*, Volume 6. (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i  
Press, 1988), pp. 11–27 (cited: LAMOTTE, 'Interpretation').
- Lefmann, S., editor, '*Lalitavistara*', (Halle a. S.: Waisenhaus, 1902–1908), ed.  
of compl. Skt. text (cited: LEFMANN).
- Lévi, S., editor, '*Mahāyānasūtrāṅkāra*': *exposé de la doctrine du grand  
véhicule selon le système Yogācāra*, (Paris: Librairie Honoré Champion,  
1907), Bibliothèque de l'École des Hautes Études 159, ed. of the compl.  
Skt. text (cited: LÉVI).
- Limaye, S., '*Mahāyānasūtrāṅkāra*' by Asaṅga, Volume 94: Bibliotheca Indo-  
Buddhica, (Delhi: Sri Satguru Publications, 1992), ed. & tr. of Skt. text  
(cited: LIMAYE).
- Lindtner, Chr., *Nagarjuniana: Studies in the Writings and Philosophy of Nāgār-  
juna*, (Copenhagen: Akademisk Forlag, 1982) (cited: LINDTNER).
- Lopez, D., 'Introduction', in: Idem, editor, *Buddhist Hermeneutics*, Volume 6.  
(Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1988), pp. 1–10 (cited: LOPEZ,  
'Introduction').
- Idem, 'On the Interpretation of the Mahāyāna Sūtras', in: Idem, editor, *Buddhist  
Hermeneutics*, Volume 6. (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1988),  
pp. 47–70 (cited: LOPEZ, 'Interpretation').
- MacQueen, G., 'Inspired Speech in Early Mahāyāna Buddhism I', *Religion* 11  
(1981), pp. 303–319 (cited: MACQUEEN, 'Speech-I').

- MacQueen, G., 'Inspired Speech in Early Mahāyāna Buddhism II', *Religion* 12 (1982), pp. 49–65 (cited: MACQUEEN, 'Speech-II').
- Mahoney, R. B., *The Perfections Extoll'd: Transcendental Virtues in the 'Bodhicaryāvatāra' of Śāntideva*, Rels 408 Special Paper (Department of Philosophy and Religious Studies, University of Canterbury, 2000) (cited: MAHONEY).
- Matics, M. L., *Entering the Path of Enlightenment*, (New York: Macmillan, 1970), Eng. tr. of the compl. Skt. text of the 'Bodhicaryāvatāra' (cited: MATICS).
- May, J., editor, *Candrakīrti Prasannapadā Madhyamakavṛtti. Douze chapitres traduits du sanscrit et du tibétain, accompagnés d'une introduction, de notes et d'une édition critique de la version tibétaine*, Volume 2: Collection Jean Przyluski, (Adrien-Maissonneuve, 1959), pref. by P. Demiéville (cited: MAY).
- Minayeff, I. P., 'Āntideva: "Bodhicaryāvatāra"', *Zapiski (Vostochnago Otdeleniya Imperatorskago Russkago Arkheologicheskago Obshchestva)* 4 (1889), pp. 153–228, the 1st critical ed. of the Skt. text (cited: MINAYEFF).
- Mitra, R., editor, '*Aṣṭasāhasrikā prajñāpāramitā sūtra*', (Calcutta, 1888), Bibliotheca Indica 110: 26, ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: MITRA).
- Mizuno, K., *Buddhist sūtras, origin, development, transmission*, (Tōkyō: Kōsei Publishing Co., 1982), tr. of 'Kyoden, sono seiritsu to tenkai' (cited: MIZUNO, *Sūtras*).
- Idem, *Essentials of Buddhism: basic terminology and concepts of Buddhist philosophy and practice*, (Tōkyō: Kōsei Publishing Co., 1996), tr. of 'Bukkyo yogo no kiso chishiki' by Gaynor Sekimori, foreword by J.W. de Jong (cited: MIZUNO, *Essentials*).
- Monier-Williams, M., *A Sanskrit-English Dictionary*, (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1899) (cited: MONIER-WILLIAMS).
- Morris, R. and Hardy, E., '*Aṅguttara-Nikāya*' I–V, (London: H. Frowde for Pāli Text Society, 1885–1900), 6 vols., ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: MORRIS & HARDY).
- Mrozik, S. P., *The Relationship Between Morality and the Body in Monastic Training According to the 'Śikṣāsamuccaya'*, Ph. D thesis, (Harvard University, 1998), unpublished (cited: MROZIK).
- Müller, E., editor, '*Dhammasaṅgani*', (London: H. Frowde for Pāli Text Society, 1885), ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: MÜLLER).
- Nagao, G., 'Tranquil Flow of Mind: an Interpretation of "Upekṣā"', in: *Indianisme et Bouddhisme: Mélanges Offerts a Mgr. Étienne Lamotte*, (Louvain-La-Neuve: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut Orientaliste, 1980), Publications de l'Institut Orientaliste de Louvain, pp. 245–258 (cited: NAGAO, 'Flow').
- Idem, 'Ascent and Descent: Two-Directional Activity in Buddhist Thought', in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp. 201–207 (cited: NAGAO, 'Ascent').
- Idem, 'Emptiness', in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G.*

- M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.209–218 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Emptiness’).
- Nagao, G., ‘An Interpretation of the Term “Saṃvṛti” (Convention) in Buddhism’, in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.13–22 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Saṃvṛti’).
- Idem, ‘Logic of Convertibility’, in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.123–153 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Logic’).
- Idem, ‘On the Theory of Buddha Body (“Buddha-kāya”)', in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.103–122 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Buddha-kāya’).
- Idem, ‘Ontology in Mahāyāna Buddhism’, in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.155–187 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Ontology’).
- Idem, ‘Usages and Meanings of “Pariṇāmanā”’, in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.51–60 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Pariṇāmanā’).
- Idem, ‘What Remains in “Śūnyatā” : A Yogācāra Interpretation of Emptiness’, in: Kawamura, L. and Nagao, G., editors, *Mādhyamika and Yogācāra: A Study of Mahāyāna Philosophies, Collected Papers of G. M. Nagao*, (Albany, New York: State University of New York Press, 1991), SUNY Series in Buddhist Studies, pp.51–60 (cited: NAGAO, ‘Śūnyatā’).
- Nakamura, H., *Indian Buddhism: A Survey with Bibliographical Notes*, (Osaka: KUFU Publications, 1980) (cited: NAKAMURA).
- Nāṇamoli, Bhikkhu, *The Guide*, (London: Luzac for Pāli Text Society, 1962), tr. fr. Pāli of the ‘Nettipakaraṇa’ (cited: NĀṆAMOLI).
- Nanjio, B., editor, *Laṅkāvatārasūtra*, (Kyōto, 1923), ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: NANJIO).
- Nattier, J., *A Few Good Men: The Bodhisattva Path according to ‘The Inquiry of Ugra’ (‘Ugraparipṛcchā’)*, (Bloomington, Indiana: Dept. of Religious Studies, Indiana University, 1999), unpublished (cited: NATTIER).
- Obermiller, E., *History of Buddhism (‘Chos-hbyung’) by Bu-ston: I. Part: The Jewellery of Scripture ; II. Part: The History of Buddhism in India and Tibet*, (Heidelberg: Harassowitz, 1931–1932) (cited: OBERMILLER, *Chos-hbyung*).
- Idem, ‘The Doctrine of the “Prajñāpāramitā” as Exposed in the “Abhisamayālamkāra” of Maitreya’, *Acta Orientalia* 11 (1932), pp.1–131 & 334–354 (cited: OBERMILLER, ‘Doctrine’).

- Oldmeadow, P., *A Study of the Wisdom Chapter ('Prajñāpāramitā Pariccheda') of the 'Bodhicaryāvatārapañjikā' of Prajñākaramatī*, Ph.D thesis, (Australian National University, 1994), 2 vols., unpublished, completed under J. W. de Jong (cited: OLDMEADOW).
- Padmakara Translation Group, *Shāntideva: The way of the Bodhisattva*, (Boston: Shambhala, 1997), Shambhala Dragon Editions, a tr. fr. Tib. text (cited: PADMAKARA).
- Pagel, U., *The 'Bodhisattvapīṭaka': Its Doctrines, Practices, and their Position in Māhāyāna Literature*, (Tring, U.K.: The Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1995), Buddhica Britannica: Series Continua V (cited: PAGEL).
- Palden, K. K. and Sönam, M. K., *Wisdom: Two Buddhist commentaries on the ninth chapter of Shāntideva's 'Bodhicaryāvatāra'*, (Peyzac-le-Moustier: Éditions Padmakara, 1993), tr. fr. Tib. of 'The nectar of Mañjushri's speech' by K. K. Palden and 'The brilliant torch' by M. K. Sönam, tr. fr. Tib. by the Padmakara Translation Group (cited: PALDEN & SÖNAM).
- Pezzali, A., *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste des VIIe et VIIIe siècles*, (Firenze: Vallecchi Editore, 1968) (cited: PEZZALI, *Śāntideva, mystique bouddhiste*).
- Idem, *Śāntideva e il Bodhicaryāvatāra e le kārikā del Śikṣāsamuccaya*, (Bologna, 1982), Italian tr. of the compl. Skt. text of the 'Bodhicaryāvatāra' and 'Śikṣāsamuccayakārikā' (cited: PEZZALI, *Śāntideva e il Bodhicaryāvatāra e le kārikā*).
- Idem, 'Śāntideva', in: Eliade, M., editor, *The Encyclopedia of Religion*, Volume 13. (New York: Macmillan, 1987), pp.67–68 (cited: PEZZALI, 'Śāntideva').
- Powers, J., *Hermeneutics and Tradition in the 'Saṃdhinīrmocana-Sūtra'*, Volume 5: Indian Thought, (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1993) (cited: POWERS).
- Pāsādika, Bhikkhu, 'Tib J 380, a Dun-huang Manuscript Fragment of the Sūtrasamuccaya', in: Kieffer-Pülz, P. and Hartmann, J-U., editors, *Bauddhaviṃśasudhākaraḥ: Studies in Honour of Heinz Bechert on the Occasion of His 65th Birthday*, Volume 30. (Swisttal-Odendorf: Indica et Tibetica, 1997), pp. 483–494 (cited: PĀSĀDIKA).
- Rahder, J., editor, *Daśabhūmikāsūtra et Bodhisattvabhūmi, publiés avec une introduction et des notes*, (Paris, 1926), ed. of the prose Skt. text (cited: RAHDER).
- Rahula, W., 'Psychology of Buddhist Meditation', in: *Indianisme et Bouddhisme: Mélanges Offerts a Mgr. Étienne Lamotte*, (Louvain-La-Neuve: Université catholique de Louvain, Institut Orientaliste, 1980), Publications de l'Institut Orientaliste de Louvain, pp. 267–279 (cited: RAHULA).
- Robinson, J., *Buddha's Lions: The Lives of the Eighty-four Siddhas*, (Berkeley: Dharma Publishing, 1979) (cited: ROBINSON).
- Ruegg, D. Seyfort, *The study of Indian and Tibetan thought. Inaugural Lecture, University of Leiden, May 12th, 1967*, (Leiden: E. J. Brill, 1967) (cited: RUEGG, *Study*).
- Idem, *La Théorie du Tathāgatagarbha et du Gotra*, (Paris: Adrien-Maissonneuve, 1969), Publications de l'École française d'Extrême-Orient (cited: RUEGG, *La Théorie*).
- Idem, 'The "gotra", "ekayāna" and "tathāgatagarbha" theories of the Prajñāpāramitā according to Dharmamitra and Abhayākaragupta', in: Lancaster, L., editor, *Prajñāpāramitā and Related Systems: studies in honor*

- of Edward Conze, (Berkeley: Published under the auspices of the Group in Buddhist Studies, and the Centre for South and Southeast Asian Studies at the University of California, and the Institute of Buddhist Studies, 1977), Berkeley Buddhist Studies Series, pp. 283–312 (cited: RUEGG, 'Prajñāpāramitā').
- Ruegg, D. Seyfort, *The Literature of the Madhyamaka School of Philosophy in India*, Volume VII: A History of Indian Literature, (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz, 1981) (cited: RUEGG, *Literature*).
- Idem, 'Towards a Chronology of the Madhyamaka School', in: Hercus, L. A., editor, *Indological and Buddhist Studies: Volume in Honour of Professor J. W. de Jong on his Sixtieth Birthday*, (Canberra, 1982), pp. 505–530 (cited: RUEGG, 'Chronology').
- Ruegg, D. Seyfort, 'Some reflections of the place of philosophy in the study of Buddhism', *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies (Madison, Wisconsin)* 18:2 (1995), pp. 145–181 (cited: RUEGG, 'Reflections').
- Saito, A., *A Study of the 'Buddhapālita-Mūlamadhyamaka-Vṛtti'*, Ph.D thesis, (Australian National University, 1984), 2 vols., unpublished, completed under J. W. de Jong (cited: SAITO, 'Buddhapālitamūlamadhyamaka-vṛtti').
- Idem, *On the Difference between the Earlier and the Current Versions of Śāntideva's 'Bodhi(sattva)caryāvatāra', with special reference to Chap. 9 (/8) entitled: "Perfection of Wisdom (prajñāpāramitā)"*, (Mie, Japan, 1994), research paper presented at IXth World Sanskrit Conference, Melbourne, Australia (cited: SAITO, 'Difference').
- Idem, 'Śāntideva in the history of Mādhyamika philosophy', in: Sankarnarayan, K., editor, *Buddhism in India and Abroad: An Integrating Influence in Vedic and Post-Vedic Perspective. Papers presented at the International Seminar on Buddhism jointly organized by K. J. Somaiya Centre of Buddhist Studies, Mumbai, India, Shuchin University, Kyōto, Japan, and Department of Philosophy, University of Bombay, India, March 6–10, 1995*, (Mumbai & New Delhi: Somaiya Publications Pvt. Ltd., 1996), pp. 257–263 (cited: SAITO, 'History').
- Saito, A., 'Bu ston on the "sPyod 'jug" ("Bodhisattvacaryāvatāra")', in: Steinkellner, E., editor, *Transmission of the Tibetan Canon: Papers presented at a panel of the 7th Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Graz 1995*, Volume 3. (Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philosophisch-historische Klasse, Dekschriften, 257. Band., Wein: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1997), pp. 79–85 (cited: SAITO, 'Bu ston').
- Saito, A., 'Remarks on the Tabo Manuscript of the "Bodhisattvacaryāvatāra"', in: Scherrer-Schaub, C. A. and Steinkellner, E., editors, *Tabo Studies II: manuscripts, texts, inscriptions, and the arts*, Volume LXXXVII. (Rome: Istituto Italiano per l'Africa e l'Oriente, 1999), pp. 175–189 (cited: SAITO, 'Manuscript').
- Saito, A., *A study of the Dūn-huang Recension of the 'Bodhisattvacaryāvatāra'. Project Number 09610021. A report of Grant-in-Aid for Scientific Research (C). Term of Project 1997.4 — 2000.3.* (Faculty of Humanities, Mie University, 2000) (cited: SAITO, *Recension*).
- Schmithausen, L., *Der Nirvāṇa-Abschnitt in der Vinīścayasamgrahaṇi der Yogācārabhūmiḥ*, (Wein: Verlag Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1969) (cited: SCHMITHAUSEN).

- Schopen, G., *Bones, Stone and Buddhist Monks: Collected Papers on the Archaeology, Epigraphy, and Texts of Monastic Buddhism in India*, (Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1998), Studies in the Buddhist Tradition (cited: SCHOPEN).
- Schuster, N. J., 'The Bodhisattva Figure in the "Ugraparipṛcchā"', in: Warder, A. K., editor, *New Paths in Buddhist Research*, (Durham, NC: Acorn Press, 1985), pp. 26–55 (cited: SCHUSTER).
- Senart, É., editor, *Le Mahāvastu: texte Sanscrit publié pour la première fois et accompagné d'introductions et d'un commentaire par É. Senart*, (Paris: Impr. Nationale, 1882–1887), Collection d'ouvrages orientaux 2, 3 vols., ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: SENART).
- Silk, J. A., *The origins and early history of the 'Mahāratnakūṭa' tradition of Mahāyāna Buddhism with a study of the 'Ratnarāśīsūtra' and related materials*, Ph. D thesis, (Asian Languages and Cultures: Buddhist Studies, The University of Michigan, 1994) (cited: SILK).
- Skilton, A., *A Concise History of Buddhism*, 2nd edition. (Birmingham: Windhorse Publications, 1997) (cited: SKILTON).
- Speyer, J., editor, '*Avadānaśataka*': a century of edifying tales belonging to the *Hīnayāna*, (St Petersburg, 1902–1909), Bibliotheca Buddhica III, ed. of compl. Skt. text, repr. Indo-Iranian Reprints, 3 ('S-Gravenhage: Mouton & Co., 1958) (cited: SPEYER).
- Steāl-Holstein, A. von, editor, '*Kāśyapaparivarta*', (Commercial Press, 1926), ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: VON STEÄL-HOLSTEIN).
- Steinkellner, E., *Śāntideva, Eintritt in das Leben zur Erleuchtung (Bodhicaryāvatāra). Lehrgedicht des Mahāyāna aus dem Sanskrit übersetzt*. Volume 34: Diederichs gelbe Reihe, (Düsseldorf-Köln: Eugen Diederichs Verlag, 1981) (cited: STEINKELLNER, '*Bodhicaryāvatāra*').
- Idem, 'The Logic of the "svabhāvaheṭu" in Dharmakīrti's "Vādanyāya"', in: Idem, editor, *Studies in the Buddhist Epistemological Tradition: Proceedings of the Second International Dharmakīrti Conference, Vienna, June 11–16, 1989*, Volume 8. (Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, Philosophisch-historische Klasse, Dekschriften, 222 Band., Wein: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1991), pp. 311–324 (cited: STEINKELLNER, 'Logic').
- Suzuki, D. T., editor, *The Tibetan Tripitaka: Peking edition. Reprinted under the supervision of the Otani University, Kyōto*, (Tōkyō & Kyōto: Suzuki Research Foundation, 1955–1961), a repr. & catalogue of the Peking bsTan 'gyur and bKa' 'gyur (cited: SUZUKI).
- Idem and Idzumi, H., '*Gaṇḍavyūha*', (Kyōto, 1934–1936), 4 fasc., ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: SUZUKI & IDZUMI).
- Takasaki, J., *An Introduction to Buddhism*, (Tōkyō: The Tōhō Gakkai, 1987), tr. by R. Geibel (cited: TAKASAKI).
- Taylor, A., editor, '*Paṭisaṃbhidāmagga*', (London: H. Frowde for Pāli Text Society, 1905–1907), 2 vols., ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: TAYLOR).
- Thiṭṭila, A., *The Book of Analysis*, (London: Luzac for Pāli Text Society, 1969), a tr. fr. the Pāli of the 'Vibhaṅga' (cited: THIṬṬILA).
- Tillemans, T. J. F., 'Dharmakīrti, Āryadeva, and Dharmapāla on Scriptural Authority', *Tetsugaku: The Journal of the Hiroshima Philosophical Society* 38 (1986), pp. 31–47 (cited: TILLEMANS, 'Authority').

- Tillemans, T. J. F., 'Remarks on philology', *Journal of the International Association of Buddhist Studies (Madison, Wisconsin)* 18:2 (1995), pp. 269–277 (cited: TILLEMANS, 'Remarks').
- Trenckner, V. and Chalmers, R., '*Majjhima-Nikāya*' I–III, (London: H. Frowde & H. Milford for Pāli Text Society, 1888–1925), 4 vols., ed. of compl. Pāli text (cited: TRENCKNER & CHALMERS).
- Tuck, A. P., *Comparative Philosophy and the Philosophy of Scholarship: On the Western Interpretation of Nāgārjuna*, (New York & Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1990) (cited: TUCK).
- Vaidya, P., '*Aṣṭasāhasrikā prajñāpāramitā*' with Haribhadra's Commentary called 'Āloka', (Darbhanga: Mithila Institute, 1960), Buddhist Sanskrit Texts 4, ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: VAIDYA, '*Aṣṭasāhasrikā*').
- Idem, '*Bodhicaryāvatāra*' of Śāntideva with the Commentary 'Pañjikā' of Prajñākaramati, (Darbhanga: Mithila Institute, 1960), Buddhist Sanskrit Texts 12, ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: VAIDYA, '*Bodhicaryāvatāra*').
- Idem, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*' of Śāntideva, (Darbhanga: Mithila Research Institute, 1961), Buddhist Sanskrit Texts 11 (cited: VAIDYA, '*Śikṣāsamuccaya*').
- Wallace, V. A. and Wallace, B. A., *A guide to the Bodhisattva way of life, by Śāntideva*, (Ithaca, NY: Snow Lion Publications, 1997), a tr. fr. Skt. & Tib. texts (cited: WALLACE & WALLACE).
- Warder, A. K., *Indian Buddhism*, (Delhi, 1980) (cited: WARDER).
- Watanabe, F., *Philosophy and Its Development in the Nikāyas and Abhidharma*, (Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1983) (cited: WATANABE).
- Watanabe, K., editor, *Die Bhadracaryā: Eine Probe buddhistisch-religiöser Lyrik*, (Leipzig: Unters. u. Hrsg., 1912) (cited: WATANABE).
- Watanabe, S., 'A comparative study of the "Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā Prajñāpāramitā"', *The Journal of the American Oriental Society* 114:3 (1994), pp. 114–113 (cited: WATANABE).
- Wayman, A., 'Buddhism', in: Bleeker, C. J. and Wildergren, G., editors, *Historia Religionus. Handbook for the History of Religions. Volume II: Religions of the Present*, (Leiden, 1971), pp. 372–464 (cited: WAYMAN, 'Buddhism').
- Wayman, A., *Calming the Mind and Discerning the Real*, (New York: Columbia University Press, 1978) (cited: WAYMAN, *Calming*).
- Idem, 'Indian Buddhism', *Journal of Indian Philosophy (Dordrecht)* 6:4 (1978), pp. 415–427 (cited: WAYMAN, 'Indian Buddhism').
- Williams, P., *Mahāyāna Buddhism: The Doctrinal Foundations*, (London: Routledge, 1994) (cited: WILLIAMS, *Buddhism*).
- Idem, *Altruism and reality: Studies in the philosophy of the 'Bodhicaryāvatāra'*, (Richmond, Surrey: Curzon Press, 1998) (cited: WILLIAMS, *Altruism*).
- Winternitz, M., *A History of Indian Literature*, (New York: Russell & Russell, 1972), 2 vols., tr. fr. the German of the 'Geschichte der indischen Literatur' by Ketkar, S., Kohn, H., & revised by Winternitz, M. (cited: WINTERNITZ).
- Wogihara, U., 'Bouddhisme. Notes et Bibliographie: Contributions to the study of the "Śikṣāsamuccaya" derived from Chinese Sources (1)', *Le Muséon* 5 (1904), pp. 96–103, 209–15, supplementary to the ed. of Bendall (cited: WOGIHARA, 'Contributions–I').

- Wogihara, U., 'Bouddhisme. Notes et Bibliographie: Contributions to the study of the "Śikṣāsamuccaya" derived from Chinese Sources (1)', *Le Muséon* 7 (1904), pp. 255–261, supplementary to the ed. of Bendall (cited: WOGIHARA, 'Contributions-II').
- Idem, editor, '*Abhisamayālaṅkāraloka prajñāpāramitāvyaḥyā*', *the work of Haribhadra together with the text commented on*, (Tōkyō: Toyo Bunko, 1932–1935), ed. of compl. Skt. text (cited: WOGIHARA, '*Abhisamayālaṅkāraloka*').
- Idem, editor, '*Bodhisattvabhūmi*': *a statement of whole course of the Bodhisattva (being fifteenth section of Yogācārabhūmi)*, (Tōkyō, 1936), ed. of text (cited: WOGIHARA, '*Bodhisattvabhūmi*').
- Woodward, F. and Hare, E., *The Book of Gradual Sayings I–V*, (London: Pāli Text Society, 1923–1926), 5 vols., tr. fr. Pāli of the 'Aṅguttara-Nikāya' (cited: WOODWARD & HARE).
- Zangmo, T. and Chime, D., '*Dharmasaṅgraha*': *Excellent collection of doctrine of Acarya Nagarjuna*, 1st edition. (Sarnath, Varanasi: Central Institute of Higher Tibetan Studies, 1993), Eng., Skt., & Tib. of the 'Acarya Nagarjunapranitah Dharmasangraha' = 'Phags-pa Klu-sgrub kyis mdzad pa'i Chos yan dag par bsdus pas'. Includes bibliographical references. Classified list of technical terms used in Buddhist philosophical and canonical works. (cited: ZANGMO & CHIME).

## INDEX OF TERMS.

- abhaya* 172.  
*abhidharma* 10.  
*abhinirharati* 153.  
*abhinirhṛta* 153.  
*abhinīṣkrāntagr̥hāvāsa* 49.  
*abhiniviṣṭa* 190.  
*abhisambodhi* 148.  
*abhisambudhyate* 175.  
*abhūtaparikalpa* 144.  
*abhūtaparikalpātā* 144.  
*abhūtavikalpa* 144.  
*abhyudgata* 62.  
*acapala* 99.  
*ācārya* 84.  
*ādara* 106.  
*ādeya* 99, 196.  
*adhimukticyābhūmi* 77, 80.  
*adhipati* 41.  
*adhiṣṭhāna* 70, 153.  
*adhruva* 138.  
*adhyāśaya* 85, 164, 169.  
*adhyāśayākāra* 133.  
*ādhyātmikāyatana* 75, 194.  
*adhyeṣaṇa* 164, 170, 178, 201.  
*ādikarmika* 105.  
*adveṣa* 139.  
*agra* 62, 86.  
*agradharma* 182.  
*agr̥dvā* 86.  
*aḥaṃkāra* 136.  
*akalyāṇamitra* 104.  
*ākāra* 125, 133.  
*akaukr̥tyatā* 134.  
*akṣaṇa* 63, 78.  
*akṣobhyacitta* 129.  
*akuśala* 35, 58, 87, 105, 121.  
*akuśaladharmā* 96, 172.  
*akuśalāḥ karmapathāḥ* 109.  
*akuśalamūla* 139.  
*akuśalāni karmāni* 121, 156.  
*alābha* 129.  
*ālasya* 118, 187.  
*ālīnacitta* 182.  
*alobha* 139.  
*alpecchatā āsevitavyā* 60.  
*alulita* 83.  
*amanaskavacana* 59.  
*āmiṣa* 70.  
*āmiṣadāna* 70.  
*amitra* 55.  
*amoha* 139.  
*āmukhikarma* 88.  
*anabhilāpya* 153.  
*anābhoga* 54.  
*anadhimukti* 104.  
*anadhyavasita* 151.  
*anālasya* 162, 169, 173, 187.  
*anālasyavardhana* 162, 173.  
*ānandavacana* 172.  
*ānantarya* 77, 80, 81, 146.  
*anartha* 63, 96, 100, 103.  
*anarthavivarjana* 97.  
*anartha + √ vr̥j* 104.  
*anavalīna* 28, 130.  
*anavamardya* 48.  
*an + ava + √ mṛd* 48.  
*anavamṛdya* 130.  
*anāvaraṇa* 145.  
*aniketa* 144.  
*anitya* 59, 83, 119, 125, 138.  
*anityatāmanasikāra* 138.  
*antara* 114.  
*antar + √ i* 105.  
*anudarśa* 145.  
*ānulomikena vīryeṇa* 185.  
*anumodanā* 164, 170, 178, 201.  
*anunaya* 55, 143.  
*anunayapratighotsarga* 55.  
*anupaśyanā* 145.  
*anurakkhana* 38, 39.  
*anuśamsa* 160, 165, 178, 182, 188.  
*anusaya* 49.  
*anuśaya* 49, 143.  
*anusmṛti* 70, 165, 201.  
*anutpādakausālyāśravaṇākāra* 133.  
*anuttarapariṇāmanā* 169.  
*anuttarapūjā* 161, 164, 165, 168,  
 177, 178, 188, 201.  
*anuttarasamyaksambodhi* 80.  
*anuvyañjana* 184.  
*aparitarṣaṇa* 130.  
*aparyutthānatā* 134.

- āpatti 74, 75, 77, 80, 90.  
 āpattiniḥśaraṇajāna 134.  
 apāya 121, 200.  
 api 108, 117, 159.  
 aprabhinna 134.  
 apramāda 167, 168, 171, 184, 201.  
 apramādāviyojana 167.  
 apramāṇa 54, 60.  
 apratigha 144.  
 apratiṣṭhita 163.  
 apratyavekṣā 101.  
 apratyavekṣaṇā 101.  
 apriya 139.  
 apūrva 20, 64.  
 ārabdhavīrya 173.  
 ārakṣā 185.  
 araṇyam āsrayaṇīyam 125.  
 araṇyavāsa 125.  
 arhant 27, 29, 35, 40, 43, 44, 49,  
 52, 54, 56, 160.  
 ariyasaccāni 58.  
 ariyāṭṭaṅgikamagga 56.  
 artha 121.  
 arthakriyā 153.  
 arthapratīśaraṇākāra 133.  
 arūpadhātu 137.  
 āryasaṃgha 84.  
 āryasatyāni 58.  
 āryāṣṭāṅgamārga 24, 56, 105, 110,  
 123.  
 āryavīrya 61.  
 asaṃkucita 134.  
 asaṃpramoṣa 204.  
 asaṃsadana 129.  
 asaṃsādana 129.  
 asārāc charitrāt sārādānābhiprāya 83.  
 asāraka 142.  
 āśaya 163, 164, 168, 200.  
 āśayākāra 133.  
 āśayasampanna 135.  
 āśikṣita 11, 64.  
 āśrayabala 122, 124, 156.  
 astra 174.  
 aśubha 119, 125.  
 aśubhābhāvanā 139, 140, 142, 157.  
 aśuci 105, 142.  
 aśuddhi 155.  
 aśukla 87.  
 atitṛpti 162, 200.  
 ātmā garhaniya 112.  
 ātmabhāva x. 15, 65, 74, 82, 146,  
 155, 194.  
 ātmabhāvādi 95, 195.  
 ātmabhāvarakṣā 115.  
 ātmabhāvarakṣaṇa 16, 27, 100, 191.  
 ātmabhāvaśodhana 16, 173, 191.  
 ātmabhāvaśuddhi 32, 155.  
 ātmabhāvavardhana 16, 191.  
 ātmabhāvavṛddhi 186.  
 ātmabhāvotsarga 75, 89.  
 ātmabhāvotsarjana 16, 72, 82, 89,  
 191.  
 ātmahetu 112.  
 ātman 74, 82, 157, 194.  
 ātmānam upanidhāya 86.  
 ātmānam ut + √kr 105.  
 ātmatrṣṇopabhoga 101.  
 ātmaviparyāsa 32, 119, 141.  
 atṛpta 48.  
 atṛptatā 48.  
 ātura 183.  
 atyanta 153.  
 avacarī 46.  
 avajñā 106.  
 avamānya 105.  
 avanāma 172.  
 āvaraṇa 127, 140, 157.  
 avasāda 104.  
 avatāra 133, 153.  
 avekṣikā ca buddhadharmāṇām 55.  
 avidyā 134, 143.  
 avikṣiptacittendriya 137, 157.  
 avinivartin 179.  
 aviśama 142.  
 aviśeṣa 78.  
 ā + √vrj 106.  
 ayaśa 129.  
 ayoniśomanaskāra 107, 113.  
 bahuduḥkha 127.  
 bahuduḥkhām 127.  
 bahuśruti 27.  
 bahuśrutya 27.  
 bahusukhām 127.  
 bāhyaceṣṭa 106.  
 bāhyāyatana 75, 194.  
 bala 24, 42, 49, 65, 162, 165, 167–  
 170, 172, 177, 178, 187,  
 188.  
 bhadracaryā 161, 164, 201.  
 bhaisajya 183.  
 bhāra 169, 172.  
 bhāṣyārāma 59.  
 bhāva 74, 194.  
 bhāvana 38, 39.  
 bhāvanā 81, 85, 157, 181.  
 bhavaniḥśaraṇa 138.  
 bhāvayitum iṣṭam 11.

- bhaya 71, 90.  
 bhikṣu 55, 182.  
 bhikṣuṇikā 182.  
 bhīta 172.  
 bhoga x. 15, 65, 74, 75, 83, 172, 194.  
 bhogaḥ pathyaḥ 120, 198.  
 bhogarakṣā 115.  
 bhogarakṣaṇa 16, 191.  
 bhogaśodhana 16, 174, 191.  
 bhogaśuddhi 122, 126, 155.  
 bhogavardhana 16, 191.  
 bhogavṛddhi 186.  
 bhogotsarga 75, 89.  
 bhogotsarjana 16, 72, 82, 89, 191.  
 bhojana 172.  
 √bhuj 74, 194.  
 bhūmi 39.  
 bhūmipariśodhaka 45.  
 bhūtacikitsā 172.  
 bhūyobhāvāya 35.  
 bodhi 25, 145, 160.  
 bodhicitta 4, 59, 66, 77, 78, 122, 166, 168, 178, 183.  
 bodhicittotpāda 164, 201.  
 bodhikaradharma 177.  
 bodhimārgopastambha 82.  
 bodhipakkhika 25.  
 bodhipakkhiya 25.  
 bodhipakkhiya dhamma 21, 26.  
 bodhipakṣa 25, 26, 102.  
 bodhipakṣa dharma 21, 24–27, 65, 110, 153, 154, 178.  
 bodhipakṣika 25, 26.  
 bodhipakṣika 25, 28.  
 bodhipakṣika dharma 24.  
 bodhipakṣya 25, 26.  
 bodhipakṣyamārga 27.  
 bodhipariṇāmana 107.  
 bodhiprapidhicitta 73, 77, 80, 90.  
 bodhiprasthānacitta 73.  
 bodhisattva ix.  
 bodhisattva-mahāsattva ix. 176, 182, 205.  
 bodhisattvamārga ix. 4, 15, 61, 80, 179, 184, 190, 191.  
 bodhisattvaratna 84.  
 bodhisattvasaṃvarasaṃgraha 75.  
 bodhisattvaśikṣāpāda 13.  
 bodhisattvaśikṣāśārīra 12.  
 bodhyaṅga 24, 49, 50, 65, 111.  
 bodhyaṅgair abhiyuktaḥ 49.  
 bojhaṅga 49, 54.  
 buddha 160.  
 buddhabhāṣita 13, 14, 64.  
 buddhādhyeṣaṇa 169.  
 buddhādyanusmṛti 164, 165, 200.  
 buddhāḥ bhagavantaḥ 84.  
 buddhānusmṛti 165, 170, 179, 201.  
 buddhasamavadhāna 170, 178, 188.  
 buddhasaṃjñā 13.  
 buddhasāsana 90.  
 buddhasāsanaopasthambhapudgala 84.  
 buddhatva 160, 162, 200.  
 buddhavacana 13.  
 buddhi 71, 134, 157.  
 buddhopaniśrayavivāhāriṇa 87.  
 caitya 172.  
 cakṣurindriya 184.  
 cakṣus 75, 194.  
 caramāṇa 135.  
 caryāpariśuddhi 152.  
 catvāra ṛddhipādāḥ 41.  
 catvāro dharmāḥ 121, 123, 128, 156.  
 chanda 35, 41.  
 chandākāra 133.  
 cintana 167.  
 citta 31, 41, 80, 85, 106, 113, 119, 126, 141, 144, 157, 180, 188.  
 cittakṣaṇa 175.  
 cittakṣati 60.  
 cittaṃ mahāpuruṣāṇām 45.  
 cittaṃ pragṛhṇāti 35.  
 cittaṃ utpādayati 181.  
 cittanagara 106.  
 cittānavilatā 134.  
 cittānityatā 32, 141.  
 cittānityatāyām smṛtim upasthāpayan 141.  
 cittapragraha 94.  
 cittasamatā 55.  
 cittasmṛtyupasthāna 29.  
 cittaśūra 82.  
 cyavati 146.  
 dāna ix. 15, 69ff., 75, 87, 89, 150.  
 dānamārga ix. 15.  
 dānapāramitā 12, 69, 90, 127, 156.  
 dānaviśuddhi 126, 152.  
 daridratā 172.  
 darśana 96, 154, 195.  
 darśin 147.  
 datvā 102, 198.  
 dauṣṭilya 127.  
 dauṣṭilyasamudācaraṇa 60.  
 daurmanasyatyāga 129.

- deśyati* 182.  
*deva* 147.  
*devānusr̥ṭi* 165, 201.  
*dhana* 45, 70.  
*dharmabhāṇaka* 99.  
*dharmacarya* 70.  
*dharmadāna* 69, 166, 171, 201.  
*dharmadānaṃ nirāmiṣaṃ* 166.  
*dharmadarśanāt buddhadarśanaṃ bud-*  
*dhadarśanāt* 154.  
*dharmadeśanā* 171.  
*dharmagaurava* 133.  
*dharmakāma* 133.  
*dharmakāya* 124, 127.  
*dharmālokaṃ mukha* 45.  
*dharmānairātmya* 32, 141.  
*dharmānairātmye smṛtim upasthā-*  
*payan* 141.  
*dharmāṇaṃ dharmatā* 146.  
*dharmānidhyānakṣānti* 124, 129, 156.  
*dharmānusmarāṇa* 130.  
*dharmānusr̥ṭi* 165, 170, 179, 201.  
*dharmapratiśaraṇākāra* 133.  
*dharmapravicaya* 52.  
*dharmapravicayasambodhyaṅga* 50,  
 52.  
*dharmasambhāra* 125, 133, 156, 178.  
*dharmasmṛtyupasthāna* 29.  
*dharmatā* 146.  
*dhātu* 126.  
*√ dhṛ* 104.  
*dhyāna* 23, 54, 60, 87, 156, 178.  
*dhyānapāramitā* 12, 79.  
*dhyānapāramitāyāṃ caran* 134.  
*√ diṣ* 105.  
*doṣa* 59, 63, 157, 169.  
*√ dṛś* 104.  
*dṛṣṭa* 148.  
*dṛṣṭikṛta* 46, 58.  
*duḥkha* 54, 55, 129.  
*durbala* 49.  
*durgati* 121, 200.  
*durnyāsa* 101.  
*duryodhanacitta* 129.  
*duḥkha* 71, 73, 90.  
*duḥkhādhivāsanakṣānti* 124, 129, 156.  
*dvaya* 149.  
*dvayavigamatā* 123, 152, 174.  
*dveṣa* 119, 125, 129, 135, 139, 140,  
 143, 157.  
*dveṣasamudācārapratipakṣa* 148.  
*ekāgracitta* 41.  
*gandha* 75, 194.  
*garbhamala* 170, 178, 188.  
*gati* 121, 200.  
*gaurava* 46, 170, 178.  
*ghrāṇa* 75, 194.  
*ghrāṇendriya* 184.  
*glāna* 172.  
*glānapratyayabhaiṣajya* 106.  
*gotra* 78.  
*gotrabhūmi* 77, 80.  
*√ gṛdh* 86.  
*gṛhadōṣa* 118, 125, 134.  
*gṛhapati* 136.  
*gṛhikarmāntavaiyāpṛtya* 62.  
*guṇa* 120, 155, 170, 179, 188.  
*guru* 84.  
*hāyaka* 13.  
*hetu* 139, 147, 151, 154.  
*hiṃsā* 58.  
*hīnāni karmāṇi* 62.  
*iddhipāda* 40.  
*ikṣāṇa* 96, 195.  
*indriya* 24, 42, 43, 46, 65, 138, 165,  
 168, 170, 177, 178, 184,  
 188.  
*īryāpatha* 100, 106.  
*jhānāni* 58.  
*jighatsā* 172.  
*jihvā* 75, 194.  
*jihvendriya* 184.  
*jina* 135.  
*jñāna* 62, 133, 134, 153, 156.  
*jñānāni* 58.  
*jñānasambhāra* 125, 133, 156.  
*kalpa* 89.  
*kalyāṇamitra* 96, 104.  
*kalyāṇī* 139.  
*kāma* 58, 105.  
*kāmadhātu* 137.  
*kāpuruṣacitta* 71.  
*kāraṇa* 13.  
*kārikā* 8, 10, 14, 15, 64, 76, 105,  
 109.  
*karma* 46, 47, 66, 179.  
*karmabhavakāropacitakāya* 142.  
*karmaphalasaṃbandha* 147.  
*karmārāma* 60.  
*karmāvaraṇa* 109.  
*karuṇā* 23, 123, 163, 164, 167, 169,  
 172, 176, 187.

- kāya 31, 75, 119, 126, 141, 155,  
 157, 194.  
 kāyakṣati 60.  
 kāyasmṛtyupasthāna 29.  
 kāyāśucau smṛtim upasthāpayan 141.  
 kāyāśuci 31, 141.  
 kāyendriya 184.  
 khinna 130.  
 kleśa 13, 65, 120, 157.  
 kleśapakṣa 25.  
 kleśavardhana 71.  
 kleśavaśa 112.  
 krodha 118.  
 kṛpaṇavanīpakayācanaka 84.  
 kṛtrimasamjñā 145.  
 kṣamā 172.  
 kṣaṇa 79, 80.  
 kṣaṇasampad 63.  
 kṣānti 87, 118, 129, 156.  
 kṣāntipāramitā 12.  
 kṣatriya 105, 109.  
 kuhana 150.  
 kuśala 11, 35, 87, 102.  
 kuśaladharmā 172.  
 kuśaladharmā bodhipakṣāḥ 177.  
 kuśalamūla 139.  
 kuśalamūlapariṇāma 169.  
 kusalāni 58.  
 kuśalāni 58.  
 kuśalāni karmāni 121, 156.  
 kusamskṛta 135.  
 kusīda 173.  
  
 lābha 129.  
 lābhasatkāra 60.  
 laghusukumāracitta 129.  
 lakṣaṇa 179.  
 līna 130, 132.  
 līnatā 129.  
 lobha 139.  
 lokadharmā 129, 149.  
 lokasamvṛtisatya 79.  
 lokasya mantra 59.  
  
 Madhyamaka 5, 6, 9, 78.  
 Mādhyamika 3, 8, 9.  
 mahādakṣiṇīya 99.  
 mahādāna 83.  
 mahākaruṇā 83, 111, 113, 123, 143,  
 152, 158, 164, 169, 174,  
 176, 187.  
 mahanto 'narthāḥ 109.  
 mahāprañidhāna 169.  
 mahāpuruṣalakṣaṇa 28.  
  
 mahāsamnāhasamnaddha 153, 175.  
 mahāsattva ix. 78, 79.  
 mahātman 83, 97, 196.  
 mātmya 83, 97, 196.  
 mahātyāga 83.  
 mahāyānasamprasthita 109, 178.  
 maitratā 176.  
 maitrī 23, 59, 83, 111, 113, 119,  
 125, 139, 140, 157, 164,  
 165, 200.  
 maitrīdāna 70.  
 maitrīsamnāhasamnaddha 153.  
 mamakāra 136.  
 māna 172.  
 manas 75, 194.  
 maṇḍala 130.  
 manendriya 184.  
 manopavicāra 126.  
 mantra 107.  
 mārakarma 27, 107.  
 mārāmārgopasthambha 82.  
 mārāṅka 104.  
 mārapakṣika 25.  
 mārga ix. 181.  
 marmasthāna ix. 15, 64, 74, 78,  
 80, 90, 121, 161.  
 mātrañña 101, 197.  
 matsyamāmsa 106.  
 māyā 144.  
 māyādharmatā 131.  
 mīmāṃsā 41.  
 mitra 55.  
 moha 59, 119, 125, 134, 135, 139,  
 140, 143, 157.  
 muditā 23.  
 mukha 180.  
 muktacitta 83.  
 mūla 14.  
 mūlapatti 60, 105, 109.  
 mūlapattīnām samgrahakā 109.  
 muni 114.  
  
 naga 147.  
 nāgrhītacitta 83.  
 naraka 121, 200.  
 nīḍa 142.  
 nidāna 139, 151.  
 nidānamūla 71.  
 nīḍha 142.  
 nidhyapti 88.  
 nidrārāma 60.  
 niḥsaraṇa 145.  
 niḥsaraṇīyadhātava 55.  
 niḥsvabhāvatā 147.

- niḥsvabhāvatā sarvadharmāḥ 146.  
 nikṣepa 101.  
 nimitta 86, 151, 184.  
 nimittāgrahītāra 86.  
 nimitta + agra + √hīṭr 86.  
 nindā 129.  
 nirāmiṣa 166, 201.  
 nirāmiṣadharmadāna 166, 168, 182,  
 188.  
 nirātmānaḥ sarvadharmāḥ 146.  
 nirātmatva 147.  
 nirmāna 46, 170, 178.  
 ni + √rudh 143.  
 nirvāṇaḥ 13, 65.  
 niṣkaṇa 120, 198.  
 niṣphala 96.  
 niṣphalasyanda 96, 103, 195.  
 niṣphalasyandavarjana 30.  
 niṣprapañca 63.  
 nīta 142.  
 nitya 157.  
 nityaviparyāsa 32, 119, 141.  
 nivāmiṣadāna 171.  
 nīvaraṇaviṣkambhanatā 134.  
 nyāsa 101.  
 nyasana 101.  
 √pac 63.  
 pacyate 99, 114, 197.  
 pacyeta 99, 197.  
 pāda 128, 162, 163, 165, 167.  
 padhāna 34, 38.  
 padmaṃ 53.  
 padyaṃ 53.  
 pahāna 38, 39.  
 pahāṇa 34.  
 √pañc 63.  
 paṇḍita 182.  
 paññā 46.  
 pāpadeśanā 164, 169, 177, 201.  
 pāpaka 35.  
 pāpakākūśaladharmā 138.  
 pāpaśodhana 121, 127, 156.  
 parahita 151.  
 parākramasampannatā 134.  
 parakṛtyakārita 102.  
 paramaḥ yānaḥ 45.  
 paramārtha 78, 126, 149.  
 paramārthatasatya 79.  
 pāramitā 4, 12, 118, 156.  
 parāpakāramarṣaṇakṣānti 124, 129,  
 156.  
 parāprasādarakṣā 100.  
 parārtha 106, 107, 187.  
 parātmaparivartana 4, 72, 79, 171.  
 parātmasamatā 4, 72, 171.  
 parāyāna 180.  
 paribhāṣaka 99, 197.  
 paribhāṣati 99, 197.  
 paribhava 100.  
 paribhoga 95.  
 paribhūya 99, 197.  
 pariccheda 7.  
 pari + √grah 104.  
 parigraha 71, 77, 81, 90.  
 parigrahacitta 90.  
 parigrahadoṣa 81.  
 parikarabandha 174.  
 pariṇāma 85.  
 pariṇamana 85.  
 pariṇāmana 85, 164, 178, 201.  
 pariṇāmanā 85, 178.  
 pariniṣpatti 179.  
 pariprāpayati 175.  
 paripūraṇa 204.  
 pariśodhayamāna 83.  
 parityāga 70.  
 parityāgin 82.  
 parivāra 71.  
 pari + √vij 104.  
 paryavadana 32.  
 paryutthāna 134.  
 paścāttāpa 103.  
 passaddhi 54.  
 paṭhitavya 85.  
 phala 96, 195.  
 pīti 54.  
 praçrabdhi 54.  
 prabhinna 134.  
 pra + √car 144.  
 pracāra 144.  
 pra + √dhā 34, 36, 39, 65.  
 pradhāna 34, 36, 37, 44, 61.  
 pra + √hā 34, 36, 39, 65.  
 prahāna 34-37, 44, 60, 204.  
 prajñā 46, 62, 81, 156, 167, 169,  
 170, 172, 174, 178, 187.  
 prajñābala 43.  
 prajñācakṣus 134.  
 prajñākarma 62.  
 prajñāpāramitā 12, 24, 32.  
 prajñāpāramitāyāṃ śikṣitavyam 174.  
 prajñāpariśuddhi 152.  
 prajñāpti 147.  
 prajñāptisāvadyatva 135.  
 prajñāskandha 33.  
 prajñendriya 42.  
 prakāra 103, 107, 113.

- pra + √ kās 107.  
 prāmāṇika 152.  
 prāmāṇikaviśuddhi 152.  
 prāmodya 52, 53, 130.  
 pramuditaprītisaumana 83.  
 praṇidhāna 27, 85.  
 prapañca 63, 64.  
 prapañcarāma 63.  
 prasāda 52, 53, 130.  
 prasādavega 11.  
 praśama 119, 125, 132, 134.  
 praśamsā 129.  
 prasaṅga 6.  
 Prāsaṅgika Mādhyamika 6.  
 prasanna 102, 198.  
 praśrabdhi 51, 53, 54, 66.  
 praśrabdhisambodhyaṅga 50.  
 pratibhāna 13.  
 pratibhāsa 153.  
 pratibimba 153.  
 pratigha 55, 143, 172.  
 pratikāra 129.  
 prati + √ kṣip 105.  
 prātimokṣa 74.  
 pratipakṣa 31, 118, 124, 139, 156.  
 pratipakṣasamudācāra 121, 124, 156.  
 pratipattisāratā 134.  
 pratipraśrabdhi 54.  
 pratirūpika 111.  
 pratiśaraṇa 180.  
 pratīyasamutpāda 47, 119, 125, 140,  
 146, 158, 179.  
 pratīyasamutpādadarśana 140, 157.  
 pratyakṣa 134.  
 pratyāpatti 156.  
 pratyāpattibala 121, 124, 156.  
 pratyaya 139, 147, 154.  
 pratyekabuddha 23, 84, 90, 177.  
 pratyekabuddhayāna 48, 81.  
 pravacaya 51, 52, 66.  
 pra + vi + √ ci 52.  
 prayogākāra 133.  
 preman 83.  
 preta 121, 200.  
 pretyavekṣā 101.  
 prīti 51ff., 66, 130.  
 prītisaṃbodhyaṅga 50.  
 prītivegāḥ pravṛttāḥ 53.  
 priyavacana 100.  
 pūjā 170.  
 pūjanā 164, 177, 201.  
 puṇya x. 15, 65, 75, 85, 186, 195.  
 puṇyakriyāvastūni 70.  
 puṇyānumodanā 169.  
 puṇyarakṣā 115.  
 puṇyarakṣaṇa 16, 191.  
 puṇyaśodhana 16, 122, 191.  
 puṇyaśuddhi 26, 155, 158.  
 puṇyavardhana 16, 163, 191.  
 puṇyavṛddhi 186.  
 puṇyotsarga 75, 89.  
 puṇyotsarjana 16, 72, 82, 89, 191.  
 pūrvaṅgama 176.  
 rāga 59, 119, 125, 135, 139, 140,  
 142, 143, 157.  
 rāgasya samudācārapratipakṣaḥ 148.  
 rājamātra 27.  
 √ rakṣ x. 17, 72, 104.  
 rakṣa 147.  
 rakṣā 37ff., 65, 75, 89, 93, 108, 115,  
 155, 168, 183.  
 rakṣaṇa 16, 17, 21.  
 rasa 75, 194.  
 rasāgra 86.  
 rasagṛddhi 86.  
 raśmi 170, 181.  
 ratna 49.  
 ratnatrayānusmṛti 165, 168, 170,  
 177, 179, 188.  
 ṛddhipāda 24, 40, 65.  
 ṛddhyabhijñā 41, 60.  
 rūpa 74, 75, 180, 194.  
 rūpadhātu 137.  
 śabda 75, 194.  
 sadāsmṛti 98.  
 sadāsmṛtyā 30.  
 saddhā 44.  
 saddharma 77.  
 sahāya 175.  
 sahāyaka 175.  
 sahāyika 175.  
 śaithilya 174.  
 śama 98, 106.  
 samādāna 105, 109.  
 samādhi 41, 46, 51, 63, 66, 87, 106,  
 122, 125, 128, 145, 170,  
 178, 181, 199.  
 samādhibala 43.  
 samādhibodhyaṅgaguṇa 50.  
 samādhindriya 42.  
 samādhisaṃbodhyaṅga 50.  
 samādhiskandha 33.  
 samāhita 62, 97, 196.  
 samāhitamanas 97, 196.  
 śamamāhātmya 97, 98, 196.  
 samānārthatā 153.

- samanvāgata* 182.  
*samanvāharati* 88, 182.  
*śamasya mähātmyam* 97, 98, 106, 196.  
*samatā* 83, 97, 196.  
*śamatha* 98, 106, 153.  
*śamathamāhātmya* 97, 196.  
*samavasaraṇa* 23.  
*samavasaraṭi* 145.  
*sambodhyaṅga* 49.  
*sambojjhaṅga* 49.  
*saṃcayābhāva* 150.  
*saṃghānusmṛti* 165, 170, 179, 201.  
*saṃgraha* 23, 99, 197.  
*saṃgrahavastu* 153, 175.  
*saṃgrahavastūni* 70.  
*saṃjñā* 13, 74, 194.  
*saṃlīna* 130.  
*sammappadhāna* 33.  
*saṃnāha* 27, 28, 169, 174.  
*saṃniveśa* 190.  
*sampadā* 45.  
*saṃprajanya* 27, 30, 153, 167.  
*saṃsāra* 46, 78, 155.  
*saṃsāraguṇa* 13.  
*saṃskāra* 74, 80, 138, 144, 147, 194.  
*saṃskṛta* 62, 133.  
*samuccaya* 9.  
*sam + ud + ā + √ car* 148.  
*samudācāra* ix.  
*sam + ud + ā + √ gam* 148.  
*samudānayaṭi* 185.  
*samudānetā* 147.  
*samudāniyante* 146.  
*saṃvara* ix. 38, 39, 74, 77, 78, 80, 99, 197.  
*saṃvarasamādāna* 121.  
*saṃvartante* 33.  
*saṃvṛti* 78, 126, 149, 192.  
*samyagājīva* 57, 105, 123, 150, 158.  
*samyagdarśana* 154.  
*samyagdr̥ṣṭi* 57, 105, 138.  
*samyagvāc* 57, 105.  
*samyagvyāyāma* 57, 61, 105.  
*samyakkarmānta* 57, 105.  
*samyakpradhāna* x. 8, 17, 21, 24, 33, 36ff., 61, 65, 87, 94, 168, 186, 190.  
*samyakpradhānāḥ* 34.  
*samyakprahāṇa* 34, 38, 171.  
*samyakpraṇidadhāti* 20, 35, 93, 115, 203.  
*samyakpraṇidhāna* 94.  
*samyaksamādhi* 57, 63, 105.  
*samyaksambodhi* x. 15, 190, 191.  
*samyaksambodhipakṣa* 26.  
*samyaksamkalpa* 57, 105.  
*samyaksmṛti* 31, 57, 105.  
*samyāñc* 56.  
*śāntacitta* 138.  
*śāntakāya* 138.  
*śāntavāc* 138.  
*saptatṛiṃśadākārabhāvanā* 24.  
*saptatṛiṃśadbodhipākṣikadharmā* 24.  
*saptavidhā anuttarapūjā* 85.  
*sāra* 142.  
*śārīra* 74, 194.  
*sarvabalopastambhanātr̥ptatā* 88.  
*sarvabodhisatvacaryāsamyaksamkalpa* 58.  
*sarva + √ dā* x. 15.  
*sarvadāna* x. 8, 17, 75.  
*sarvadharmā* 81.  
*sarvadharmarati* 130.  
*sarvaduṣkha* 61.  
*sarvaguṇa* 45.  
*sarvakāmarati* 130.  
*sarvākāraropeta* 153.  
*sarvakleśa* 48, 179.  
*sarvakleśanirghātacitta* 129.  
*sarvakuśaladharmā* 87.  
*sarvakuśalamūla* 85, 87.  
*sarvaṃ parityaktam* 181.  
*sarvamāra* 179.  
*sarvapuṇya* 85.  
*sarvarakṣaṇa* 191.  
*sarvasattva* 82, 84.  
*sarvasattvahitasukhayogakṣemārthika* 112.  
*sarvasattvapramokṣa* 113.  
*sarvaśodhana* 191.  
*Sarvāstivāda* 6.  
*sarvaśukladharma* 87.  
*sarvasvaparityāga* 71.  
*sarvasvaparityāgakuśala* 181.  
*sarvasvaparityājana* 81.  
*sarvatyāga* 70, 75.  
*sarvatyāgamanasā* 84.  
*sarva + ut + √ sṛj* x.  
*sarvavardhana* 191.  
*sarvotsarga* 75.  
*sarvotsarjana* x. 17, 190, 191.  
*sarva + ut + √ sṛj* 15.  
*śāstra* 9, 14, 64.  
*śāstṛsaṃjñā* 14.  
*śātana* 142.  
*satatabhāṣajya* 106.  
*sati* 29.

- satipaṭṭhāna* 28.  
*satkāyaḍṣṭi* 136.  
*sat + √kr* 105.  
*sattvārtha* 166, 168, 188.  
*satya* 13, 65.  
*satyadvaya* 79.  
*saumyatā* 176.  
*Sautrāntika* 6.  
*śikṣā* 9, 74.  
*śikṣaṇa* 77, 80.  
*śikṣāpada* ix. 74.  
*śikṣāsamuccaya* 9.  
*śīlā* 87, 96, 106, 112.  
*śīlānusmṛti* 165, 201.  
*śīlapāramitā* 12, 94, 95, 108, 127, 156.  
*śīlaskandha* 33.  
*śīlaviśuddhi* 26, 126, 152.  
*siṃha* 83.  
*skandha* 33, 74, 80, 169, 194.  
*skandhadoṣavivarjanākāra* 133.  
*smṛti* 27, 29, 46, 51, 98, 106, 153, 167, 170, 178.  
*smṛtibala* 31, 43.  
*smṛtīndriya* 31, 42.  
*smṛtīndriyopeta* 88.  
*smṛtisamprajanya* 184.  
*smṛtysaṃbodhyaṅga* 31, 50, 51.  
*smṛtyupasthāna* 24, 28, 29, 51, 65, 119, 126, 157.  
*sneha* 59.  
*śodhana* 16, 17, 21.  
*śokārtāḥ prītilābhinaḥ* 53.  
*sparsā* 126.  
*spraṣṭavya* 75, 194.  
*spṛśa* 155.  
*śraddhā* 44ff., 66, 73, 77, 78, 80, 90, 161, 164, 170, 178, 184, 188, 201.  
*śraddhābala* 43.  
*śraddhādeya* 107.  
*śraddhādīnāṃ sadābhyāsaḥ* 165.  
*śraddhāmūla* 45, 73.  
*śraddhāprajñākṛpānvita* 45.  
*śraddhendriya* 42, 44.  
*śramaṇa* 137.  
*√śrambh* 53.  
*śrāntaklānta* 172.  
*śrāvaka* 84, 90, 160.  
*śrāvakayāna* 48, 81.  
*śrota* 75, 194.  
*śrotendriya* 184.  
*śruta* 36, 125, 132, 156.  
*śrutākāra* 178.  
*śrutasaṃbhāra* 133, 156.  
*śrutasaṃbhārakausālyābhiyoga* 133.  
*śrutavatā* 134.  
*śrutavīryārambhaṇa* 132.  
*sthitaye* 35.  
*√śubh* 75, 195.  
*śubha* 75, 85, 186, 195.  
*śubharakṣaṇa* 102.  
*subhāṣita* 14, 65.  
*śubhaśuddhi* 158.  
*śubhavardhana* 27, 163.  
*śubhotsarga* 75.  
*śubhotsarjana* 72.  
*śuci* 157.  
*śuciviparyāsa* 31, 119, 141.  
*śuddhi* 37ff., 65, 75, 89, 117, 127, 155, 159, 168, 183.  
*sūdgṛhīta* 176.  
*√śudh* x. 17.  
*sugatātmaja* 10.  
*sukha* 54, 55, 73, 75, 129, 157, 194.  
*sukhaviparyāsa* 32, 119, 141.  
*śukla* 87.  
*śukladharma* 60, 87.  
*sukṛtakarmakāritā* 111.  
*sūnyatā* 27, 32, 47, 66, 123, 140, 144, 147, 152ff., 158, 162, 163, 173, 179, 187.  
*sūnyatābhāvanā* 126.  
*sūnyatāvādin* 149.  
*sūra* 12, 149.  
*susamīkṣitakarmakāritā* 107, 111.  
*susamīkṣitakurvāṇa* 101.  
*suvidyā* 79.  
*suviśuddha* 134.  
*svabhāva* 83, 126, 145, 158.  
*svabhāvanānukūlya* 86.  
*svadhiṣṭita* 176.  
*svaparabodhipakṣaśruta* 111.  
*svapnavat* 126.  
*svārtha* 107, 187.  
*svāśaya* 174, 175, 187.  
*svatantra-anumāna* 6.  
*Svātantrika* 6.  
*syanda* 96.  
*tamas* 61, 134, 157.  
*tathatā* 190.  
*tenaivam cittam utpādayitavyam* 181.  
*tiryagyoni* 121, 200.  
*tīvrādara* 98.  
*trāṇa* 81.  
*triratna* 122.  
*tṛṣṇāvardhana* 71.

- tryadhva 75, 195.  
 tyāga 70, 71, 75, 89.  
 tyāgacitta 90.  
 tyāgadhana 70.  
 tyāgādhiṣṭhāna 70.  
 tyāgānuśamsa 81.  
 tyāgānusmṛti 70, 165, 201.
- udāsīna 55.  
 uddeśa 128.  
 uddhata 132.  
 uddhatatva 138.  
 udgrhṇāti 176.  
 ukta 73, 193.  
 unnāma 172.  
 unnati 107, 113.  
 upacāra 83.  
 upapatti 144.  
 upasthāpayati 179.  
 upasthitasmṛti 98.  
 upāya 180, 187.  
 upekṣā 23, 51, 55, 66.  
 upekṣaka 55.  
 upekṣāsaṃbodhyaṅga 50, 54.  
 upekṣāvihārī 54.  
 upekṣikā ca sarvadharmāṇām 55.  
 utpādakaśalyaśravaṇākāra 133.  
 utsarga 70, 71, 75, 78, 89.  
 utsarjana ix. 15ff..  
 ut + √srj 65, 104.
- vacanamātra 85.  
 vaidya 183.  
 vaiyāvṛtya 104.  
 vandāmi te 179.  
 vandanā 164, 170, 177, 179, 201.  
 vandanābhiḥ 164, 200.  
 vandanādi 161, 165.  
 vandanādibhiḥ 164, 200.  
 vardhana 16, 17, 21, 75.  
 vasana 106.  
 vāsanā 11.  
 vāsayitum kṛtam 11.  
 vāsita 86.  
 vedanā 31, 74, 75, 119, 126, 141,  
 157, 194.  
 vedanāduḥkha 32, 141.  
 vedanāduḥkhe smṛtim upasthāpayan  
 141.  
 vedanāsmṛtyupasthāna 29.  
 vibandha 127.  
 vidhānartha 109.  
 vidhi 164, 200.  
 vidūṣaṇāsamudācāra 121, 124, 156.
- viharan 145.  
 viharati 145.  
 vijñāna 74, 194.  
 vikalpa 63.  
 vikrama 83.  
 vikrīḍita 54.  
 vikṣipta 41.  
 vikṣiptacitta 137.  
 vikurva 181.  
 vināśa 132.  
 vinaya 9, 10.  
 vipakṣa 33, 49.  
 viparyāsa 31, 49, 119, 136, 141, 157.  
 vipaśyanā 153.  
 vipratipatti 113.  
 vipratīsāra 82.  
 vipratīsārabahula 121, 156.  
 vipratīsāracitta 103.  
 vi + prati + √sr 107.  
 viriyārambha 35.  
 vīrya 35, 41, 43, 46, 51, 61, 66,  
 87, 94, 118, 156, 167, 170,  
 172, 173, 178, 184, 187,  
 188.  
 vīryabala 43.  
 vīryam ārabhate 35, 173.  
 vīryapāramitā 12, 35.  
 vīryārambha 35.  
 vīryasaṃbodhyaṅga 50.  
 vīryavardhana 162, 173.  
 vīryendriya 42, 44.  
 viśamājīva 58.  
 viśaṅga 130.  
 viśeṣa 72.  
 viśeṣādhiḡama 178.  
 viśeṣagamana 178.  
 viśeṣagāmitā 46, 164, 165, 168, 170,  
 177, 178, 188, 201.  
 viśeṣagāmitāyai saṃvartante 165.  
 vistīrṇa 134.  
 vitarka 63.  
 vivarddhaka 13.  
 vivarjana 96, 109.  
 vṛddhi 11, 37ff., 65, 89, 168, 183,  
 186.  
 √vṛdh x. 17.  
 vyākaraṇabhūmi 47.  
 vyāpāda 58.  
 vyavasāya 164, 168, 169, 174, 187.  
 vyāyacchati 35.  
 vyāyāma 61, 94.  
 vyutpādana 11.  
 vyutpādita 11.  
 vyutpatti 11.

- yācana 178.  
yad uta 176, 205.  
yaddatta 82.  
yadgr̥ha 81.  
yāna 86.  
yaśa 129.  
yatas 145.  
yathābhūta 98.  
yatnavat 135.  
yāvat 27.  
Yogācāra 6.  
yonīśas 185.

## INDEX OF TEXTS.

- Abhidharmadīpa* 39.  
*Abhidharmahr̥daya* 39.  
*Abhidharmakośa* 34, 39.  
*Abhidharmasamuccaya* 39.  
*Adhyaśayasamcodanasūtra* 109.  
*Adhyāśayasamcodanasūtra* 13.  
*Adhyāśayasamcodanasūtra* 13.  
*Akṣayamatisūtra* 27, 32, 33, 46, 55,  
 88, 98, 101, 133.  
*Anantamukhanirhāradhāraṇi* 71.  
*Aṅguttara-Nikāya* 38, 138.  
*Arthavinīscayasūtra* 49.  
  
*BCA-duravabodhananirṇayanāmagantha*  
 7.  
*BCA-pañjikā* 7.  
*BCA-piṇḍārtha* 7.  
*BCA-saṃskāra* 7.  
*BCA-saṭtrimśatpiṇḍārtha* 7.  
*BCA-tātparyapañjikāviśeṣadyatanī* 7.  
*BCA-vivṛtti* 7.  
*BCA-vivṛttipañjikā* 7.  
*Bhadracarī* 165.  
*Bhadracaryā* 160, 164, 165, 200,  
 201.  
*Bhadracaryāpraṇidhānagāthā* 164,  
 165, 200.  
*Bhadracaryāvidhī* 164, 200.  
*Bhagavatī* 138.  
*Bodhisatvapratimokṣa* 71.  
  
*Candrapradīpasūtra* 71, 81.  
*Caturaśītisiddhapravṛtti* 3.  
  
*Daśabhūmikasūtra*  
*samyakpradhānas* 204.  
*Dhammasaṃgaṇi* 61.  
*Dharmasaṃgītisūtra* 32, 149, 176,  
 177, 190.  
*Dharmasaṃgraha* 69, 70.  
*samyakpradhānas* 204.  
*Dīgha-Nikāya* 38, 138.  
*Divyāvadāna* 26.  
  
*Gaganagañjasūtra* 151.  
*Gaṇḍavyūhasūtra* 164, 165, 200.  
  
*Kāśyapaparivarta* 113.  
*Kṣayamatisūtra* 32.  
*Kṣītigarbhasūtra* 109.  
  
*Lalitavistara* 32.  
*Lokanāthavyākaraṇa* 32.  
  
*Madhyamakakārikā* 6.  
*Mahāvīyutpatti* 54, 70.  
*samyakpradhānas* 203, 204.  
*Mahāvānasūtrālaṃkāra* 31, 49.  
*Mūlamadhyamakakārikā* 14, 78, 133.  
  
*Nārāyaṇaparipṛcchā* 71.  
*Nikāyas*  
*samyakpradhānas*  
 Formula A 205, 206.  
 Formula B 206–209.  
  
*Pañcaviṃśatisāhasrikā* 7.  
*samyakpradhānas* 204, 205.  
*Pāpavarga* 33.  
*Prājñāpāramitā* 30.  
*Prajñāparicchedapañjikā* 7.  
  
*Ratnacūḍa* 32.  
*Ratnacūḍasūtra* 26, 30, 48, 58, 152.  
*Ratnakūṭa* 112.  
*Ratnamegha* 17, 69, 70, 89, 99, 197.  
  
*Sāgaramatisūtra* 27, 131.  
*Samyutta-Nikāya* 44.  
*Sarvadharmāpravṛttinirdeśa* 109.  
*Śatasāhasrikāprajñāpāramitāsūtra* 26,  
 177.  
*Saundarānandakāvya* 31.  
*Śikṣāsamuccaya*  
 giving 76–91.  
 increasing 167–188.  
 preserving 103–116.  
 purifying 123–158.  
*samyakpradhānas* 203.  
*Śikṣāsamuccayakārikā*  
 giving 72–76.  
 increasing 161–167.  
 preserving 95–103.  
 purifying 119–123.

- text 193–201.  
translation 193–201.  
*Sūtrasamuccaya* 6, 12.
- Tathāgataguhyasūtra* 79, 184.
- Ugradattapariṣcchā* 31, 71, 81, 134.  
*Ugrapariṣcchā* 30, 101, 157.
- Vajracchedikā* 162.  
*Vajradhvasūtra* 84.  
*Vibhaṅga* 50, 51, 56, 58, 61, 62.  
*Viradattapariṣcchā* 32.  
*Vyākhyāyukti* 96.

## INDEX OF SCHOLARS.

- Arndt, W. 156, 211.  
 Asano, M. 4, 9, 17, 211.  
 Augustine, M. J. 45, 211.
- Barnett, L. D. 7, 8, 74, 97, 194,  
 196, 211.  
 Batchelor, S. 7, 211.  
 Bendall, C. ix, xii. 3, 8–20, 23–36,  
 39–43, 45, 47–50, 53–56,  
 58–65, 69–79, 81–89, 93–  
 102, 104–113, 117–122, 124–  
 154, 158–167, 169ff., 173–  
 176, 178–185, 190, 192–198,  
 200, 201, 203, 211.  
 Bernhard, F. 33, 212.  
 Bhattacharya, B. 3, 212.  
 Bhattacharya, V. 7, 11, 212.  
 Bleeker, C. J. 26, 224.  
 Bond, G. 39, 212.  
 Braarvig, J. x. 11, 24, 25, 28, 29,  
 33, 34, 40–43, 47–50, 55,  
 56, 63, 88, 98, 101, 130,  
 133, 136, 145, 146, 175,  
 176, 212.  
 Brassard, F. 4, 166, 212.  
 Bruhn, K. 7, 213.  
 Buitenen, J. A. B. van xi. 212.  
 Buswell, R. xi. 39, 212.
- Cabezón, J. xi, xiii. 96, 189, 212.  
 Carpenter, J. 28, 33, 38ff., 43, 44,  
 49, 56, 69, 185, 205, 207,  
 213.  
 Chalmers, R. 24, 28, 40, 43, 44,  
 49, 56, 69, 205, 224.  
 Chandra, L. 93, 216.  
 Chattopadhyaya, A. 3, 212.  
 Chime, D. 24, 25, 34, 40, 42, 49,  
 56, 63, 69, 70, 85, 100,  
 129, 139, 140, 149, 204,  
 225.  
 Conze, E. 14, 26–29, 33, 34, 36,  
 41, 43, 49, 50, 52, 53, 55,  
 59, 63, 71, 78, 130, 134,  
 135, 139, 142ff., 153, 154,  
 163, 190, 200, 212.
- Cowell, E. 24ff., 34, 40, 49, 212.  
 Cox, C. 39, 146, 212, 213.  
 Crosby, K. 4, 5, 7, 12, 75, 136,  
 164, 178, 194, 200, 201,  
 213.  
 Cüppers, C. 11, 213.
- Das, S. C. 25, 34, 213.  
 Davids, C. Rhys 24, 28, 29, 33, 40,  
 43, 56, 205, 213.  
 Davids, T. Rhys 25, 28, 29, 33,  
 38ff., 42ff., 49, 50, 56, 69,  
 185, 205, 207, 213.  
 Dayal, H. 4, 20, 24ff., 29, 31, 33,  
 34, 39–44, 48, 49, 52–56,  
 61, 93, 109, 203, 213.  
 Dimitrov, D. 8, 213.  
 Dowman, K. 3, 4, 213.  
 Dutt, N. 24, 25, 28, 40, 42, 49, 56,  
 205, 213.
- Edgerton, F. 10, 11, 13, 23, 25–  
 29, 31–34, 36, 41, 42, 45–  
 48, 50, 52–55, 58, 62, 63,  
 69ff., 74, 75, 78, 80, 82,  
 85–88, 96, 97, 99, 101, 102,  
 104, 107, 114, 120, 121,  
 127–130, 133, 134, 136, 138,  
 139, 142–147, 151–154, 160,  
 163–166, 172, 173, 175, 176,  
 178, 179, 182, 184, 185,  
 190, 194–198, 200, 201, 204,  
 205, 213.  
 Eimer, H. 7, 213.  
 Eliade, M. 4, 6, 8, 9, 13, 14, 214,  
 217, 221.  
 Ergardt, J. T. 45, 214.
- Fausböll, M. 54, 214.  
 Feer, L. 24, 28, 40, 43, 44, 49, 56,  
 205, 214.  
 Filliozat, J. 9, 12, 214.  
 Finot, L. 40, 214.  
 Frauwallner, E. 3, 214.  
 Fukuda, Y. 23, 24, 27, 34, 40, 42,  
 43, 45, 49, 53–56, 59, 60,

- 63, 69ff., 78, 129, 146, 149,  
153, 165, 184, 201, 203,  
216.
- Gadamer, H-G. 15, 69, 214.  
Garfield, J. xi. 15, 192, 214.  
Gethin, R. x. 3, 23, 26, 28, 33, 34,  
39ff., 43ff., 48-52, 54ff., 59,  
184, 205, 206, 214.  
Ghosa, P. 23, 24, 28, 31, 34, 40,  
42, 49, 56, 214.  
Gimello, R. xi. 39, 212.  
Gingrich, F. 156, 211.  
Gombrich, R. 3, 214.  
Gómez, L. xii. 7, 9, 13, 14, 136,  
214.  
Griffiths, P. J. xi, xiii. 5, 14, 214.  
Guenther, H. V. 80, 214.  
Gyatso, K. 6, 215.  
Gyatso, T. 6, 215.
- Hahn, M. 8, 215.  
Hanayama, S. 165, 215.  
Hardy, E. 24, 28, 33, 38ff., 43, 44,  
49, 56, 69, 185, 205ff., 215,  
219.  
Hare, E. 206, 207, 225.  
Harrison, P. 31, 34, 70, 87, 215.  
Hartmann, J-U. 8, 9, 31, 34, 70,  
215, 218, 221.  
Hastings, J. 4, 29, 39, 218.  
Hedinger, J. 3, 6, 8ff., 12, 17, 74,  
75, 194, 215.  
Hercus, L. A. ix. 4, 28, 79, 153,  
174, 175, 217, 222.  
Hirakawa, A. 52, 215.  
Honda, M. 26, 29, 204, 215.  
Horner, I. 29, 33, 41, 215.  
Huntington, C. xi. 6, 26, 39, 93,  
216.
- Ichishima, S. 12, 216.  
Idzumi, H. 53, 164, 165, 200, 223.  
Ishida, C. 6, 7, 216.  
Ishihama, Y. 23, 24, 27, 34, 40,  
42, 43, 45, 49, 53-56, 59,  
60, 63, 69ff., 78, 129, 146,  
149, 153, 165, 184, 201,  
203, 216.
- Johnston, E. 31, 34, 39, 49, 53, 54,  
216.  
Jong, J. W. de ix, xiii. 3, 4, 8-11,  
93, 117, 216.
- Joshi, L. M. 8, 216.
- Kajihara, M. 12, 216, 217.  
Kajiyama, Y. ix. 4, 6, 8, 10, 11,  
13, 15, 28, 54, 63, 69, 74,  
79, 85, 96, 121, 136, 144,  
153, 174, 175, 178, 187,  
194, 195, 200, 217.  
Kalupahana, D. xi. 63, 133, 153,  
217.  
Kanakura, E. 4, 217.  
Kasawara, K. 74, 164, 165, 175,  
194, 201, 204, 217.  
Katz, N. xii. 218.  
Kawamura, L. 32, 74, 78, 85, 96,  
144, 187, 194, 195, 219,  
220.  
Kern, H. 42, 49, 218.  
Kieffer-Pülz, P. 8, 9, 31, 34, 70,  
215, 218, 221.  
Kiyota, M. 10, 11, 13, 63, 144, 187,  
217.  
Klaus, K. 8, 9, 218.
- La Vallée Poussin, L. de 4, 7, 9,  
11ff., 24, 25, 28, 29, 34,  
39, 43, 61, 70, 78, 83, 88,  
97, 100, 121, 136, 142, 144ff.,  
152, 177, 192, 196, 200,  
218.  
Lamotte, É. xi. 13, 26, 28, 29, 31,  
34, 40, 41, 43, 48, 50, 56,  
218.  
Lancaster, L. 78, 222.  
Lefmann, S. 24, 25, 31, 34, 40, 42,  
45, 49, 55, 56, 218.  
Lévi, S. 24, 25, 31-34, 39-42, 47,  
49, 50, 205, 218.  
Limaye, S. 26, 218.  
Lindtner, Chr. xi, xiii. 39, 63, 136,  
218.  
Lopez, D. 3, 13, 15, 39, 69, 212,  
218.
- MacQueen, G. 13, 218, 219.  
Mahoney, R. B. 4, 31, 32, 36, 46,  
71ff., 79, 95, 118, 119, 219.  
Matics, M. L. 7, 219.  
May, J. 63, 136, 219.  
Mimaki, K. ix. 11, 15, 54, 63, 69,  
74, 79, 85, 96, 121, 136,  
144, 178, 187, 194, 195,  
200, 217.

- Minayeff, I. P. 7, 10ff., 31, 32, 35,  
45, 53, 72, 73, 75, 79, 86,  
114, 118, 119, 219.
- Mitra, R. 25, 31, 219.
- Mizuno, K. 13, 14, 28, 219.
- Monier-Williams, M. 9, 26, 34, 36,  
41, 42, 45, 48, 52, 53, 55,  
56, 61, 63, 70, 97, 101,  
108, 117, 127, 129, 144,  
145, 152, 159, 196, 219.
- Morris, R. 24, 28, 38ff., 43, 44, 49,  
56, 69, 185, 205ff., 219.
- Mrozik, S. P. 5, 9, 10, 12, 15, 74,  
75, 194, 219.
- Müller, E. 61, 219.
- Müller, F. Max 74, 164, 165, 175,  
194, 201, 204, 217.
- Nagao, G. 32, 55, 74, 78, 85, 96,  
144, 187, 194, 195, 219,  
220.
- Nakamura, H. 4, 6, 9, 26, 69, 220.
- Nāṇamoli, Bhikkhu 24, 50, 220.
- Nanjio, B. 25, 42, 49, 218, 220.
- Nattier, J. 7, 11, 21, 24, 33, 34, 49,  
60, 101, 102, 132, 135ff.,  
149, 150, 157, 214, 220.
- Neil, R. 24ff., 34, 40, 49, 212.
- Obermiller, E. xi. 3, 24, 25, 78,  
80, 220.
- Oldmeadow, P. xi, xiii. 8, 13, 31,  
63, 78, 97, 126, 130, 136,  
142-145, 163, 190, 196, 200,  
221.
- Padmakara Translation Group 6,  
7, 221.
- Pagel, U. 11, 157, 221.
- Palden, K. K. 6, 221.
- Pāsādika, Bhikkhu 9, 221.
- Pezzali, A. 3, 4, 7-10, 15, 73, 193,  
221.
- Powers, J. 15, 23, 69, 221.
- Rahder, J. 24, 25, 28, 31, 34, 39,  
40, 42, 45, 49, 56, 204,  
221.
- Rahula, W. 181, 221.
- Ratnam, P. 93, 216.
- Robinson, J. 3, 221.
- Rouse, W. H. D. ix. 3, 8, 10ff.,  
16, 18, 19, 26, 29, 33, 41,  
42, 50, 53, 63, 71, 74, 75,  
77, 87, 101, 104-108, 112,  
113, 121, 124-127, 136, 145,  
153, 154, 163, 164, 166,  
169ff., 194, 200, 201, 211.
- Ruegg, D. Seyfort xi. 4ff., 9, 25,  
78, 93, 221, 222.
- Saito, A. 3, 4, 6, 7, 78, 97, 136,  
144, 153, 196, 222.
- Sankarnarayan, K. 3, 4, 6, 7, 222.
- Śāstrī, S. C. 25, 34, 213.
- Scherrer-Schaub, C. A. 7, 222.
- Schmithausen, L. 63, 222.
- Schopen, G. 84, 223.
- Schuster, N. J. 150, 223.
- Senart, É. 25, 33, 34, 40, 49, 223.
- Silk, J. A. 11, 21, 34, 223.
- Sinor, D. 26, 29, 204, 215.
- Skilton, A. 4-7, 12, 13, 75, 136,  
164, 178, 194, 200, 201,  
213, 223.
- Sönam, M. K. 6, 221.
- Speyer, J. 40, 45, 49, 54, 223.
- Steäl-Holstein, A. von 24, 25, 33,  
34, 40, 42, 49, 113, 223.
- Stede, W. 25, 28, 29, 33, 38ff., 42ff.,  
49, 50, 56, 69, 185, 205,  
207, 213.
- Steinkellner, E. xii. 4, 7, 132, 184,  
222, 223.
- Suzuki, D. T. 3, 7, 8, 53, 164, 165,  
200, 223.
- Takasaki, J. 9, 28, 43, 48, 74, 75,  
80, 121, 136ff., 146, 190,  
194, 200, 223.
- Taylor, A. 40, 223.
- Thiṭṭila, A. 24, 26, 29, 33, 41, 42,  
50, 51, 58, 223.
- Tillemans, T. J. F. xii. 13, 223,  
224.
- Trenckner, V. 24, 28, 40, 43, 44,  
49, 56, 69, 205, 224.
- Tuck, A. P. xii. 159, 224.
- Vaidya, P. 7, 8, 142, 153, 224.
- Wallace, B. A. 7, 224.
- Wallace, V. A. 7, 224.
- Wangchen, N. 6, 26, 39, 93, 216.
- Warder, A. K. 28, 150, 223, 224.
- Watanabe, F. 28, 52, 224.
- Watanabe, K. 165, 224.
- Watanabe, S. 7, 224.

- Wayman, A. 5, 13, 26, 28, 29, 31,  
34, 71, 154, 190, 224.  
Wenzel, H. 74, 164, 165, 175, 194,  
201, 204, 217.  
Wezler, A. 7, 213.  
Wildergren, G. 26, 224.  
Williams, P. 3ff., 13, 224.  
Winternitz, M. 9, 11, 15, 26, 224.  
Wogihara, U. ix. 8, 9, 25, 39, 53,  
224, 225.  
Woodward, F. 206, 207, 225.
- Zangmo, T. 24, 25, 34, 40, 42, 49,  
56, 63, 69, 70, 85, 100,  
129, 139, 140, 149, 204,  
225.